NOTE TO USERS

This reproduction is the best copy available.

UMI®
Marriage as Political Strategy and Cultural Expression: Mongolian Royal Marriages from World Empire to Yuan Dynasty

by

George Qingzhi Zhao

A thesis submitted in conformity with the requirements for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy

Graduate Department of East Asian Studies
University of Toronto

© Copyright by George Qingzhi Zhao

2001
The author has granted a non-exclusive licence allowing the National Library of Canada to reproduce, loan, distribute or sell copies of this thesis in microform, paper or electronic formats.

The author retains ownership of the copyright in this thesis. Neither the thesis nor substantial extracts from it may be printed or otherwise reproduced without the author's permission.

L’auteur a accordé une licence non exclusive permettant à la Bibliothèque nationale du Canada de reproduire, prêter, distribuer ou vendre des copies de cette thèse sous la forme de microfiche/film, de reproduction sur papier ou sur format électronique.

L’auteur conserve la propriété du droit d’auteur qui protège cette thèse. Ni la thèse ni des extraits substantiels de celle-ci ne doivent être imprimés ou autrement reproduits sans son autorisation.

0-612-58604-9
Abstract

Marriage as Political Strategy and Cultural Expression: Mongolian Royal Marriages from World Empire to Yuan Dynasty

George Qingzhi Zhao
Doctor of Philosophy
Department of East Asian Studies
University of Toronto
(2001)

This dissertation is a study of the Mongolian royal marriages from the World Empire (1206-1279) to the Yuan dynasty (1279-1368), focusing on the various aspects of the marriage strategies of the Mongol royal family and the political implications of these marriages. It also attempts to solve, by exploring the marriage partners of the Mongol royal family, the enigma of how and why an imperial marriage was arranged and determined, and to further reveal the relationship between the Mongol royal family and its marriage partners.

This dissertation consists of eight chapters. Chapter One reviews the Mongolian marital tradition and probes the characteristics of the Mongolian royal marriages. Chapter Two discusses the Marriage Strategies and the political implication of the Mongolian royal marriages. Chapter Three analyzes the social position of Mongolian women and the political involvement of Mongolian empresses. Chapter Four to Chapter Eight describe the various marriage relationships between the Chinggisid clan and its marriage partners. The Onggirat tribe, the Ikires tribe, the Oirat tribe, the Korean royal family, the Öngüt tribe, and the Uighur Idug-qut’s Clan have been
Based on the exploration, description, and discussion in the proceeding chapters, the dissertation concludes that the Mongolian imperial marriages during the 13th and 14th centuries were politically and militarily significant. The great ambitions of the Chinggisid clan for a maximum geographical expansion of the Mongol empire necessitated marriage strategies for an effective control of the realm. The effect of the political marriages of the Mongol royal family was largely justified by its successive domination over the allied tribes and states during the early period of the Mongol empire. The halo once placed on the strategy of Mongol royal marriage faded along with the decline of the Mongol empire.
Acknowledgements

I would like to take this opportunity to thank many people who have assisted me in the completion of this dissertation. First and foremost, I should thank my thesis supervisor, Professor Richard Guisso, for his inspiration, guidance, and trust during my graduate studies at the University of Toronto. Without his encouragement and guidance I would have never considered studying such a fascinating field of East Asian history. And, moreover, throughout the entire process of my research and writing he has always been generous in offering his insight, knowledge, and time. This dissertation owes him the greatest debt. My sincere thanks are also due to Professor Morris Rossabi, Professor R. Lynn, Professor Raymond Chu, and Professor Graham Sanders, who helped me generously in many different ways, such as with selecting bibliographical materials and choosing appropriate thesis writing styles. Many thanks to David Tien, who read through my thesis and offered valuable criticism. I alone, of course, am responsible for the errors that remain.

My great thanks especially go to several renowned scholars in Yuan and Mongolian studies in China who helped me significantly in my academic inquiries: Professor Chen Gaohua and Professor Shi Weimin of the Chinese Academy of Social Science; Professor Chen Dezhi and Liu Yingsheng of Nanjing University; Professor Zhou Qingshu of the University of Inner Mongolia, Professor Nagusayinhun of the Academy of Social Science of the Inner Mongolia. During my visits to China in 1998 and 2000, they generously offered their suggestions on my thesis-writing plan, directed me to
many valuable sources, and offered important comments on some chapters of my thesis. I am indebted to them for their intellectual responses and enlightening comments.

I would also like to extend my deep appreciation to the help rendered by the staffs of the Cheng Yu-tung East Asian Library at the University of Toronto, the Chinese National Library, the library of Beijing University, the Institute of Mongolian Studies of the University of Inner Mongolia.

I am very grateful to the University of Toronto, the Ontario Government, the Dr. David Chu Scholarship, the Ting-Fang-Chung Traveling Scholarship, University of Toronto Graduate Traveling Scholarship, and C.C. Shih Academic Achievement Award, for their financial support during my graduate studies.
Explanatory Notes

1. In this study the terms “Mongolian” and “royal” are used for general description, and specifically refer to the time period before 1279, the beginning of the Yuan Dynasty; “Mongol” and “imperial” refers to the time period of the Yuan Dynasty (1279-1368).

2. “Koryŏ” is used for description of interstate relations; “Korean” is used for general description.

3. In general, offices and official titles in this thesis follow Charles O. Hucker’s A Dictionary of Official Titles in Imperial China and In the Service of the Khan: Eminent Personalities of the Early Mongol Yuan Period (1200-1300), edited by Igor de Rachewitz, Hok-Lam Chan, Hsiao Ch’i-Ch’ing and Peter W. Geier.

4. For the transliteration of Oriental names and terms I adopt the following standard systems: Pinyin for Chinese, McCune-Reischauer for Korean, and Hepburn for Japanese. The Royal Asiatic Society system has been used for the transliteration of Persian. Certain general accepted terms and names employed in English have been retained.

Antoine Mostaert’s scheme for the transliteration of Mongolian, as modified by Francis W. Cleaves, has been used except for the following deviations:

č is replaced by ch,
š is replaced by sh,
γ is replaced by gh,
q is replaced by kh.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

**Abstract**

**Acknowledgements**

**Explanatory Notes**

**INTRODUCTION**

1. Theme of Study .................................................. 1
2. Scope and Limits .................................................. 2
3. Previous Studies of Imperial Marriage in the Mongol Yuan ........................................... 3
4. Sources .......................................................... 19

**CHAPTER ONE. THE ORIGINS AND DEVELOPMENT OF MONGOLIAN MARITAL TRADITIONS AND THE CHARACTERISTICS OF THE MONGOLIAN ROYAL MARRIAGES**

1. Mongolian Exo-tribal (Exogamic) Marriage .................................................. 30
2. Consanguineous Marriage and Inbreeding in the Mongol Imperial Family ................ 33
3. Typical Patterns of Mongolian Royal Marriages—“One-way Marriages” and “Two-way Marriages” .................................................. 41
4. Levirate Marriages in the Mongolian Royal Family ........................................... 42
5. Mongolian Marriage Custom and Sinicization ................................................. 48

**Chapter Two. Chinggisid Marriage Strategies and the Political Implications of Mongol Imperial Marriages**

1. A Comparison of Marriage Strategies between the Mongol Royal Family and Typical Chinese Dynasties ........................................... 61
2. Political Implications of the Mongolian Royal Marriages ........................................... 65
Chapter Three. Social Position of Mongolian Women and the Political Involvements of Mongolian Empresses

1. The Social Position of Mongolian Women .......................................................... 72
2. Political Involvement of Mongol Empresses ..................................................... 80
   (1). Empresses as Regents ................................................................................. 82
   (2). Empresses’ Manipulation of the Election of a New Khan or Emperor .... 86
   (3). Empresses’ Involvement in State Affairs .................................................. 88
   (4). Struggles between Empress Dowagers and Emperors ......................... 89
   (5). Characteristics of the Political Involvement of the Yuan Empresses .... 91

Chapter Four. “Two-way” Marriages: Marriages Between the Mongolian Royal Family and Dei-sechan’s Clan of the Onggirat

弘吉剌 Tribe and the Ikires 亦乞列思 Tribe .................................................. 98

The Onggirat Tribe ............................................................................................... 98
1. Historical Background ...................................................................................... 98
2. Onggirat Men Married to Mongol Princesses .............................................. 106
3. Yuan Empresses from the Onggirat Tribe ................................................... 112
4. Discussion ........................................................................................................ 122

The Ikires Tribe .................................................................................................. 124
1. Historical Background ...................................................................................... 124
2. Marriages between Ikires Tribe and Chinggisid Clan ................................ 128

Chapter Five. “Two-way Marriages”: Marriages between The Mongolian Royal Family and the Oirat tribe

斡亦剌 .................................................. 133

1. Historical Background ...................................................................................... 133
2. Mongol Princesses Married into the Oirat Tribe ......................................... 136
3. Oirat Women Married into the Chinggisid Clan ....................................... 146
4. Discussion ........................................................................................................ 156
Chapter Six. “One-way Marriage”: Royal Marriages between the Mongol Yuan and Koryo (Korea) ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ......
TABLE 3: The Empresses and Imperial Concubines of Mongol Yuan from the Onggirat tribe ... ................................. 117
TABLE 4 The Princesses of the Yuan Court Married into the Onggirat Tribe ................. 119
TABLE 5 The Empresses of Yuan from the Ikires Tribe........................................... 130
TABLE 6 The Princesses of the Yuan Court Married into Ikires Tribe........................................... 130
TABLE 7 Oirat Women married into the Chinggisid clan.................................................. 154
Table 8 Princesses of the Chinggisid clan Married into the Oirat tribe .................................................. 154
Table 9 Princesses of the Yuan Court Married into the Koryo Court .................................................. 192
TABLE 10 Princesses of the Yuan Court Married into the Òngût Tribe .................................................. 206
TABLE 11 The Principely Concubines of the Yuan Imperial Family from the Òngût Tribe .................................................. 207
TABLE 12 Princesses of the Yuan Court Married into the Uighur Idug-qut’s Clan ............. 219
Marriage List I. Mongol Royal Family → Onggirat Tribe .................................................. 120
Marriage List II. Onggirat Tribe → Mongol Royal Family .................................................. 121
Marriage List III. Mongol Royal Family → Ikires Tribe .................................................. 132
Marriage List IV. Ikires Tribe → Mongol Royal Family .................................................. 132
Marriage List V. Mongol Royal Family → Oirat Tribe .................................................. 155
Marriage List VI. Oirat Tribe → Mongol Royal Family .................................................. 155
Marriage List VII. Koryo Royal Family → Mongol Royal Family .................................................. 193
Marriage List VIII. Òngût Tribe → Mongol Royal Family .................................................. 208
Marriage List IX. Mongol Royal Family → Òngût Tribe .................................................. 208
Marriage List X. Uighur Idug-qut Tribe → Mongol Royal Family .................................................. 218

Bibliography ........................................... 242

Appendix I. Yuanshi Volumes 114, 116—Biographies of Empresses and Imperial Concubines (hou fei zhuang) ........................................... 254

Appendix II. Reign Periods of Mongol Khans and Yuan Emperors ........................................... 278

Appendix III. Glossary ........................................... 281

Appendix IV Genealogical Tables of the Mongol Royal Clan ........................................... 293
Introduction

1. Theme of Study

This dissertation is a study of Mongolian royal marriages from the World Empire (1206-1279) to the Yuan dynasty (1279-1368), focusing on the various aspects of marriage strategies of the Mongol royal family and the political implications of Mongol royal marriage. This thesis also attempts to solve, by examining the marriage partners of the Mongol royal family, the enigma of how and why an imperial marriage was arranged and determined, and to reveal further the relationships between the Mongol royal family and its marriage partners.

My interest in the subject matter stemmed from my curiosity about the nature of the Yuan period in Chinese history. This period was unique for on the one hand, China was reunified after more than a century of division; but on the other hand, for the first time, the whole territory of China fell under the rule of an alien people, which had long been viewed by the Han people as 'barbarian'. This broke the historical tradition that the Han people had ruled most of the territory known as the "Middle Kingdom" for fourteen centuries since the Qin dynasty first unified China in 221 B.C. For the first time since then a minority nationality had become the ruling nationality and controlled state power. The Han nationality was reduced to the status of a ruled people. The Yuan period is regarded in official historiography (zhengshi 正史) as a legitimate Chinese dynasty, yet in fact the Mongol population in China barely exceeded one-tenth of the Song dynasty's population it conquered.

Four sets of inquiries have been conceptualized and will be determined. The first is concerned with the marriage institutions of the Mongol elite in terms of "sinicization". Since the Mongols
entered and dominated the state power of China, did their marriage customs change to or adapt to the Chinese culture? If so, to what extent had they evolved? If not, why not?

The second group of questions focuses specifically upon royal marriages. How did the imperial clan choose its marriage partners? What were the criteria and considerations when determining a marriage? Who were the empresses? Who were the imperial sons-in-law? From where did they originate?

The third group of questions is associated with the characteristics of Mongol royal marriages in comparative terms. In comparison with the royal marriages of such “alien dynasties” as Liao, Jin, Xixia, and typical Chinese dynasties such as Tang and Song, what were the distinguishing features of Mongol royal marriages?

The fourth group of questions are concerned with the role of imperial women, including the empresses and the princesses within Mongol Yuan political structures. Were they active or inactive in the politics of the Mongol Empire and the Yuan dynasty? If they were “active”, then, what motivated them to be involved in politics and what influenced their decision to play political roles?

This study attempts to solve the above-mentioned problems.

2. Scope and Limits

Scholars of the Yuan dynasty are always confronted with the problem of determining the scope and limit of their studies with regard to the span of the Mongol Yuan dynasty. Thus, when we study marriage strategies of the Mongolian royal house within the political and cultural contexts, one issue has to be determined before proceeding any further. What is the starting point? Was it from Chinggis Khan or from Khubilai Khan?
Strictly speaking, the Yuan dynasty was founded by Khubilai Khan (r. 1260-1294). In 1260 he ascended the throne of the Mongol Empire without the election of the Mongol noble conference Khuriltai. In 1264 he moved his capital to Dadu from Karakorum. In 1271 he started to use “Yuan” as his dynastic name. In 1279 he finally conquered the Southern Song and united China. Although all these years are pivotal, the generally recognized starting point of the Yuan dynasty is 1279. Yet, traditionally, Chinese scholars of Yuan history have treated 1206 when Chinggis Khan became the Mongol khan as the beginning of their historical accounts. In view of the historical continuity of the Mongol royal marital tradition, it is desirable to start from Chinggis Khan to describe the Mongolian royal marriages, or at least to treat this period as a necessary historical background. In this study, I will treat Chinggis Khan as the starting point of the Mongolian royal marriage tradition.

3. Previous Studies of Imperial Marriage in the Mongol Yuan

Yuan studies have been relatively neglected by scholars both in China and abroad, because of the relatively short span of the Mongol dynasty, Chinese distaste for nomadic rule, and the demanding linguistic requirements for sources in Mongolian and the languages of the Islamic world. Thus, studies are scarce of marriage and the family in Yuan China in Western literature compared with other periods in Chinese history, such as those of the Tang, Song, and Qing periods. It is probably for this reason that the Yuan period has often been omitted by scholars in their discussions of women’s marriage and life in China. Given the recent progress of women’s history in

---


2 For example, the Yuanshi 元史 started records of annals, biographies, and tables all from Chinggis Khan. Almost all later works in Yuan history follow this tradition.
the larger historical profession, it seems reasonable to ask how much research has to be done on women and the family in the Yuan period in order to signify general history of Yuan society or culture.

Early Western observers were naturally surprised by the unusual features of Mongol marriage customs, since they stood in sharp contrast to those of the Chinese as well as to their own. These features include levirate marriage and the unusually important roles of women in the family and clan. Modern Western scholars are therefore inclined to describe and compare the differences in marriage institutions and customs between Mongols and Chinese as their principal analytic tool.

Among scholars of the Yuan period, Morris Rossabi, Herbert Franke, John Langlois, Jennifer Homgren, and John Dardess, among others, have conducted studies specifically on women, marriage and family of the Yuan period. Rossabi has written the best biography of Khubilai Khan, whose life and career spanned the rise and decline of the Mongol empire. To write this book, he consulted not only Chinese sources, but also Middle Eastern and European sources, including Persian, Arab, Armenian, Syriac, and Italian. He has produced excellent bibliographies which contain five hundred and sixty-four sources in Western languages and one hundred and nineteen sources in Oriental languages. Among the latter, twenty-three are primary sources. These numbers show the extent of the author’s research. Among his studies focused on elite women in the Mongol empire are “Khubilai Khan and The Women in His Family”, and “Kuan Tao-sheng: Woman Artist in Yuan China”. The former offers detailed descriptions of the lives of several renowned Mongolian women, including Hō’elun 訶阿倫, (wife of Yesugei and mother of Chinggis Khan),

Sorghaghtani-Beki 噌爾忽帖尼別吉 (senior wife of Tolui and mother of Khubilai), and Chabui 察必 (Empress of Khubilai Khan).

Herbert Franke has produced various studies regarding Mongol rule in China, cultural interactions under Mongol rule, historiography in Yuan times, and typical figures in the Yuan dynasty. His recently published book, *China under Mongol Rule*, collects thirteen previously published articles. One of them, “Women under the Dynasties of Conquest”, deals with women’s lives under the Liao (907-1125), Jin (1115-1234), Xi Xia (11th cent. -1227) and Yuan (1279-1368).

John Langlois’ edited book, *China under Mongol Rule*, collects the articles of the most prominent Yuan scholars: Hok-lam Chan, John Langlois, Herbert Franke, Morris Rossabi, et al., whose essays range over a number of issues, including institutions, thought, foreigners in China, and art and literature. In the introduction to this volume Langlois raises some important issues in Yuan studies such as the legitimacy of Mongol rule in China, the characteristics of Mongol rule, the legal system of the Yuan period, and sinicization. Langlois’s paper in this collection, “Political thought in Chin-hua under Mongol Rule”, investigates the development of one part of Chinese culture under Mongol rule. The author suggests that Mongol rule in China went through various transformations. By the time Khubilai Khan conquered South China in the 1270s, Mongol rule had already been altered by the encounter with Chinese civilization. In its new form, Mongol rule was not simply an occupation by nomads aimed at seizure of booty from the sedentary people of China. It had become a hybrid form of government, partly bureaucratic, and partly colonial and military. It focused on seizing booty, and on developing wealth and income in the ruled territories. However, it never compromised on the principle of Mongol superiority.

---

8 See specially pages 138-40.
John Dardess concentrated on assimilation. His monograph *Conquerors and Confucians: Aspects of Political Change in Late Yuan China* highlights the influences of Chinese culture on the Mongol rulers in the Yuan dynasty. He argues that by the late Yuan period, the conquerors had become Confucian adherents themselves. As a privileged ruling caste, the Mongols and their non-Chinese (semi) allies became Confucianized to a high degree. But they were scarcely on that account absorbed or swallowed by the Chinese majority, since Confucianism, through its insistence upon the principles of ancestral loyalty and filial piety, tended to preserve rather than level ethnic and national distinctions. This book shows that a violent Confucian political debate took place in the late Yuan period. The high point of this debate occurred from 1340 to 1355, when reformist and conservative Confucian administrations succeeded each other at roughly five-year intervals. Each had a completely different idea of the proper aims and conduct of political life. Dardess also explored the comments of Taizu, the founder of the Ming dynasty (Zhu Yuanzhang 朱元璋) on the Yuan. It seemed to Taizu that the history of the Yuan presented a series of conflicting images of grandeur and decadence, and of legitimacy and outrage. Dardess points out that Taizu’s remarks about the Yuan were not offered as models of dispassionate inquiry. They were advanced to underscore various policy positions taken by the early Ming state, which is probably one reason why his views are so often inconsistent.

Thereby, Yuan imperial marriage has attracted adequate scholarly attention and has been studied in a fragmentary fashion as a result of current availability of materials in Mongol history and Yuan history. However, there still remain no thorough studies on Yuan royal marriage. Available studies in this area concentrate only upon the most well-known emperors and empresses.

---


Very little attention has been devoted to the marriages of other emperors, imperial consorts, princes and princesses. Also, in-depth studies have not been made on the families from which empresses and other consorts were selected, and the types of families chosen to provide husbands for princesses.

Jennifer Holmgren is the first scholar to attempt to theoretically explain various phenomena in the imperial marriages of the Yuan and the Mongol marital traditions. Her analyses and arguments are generally enlightening and convincing because of her thorough studies on the imperial marriage in both native Chinese and non-Han states. Her arguments should have been more cogent and convincing if she had provided more concrete facts to support them. One of her essays, "Imperial Marriage in the Native Chinese and Non-Han State, Han to Ming", demonstrates the variety and political ingenuity of marriage systems designed by the leaders of conquest dynasties. Three states, the Tuoba 拓跋 (A.D. 399-534), the Qidan 契丹 (Khitan) Liao 遼 dynasty (A.D. 916-1122), and the Mongol empire (A.D. 1200-1368), are selected for investigation. The author concludes that imperial marriage policy under conquest dynasties consisted of a judicious mix of elements derived from both the steppes and the Chinese traditions. Holmgren also attempts to explain marriage and inheritance practices, with references to the levirate of early Mongol and Yuan societies in terms of the bride-price theory. She believes that early Mongol society was characterized by the bride-price factor, a transaction in which marriage wealth passed from the groom's family to that of the bride. Holmgren's evidence about the bride-price in Mongol society is mainly discovered in the writings of Rubruck and Carpini, two independent observers of Mongol culture in the early part of the thirteenth-century.

---

However, this bride-price theory can hardly be confirmed by *The Secret History*. For example, in Tiemujin, in the later Chinggis Khan's first marriage, this was not the case. The betrothal gift his father presented to Borte's father Dei Sechen was only a horse. While a gift Borte brought to her parents-in-law, a valuable black marten garment, helped Tiemujin establish a close relationship with Ong Khan, the chief of the powerful Kereit tribe in the Mongol steppes.\(^{13}\) When discussing a marriage between his younger sister Tiemulun and Botu, Chinggis remarks, "To decide a marriage only based on the amount of wealth is almost like merchant's conduct."\(^{14}\) Holmgren has obviously realized this exception, therefore she adds that it does not follow from that the bride's family in early Mongol society gave little or nothing at the time of marriage. Yet she argues that the value of property given by woman's family was overshadowed by costs borne by the groom and his family.

Holmgren poses some hypotheses regarding the marriage customs in early Mongol society, the social position of Chinggis Khan's father, as well as other topics, to fit the facts into the theory she employs. However, some of the hypotheses are dubious. For example, to support her bride-price theory she tried various means to prove that Chinggis Khan's father Yesügei was from a lower ranking family.

First of all, Holmgren claims that, in Mongol society, it was customary for the father to escort the daughter to the husband's camp as a sign that the marriage agreement had been fulfilled. The example she gave is Ambaqa, an early leader of the Tayichi'ut-Kiyat confederation, who, according to the *Secret History*, was seized by the Tartar Juyin people on the way to hand over his daughter to

---


\(^{14}\) *Yuanshi* 元史, 118:3921. See the Biography of Botu.
her husband, and was escorted to the Jin for execution.\textsuperscript{15} On the other hand, according to Riasanovsky, the live in son-in-law phenomenon occurred amongst the poor and was restricted to the pre-marriage state.\textsuperscript{16} Based on these, Holmgren raises hypotheses regarding the position of Chinggis' father Yesügei in his tribe and the marriage of Chinggis to Borte. An argument she poses is as following: “If, in Mongol society, it was customary for father to escort daughter to the husband's camp upon completion of the marriage contract, and if the live-in son-in-law phenomenon was a strategy used by the poor as a substitute for bride-price, then a question of fundamental importance arises about the status of Chinggis Khan's family in the Tayichi'ut-Kiyat confederation to which he belonged. It is often assumed that Chinggis' father, Yesügei, held a position of importance, if not the leadership itself, of that confederation. Yet apart from the fact that Yesügei is given as nephew of a former leader, the Secret History provides no solid grounds for such an assumption.”\textsuperscript{17}

This assumption is questionable. First of all, it seems not a well-established custom in Mongol society for a father to escort his daughter to his son-in-law's camp. We have not discovered any evidence indicating that this was an obligatory step in Mongol marital customs. It has never been mentioned as one of the Mongol marital customs in any of the books introducing Mongol social customs. Therefore it was probably only an individual phenomenon. As for the fact that Ambaqa Khan was captured by the Tartar people and sent to the Jin court, Rashid Al-din provided a detailed but different record: he went to the Tartar tribe to propose marriage for himself rather than to escort his daughter to her husband's.\textsuperscript{18}

\textsuperscript{15} The Secret History, ch. 1: 10.
\textsuperscript{18} Rashidiuddin Fazlal-Ilah, Jami‘u ‘îTawarih, Compendium of Chronicles, a history of the Mongols, trans. by W. M. Thackston, Harvard University, Part two, (1998): 129-30. “Hambaqai Qa’an, the grandson of
With regard to the marriage contract between Chinggis and Borte and the attitude of Dei Sechen towards their union, we find two opposite records. Rashid al-Din’s work tells us that when Temujin grew up, he went to Dei Sechen’s home to claim his betrothed wife, but Dei-Sechen objected. It was only through the help of Borte’s brother that the two were finally united.¹⁹ Rashid did not mention why Dei Sechen objected to this marriage. But Holmgren maintains that it was because Chinggis never completed his period of service as a live-in son-in-law with Borte’s family and strictly speaking was not entitled to marry Borte.²⁰ However, on the contrary, The Secret History tells us that Dei-Sechen was very happy when Temujin went to his home to claim Borte.

“When Dei Sechen, seeing Temujin and rejoicing exceedingly, spake, having said, ‘knowing that they Tayichi’ud brethren are jealous, being very troubled, [I] had lost hope. And now [I] have hardly seen thee,’ having united Börte Üjin [with him], he accompanied [her]” ²¹

Holmgren argues that it is unlikely that a man of wealth and good standing in his community would set out virtually alone to seek a wife for his son as Yesügei had done; it is even more unlikely that he would have left that son with the father of the bride. Because such is the behavior of a poor man unable to meet normal bride-price requirements.²² However, it seems not a problem for a nobleman to travel alone to seek a wife for his son in ancient Mongol society. Ambaqa, as honorable as a Khan, had to personally go to the Tartar tribe to seek a wife, or, as being recorded otherwise, escorted his daughter to her husband, without enough guards.

---

¹⁹ Rashiduddin Fazlullah, Jam‘u’‘Tawārikh, Compendium of Chronicles, a history of the Mongols, trans. by W. M. Thackston, Harvard University, Part one, (1998): 85: “Genghis Khan asked for her (Borte) as a very young man, but her father objected strongly. Since Elchi Noyan had a friendship with Genghis Khan, he endeavored to give him his sister.”


²¹ The Secret History, ch. 2:32.

Holmgren suggests that the bride-price system assured that ordinary Mongols rarely had more than one wife and that levirate was undoubtedly a widespread institution amongst the middle and lower ranks of the society where it was a means of protecting the economic and social integrity of the family.\textsuperscript{23} Based on these assumptions, she argues that the status of Yesügei, must have been lowly, because he had only two wives, at least one of whom was captured rather than purchased or inherited.\textsuperscript{24} Moreover, she believes that the fate of Yesügei's wives after his death is also indicative of lowly status. Because Yesügei's widows were not taken in marriage by his brother or any other relative.\textsuperscript{25} According to her assumption, "if Yesügei was leader of his Kiyat branch of the clan or chief of the Tayichi'-ut-Kiyat confederation, his wives would probably have been taken in marriage by his successor to legitimize the transfer of power. At the very least, had they commanded a reasonable portion of property, they would have remained in the clan as single heads of independent nuclear units. The treatment meted out to the family suggests not so much a political coup by the Tayichi'ut to take control of the Kiyat, but rather that Yesügei and his immediate relatives had neither wealth nor position and that for this reason his kin were unable or unwilling to look after this widow and children. With this in mind, we must interpret that passage in the Secret History which describes the defection of Yesügei's people to the Tayichi'ut as referring not the Kiyat as a whole but merely to the few prisoners of war Yesugei had taken. Alternatively, the passage may be pure fiction designed to embellish the hardships suffered by the young Chinggis after his father's death."

In the same article Holmgren states that it was mandatory for a widow to stay in her husband's clan in Mongol society, and it was particularly crucial in the middle and lower ranks of the society where widows were less able to survive on their own, and where, if left to their own devices, they


might contract second marriage to outsiders. So, if Yesügei was actually in a lowly position, then his widow should have been taken by one of his relatives since it was obligatory. Since she was not taken by any of Yesügei’s relatives, then Yesügei might not belong to the lower rank class. However, Holmgren suddenly changes her evaluating criteria from bride-price theory to political theory, and states that if Yesügei was leader of his Kiyat branch of the clan or chief of the Tayichi’ut-Kiyat confederation, his wives would probably have been taken in marriage by his successor to legitimize the transfer of power. Following this logic, since Yesügei’s widow was not taken by his relatives in both cases, Yesügei’s social status is actually uncertain.

It is without question that Chinggis’s father Yesügei was born in an aristocratic family. Yesügei’s grandfather Khabul and elder uncle Khutula were both Mongol Khans. Yesügei was titled Ba’atur (warrior). He was a powerful Mongol nobleman. But it does not necessarily mean that he was very wealthy. In nomadic societies, the wealth was signified by horses, cattles and sheep. After the death of Yesügei, his widows and sons were abandoned by his people. The only property they possessed then were nine horses. The number of cattle and sheep is unclear. They were certainly not wealthy, that is why they had led an extremely hard life. We may assume that their wealth must have not been limited to only nine horses when Yesügei was alive. The Secret History tells us that when the Tayichi’ut people left Hö’elun and her children in the camp and moved away, an old man named Charaqa tried to stop them, but a man named Tödö’en Girte said: "The deep water hath dried up. The bright stone is broken to piece!" which implied that their leader, Yesügei, has died, and they had nothing to care. Tödö’en Girte even stabbed and wounded Charaqa. When Temujin went to see Charaqa, the

---

old man said: "When, taking [with them] the people which had been assembled by thy good father and the people of us all, they were taking journey, as I was admonishing [them], it was so done [unto me]." When Hö'elun learned this, she immediately took the big army banner, and jumped on her horse, and pursued those who had deserted her. She was able to force half of her people to return. But soon they too slipped away and left Hö'elun behind with her children. According to a footnote of SechinJaqchid (札奇斯欽) in Menggu mishi xinyi bing zhushi 蒙古秘史新譯並注釋, the big army banner was called "toghlaju-togh". It signified the patron saint of the whole clan in early Mongol society; therefore, Hö'elun tried to use it to persuade her betrayed subjects. This story clearly indicates the social position Yesügei had held in Mongol society. In fact, Yesügei had a noble title, and was brave in war, so he must have plundered a lot of people and cattle from other tribes in wars. It was highly probable that the Tayi'chi-ut people had taken away not only his people, but also a huge part of his property when they abandoned his family.

It is difficult to decide whether Yesügei was the tribal chief of Tayi'chi'ut, although he has been given this title in many studies. The Secret History records that after Ambaq Khan was captured by the Tartar people and was killed by the Jin emperor, his people of Mongol-Tayi'chi'ut held an emergency assembly at the Onon River 幫難河 and elected Khutula as their new Khan. Khutula launched thirteen attacks upon the Tartars to revenge Ambaq. Yesügei was one of the major commanders in these battles. D'Ohsso's Historie des Mongols states: "When Ambaq died, his

---

29 Zhaqi Qi, Menggu Mishi Xin Yi Bing Zhushi, PP. 74-75.
30 It was also called "Ejen sulde". According to the footnote in Henry Serruys's "Two Remarkable Women in Mongolia" (Asia Major, vol. XIX/part2, pp. 191-245), the flag, sulde, was the seat of the protector or ruler. The flag was not only a religious object, it was also a symbol of the ruler's power. See also Serruy's paper "Mongol Prayer to the Sprit of Cinggis-qan's Flage", in L. Ligeti (ed.) Mongolian Studies, pp. 527-35.
31 See for example, Ebrey, Patricia Buckley, The Cambridge Illustrated History of China, (1996): 169, which states that Yisugei was a tribal chieftain.
32 Zhaqi Qi (Jagchid Sechin), Menggu Mishi Xinyi Bing Zhushi, (1979): 54.
clansmen tried to revenge him. His son Khada’an-Taisi 合丹太師 and Khabul Khan’s son Khubilai (Coubilai) Khan 忽必來汗 (i.e. Khutula), Khabul Khan's grandsons and Chinggis Khan's father Yesügei Bartur, tried to jointly attack on Jurchen. Khubilai was the bravest amongst his brothers, and therefore he succeeded Khabul as Khan.” In The Secret History of Mongols, Yesügei was called Bartur, not Khan. However, according to the records in Yuanshi it seems that Yesügei had succeeded the Khanate of the Mongol-Tayichi’ut: "After Gebulü Khan 葛不律寒 (i.e. Khabul Khan), his son Bartan 八哩丹 succeeded to him; after Bartan died, his son Yesügei succeeded to him.” It is somewhat unclear here if Yesügei had succeeded to the throne. He might have only inherited his father’s noble title (Ba’atur) and property. According to the Secret History, Yesügei’s father Bartan was the only one who had the title Ba’atur among his seven brothers. Yesügei also was the only one who held the title "Bartur" among his four brothers. In any case, it seems no doubt that Yesügei held an important position of Mongol nobleman, probably a chieftain of one of the sub-tribes in the Mongol confederation.

Holmgren further extends her assumption that Dei Sechen of the Onggirat tribe must also have been in a lower social status in order to match her theory. “If we assumes that Yisugei’s status was a lowly one, a question then arises about Dei-sechen’s motives in agreeing to the match, for at that time, his Onggirat tribe was one of the most powerful groups in north-eastern Mongolia.” “On the more practical side, it must be recognized that there is no evidence that Dei-Sechen held a place of importance in the Onggirat at the time of marriage.” According to the investigation of Bailadugeqi 白拉都格其, many sub-tribes had derived from the Onggirat tribe up to the twelfth century. Dei

---

34 Yuanshi, chuan 1, p. 3.
Sechen was the chieftain of the Bosqur tribe, a sub-tribe of Onggirat tribe. Therefore there should be no doubt that Dei Sechen had held a place of importance in the Onggirat tribe. When the leaders of the eleven tribes assembled at Alqui Spring, plotting to attack Chinggis Khan and Ong Khan it was Dei Sechen who sent a messenger to Chinggis Khan to warn him of the impending attacks. *The Secret History* tells us that the leaders of the Onggirat tribe, Dergeg, Emel, Alqui, and others participated the assembly. Dei Sechen might have been one of them.

With regard to levirate marriage in ancient Mongol society, Rossabi’s study indicates that the wives of Mongol Khans and nobles were exceptions to levirate marriage. Rossabi found that several renowned women, though relatively young when they were widowed, never remarried, instead they reared their children and managed households on their own. The two famous women he gives as examples are Chinggis Khan’s mother Hő’elun and Khubilai Khan’s mother Sorghagaghtani-Beki. However, although Hő’elun was not taken by one of her husband’s relatives, she was later remarried to Menglik Ecige, the old servant of Yesügei, the father of the famous shaman, Kokochü, of the Qongqotad clan by the arrangement of Chinggis Khan. “He (Menglik Echige) was always with Genghis Khan, in good times and bad. Genghis Khan gave him his mother, Ö’älün Ekä.”

When Rashid compared Sorghagaghtani-Beki with Hő’elun, he commented,

> And just as, when Chinggis Khan was left an orphan by his father, his mother, Hő’elun Eke, trained him and all the army, sometimes even going into battle herself and equipping and maintaining them until Chinggis Khan became independent and absolute, and attained to the degree of world-sovereignty, and accomplished great things thanks to his mother’s endeavors, so too Sorghagaghtani-Beki followed the same path in the training of her children. It is said, however, that in one respect she was more long-suffering than the mother of Chinggis Khan and won the palm from her for constancy. After a time Chingiz-Khan

---

38 *The Secret History*, ch. 4: 68.
gathered from a cryptic remark of his mother that she wanted a husband and he gave her in marriage to Menglik Echige.\textsuperscript{41}

Sorghaghtani-Beki was Khubilai’s mother, the senior wife of Tolui. \textit{Yuanshi} only has a very brief biography of her without any accounts of her activities. Fortunately, Rashid Al-din offered a lengthy description about her.\textsuperscript{42} She was portrayed as being “extremely intelligent and able and towered above all the women in the world”.\textsuperscript{43} When Tolui died, Ögödei proposed that Sorghaghtani marry his son Güyük. This marital union, as pointed out by Rossabi, had important political considerations. “This marital union would have linked the two main princely families in East Asia and would probably have ensured an orderly succession to the position of Great Khan rather than disputes or even wars between the sons of Ögödei and the sons of Tolui.”\textsuperscript{44} However, Sorghaghtani refused this offer and her refusal was accepted. According to Holmgren, this was done presumably because it would have been unseemly to force the senior widow of an influential man into marriage with one who already had an established set of wives of his own.\textsuperscript{45}

A further explanation provided by Holmgren is that after the establishment of the World Empire, the institution of direct succession from father to son began to emerge and develop. With a regularized system of succession, there was no need for the levirate as a political strategy to legitimize the position of the incoming ruler. In addition, that the office of Khan went to a son of the senior wife meant that a more rigid ranking system for wives and sons had to be instituted within the imperial family, and the more rigid the ranking, the greater the difficulty in incorporating the widow into a new family. Thus, Holmgren states, even when the son of the senior wife did not for

\textsuperscript{41} See \textit{The Successors}, 4:168-9.
\textsuperscript{42} Rahid Al-din, \textit{The Successors}, 4:168-171.
\textsuperscript{43} Rahid Al-din, \textit{The Successors}, 4:168.
some reason inherit the political authority of his father, levirate union between the widow and her husband’s successor was unlikely to occur.\textsuperscript{46}

In “Imperial Marriage in the Native Chinese and Non-Han State, Han to Ming”, Holmgren contrasts Han Chinese marriage patterns with those of several non-Han states whose native marriage systems allowed polygamy, the levirate, the marriage of distant agnates and generally fell more on the side of bride-wealth than dowry societies. She finds that the imperial families of these states developed several different marriage systems: the Tuoba of the Northern Wei denying any power to the mothers of emperors, the Qidan of the Liao marrying exclusively with one consort clan, and the Mongols of the Yuan marrying with the rulers of allied tribes, preventing their women from gaining control of the throne by allowing succession only to adult sons.\textsuperscript{47}

In her analyses, Holmgren also underlines the importance of the imperial marriage of the Mongol Yuan as an exception to the traditional Mongolian marriage system. She suggests that the bride-price system only applied to other levels of the Mongol society, but not to the imperial house. In contrast to bride-price systems operating at other levels of Mongol society, the imperial princess was furnished with a lavish dowry symbolic of her continuing membership in the ruling house.\textsuperscript{48}

Holmgren divides the wives of Chinggis Khan and his sons and grandsons into two different groups. The first consists of women (wives and daughters) taken from defeated enemies such as Naiman, Tartar, Tangut, Jurchen and Uduyut-merkit. Marriage ties with most of these groups was a once-only phenomenon. The second group was composed of women (daughters) taken, by way of formal agreement, from allied tribes such as the Onggirat and Ikires.\textsuperscript{49}

During the World Empire and the Yuan, the Onggirat clan was the most celebrated of those who maintained a very stable marriage relationship with the Mongol royal family. In 1237 Ögödei Khan declared, "The girls born of the Onggirat tribe should become the empresses (of Mongol rulers) for generations; the boys born in the Onggirat should marry princesses (of the Mongols) for generations. This should never be ceased." This statement may be viewed as evidence for the existence of a two-clan preferential system of marriage in early Mongol society. However, Holmgren suggests that this decree did not necessarily imply that the members of the Mongol ruling clan would henceforth only take Onggirat women as their senior or principal wives, since during both the World Empire and the Yuan dynasty, marriage ties of the ruling clan were spread over a large number of groups.

According to the results of a survey carried out by Holmgren on the background of women who married into important branches of the ruling house from Chinggis Khan's time to the end of the Yuan, sixty-nine women could be clearly identified as coming from over twenty different tribal groups or subordinate states. The Onggirat made up about 33% of these women. When the figures are broken down, the number of Onggirat wives declines to about 20% for the pre-Yuan era and climbs to about 50% for the Yuan, while the number of other groups decreases to about half what it was in the earlier period.

Holmgren claims that Onggirat men who married daughters of Yuan rulers or other important members of the royal clan rarely had their own daughters selected as principal wives for the ruling house. Thus Onggirat empresses were not daughters of Chinggisid princesses. Rather, they came from lines which had had no previous marriage ties with the throne and no close association with the highest ranks of the Onggirat leadership. Thus, while Yuan princesses married into and were

---

50 YS 118: 2915. See the biography of Dei-Sechen.
able to greatly influence, even control, the Onggirat leadership, influential Onggirat leaders were unable to manipulate marriage ties with the royal house to further their own political ambitions for the control of the throne. Holmgren believes that there was a deliberate attempt to maximize the spread of marriage ties to avoid the development of close or exclusive relations with the Onggirat, which might work to the disadvantage of the imperial family. Holmgren assumes that the official rhetoric stemmed from a desire to appease or compliment the Onggirat tribesmen for, with the rise of Bosqur during Chinggis Khan’s day, there had been a major revolution in the leadership of that confederation. Ögödei’s declaration may also have been a warning to other tribal leaders that they could expect no great politically advantageous ties with the imperial house.

4. Sources

The Mongol empire of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries was the largest contiguous land empire in human history. In its heyday, it stretched from Korea to Hungary, including most of Asia, as well as a large part of Eastern Europe. It lasted for well over a century, and parts of it survived for very much longer. For this reason, the study of the Mongol Empire is relatively difficult. One major problem confronted by historians derives from the linguistic requirements. The sources available to the historian are in Mongolian, Chinese, Persian, Arabic, Turkish, Japanese, Korean, Armenian, Georgian, Latin, and other languages. Obviously, it is an unrealistic task for a historian to read all of these languages in the original.

Historians have attempted to provide several solutions to this problem. One of them has been termed by David Morgan as *haute vulgarization*. Here, individual historians do not necessarily make much serious effort to master the target languages; instead, they produce syntheses based on

---

secondary sources, such as those works by specialists on China, Mongolia, the Islamic world, or Europe. The historian of the Mongol Empire is basically required to select his work of Asia, west or east, and to base it on the sources of the two major languages—Persian or Chinese. There is no escape from the necessity of relying on translation.\textsuperscript{54}

\textsuperscript{53} J. Holmgren, "Observations ... ", (1986): 139.
The Mongol Empire of the 13th century

Although it is desirable to have some knowledge of the Mongolian language to study Mongol history, the Mongolian language did not exist in written form before the time of Chinggis Khan. The earliest form of written Mongolian made use of a script borrowed from the Uighur Turks. In addition, the Mongol conquerors were not familiar with the concept of historical recording until they received influences from sinicized non-Chinese peoples and Chinese.\(^5^6\) The only three important Mongolian sources are *Menggu mishi* (The Secret History of the Mongols), *Menggu huangjinshi* (the Altan Tobci) 蒙古黃金史, and *Menggu yuanliu* (The Origin and Development of the Mongols), of which the most important and extensively explored was the *Menggu mishi*, of which several translations are available, including four in English.\(^5^7\) However, no manuscript of the original Mongolian version of the text has yet been located, and the source of the present text is in a Chinese manuscript form. Moreover, there is great controversy with regard to the date of completion of this book. The suggested dates range from 1228 to 1276. The majority of the scholars in Yuan and Mongolian studies since the late Qing dynasty, including Qian Daxin 錢大昕, Tu Ji 唐寄, Paul Pelliot, Boris Vladimirtsov, and Naka Michiyoshi 那柯通世, believe that it was composed in 1240. However, more careful examination of the historical background and social and political contexts has lead some scholars, such as Igo, De Rachewiltz and Zhen Jin 甄金, along with many Japanese scholars, to believe that it was composed in 1228 (in July of the year of the

---


Rat), at the Kurletai election of Ögödei as the Great Mongol Khan, and this book might have been supplemented in the later reigns.\textsuperscript{58}

The title of the Secret History of the Mongols reveals that it was not for public readers, and thus it was never published or translated into Chinese or any other languages in the Yuan dynasty. It records the course of events of almost five hundred years and more than twenty generations, from the mythical origins of the Chinggisid house in legendary times until the latter part of the reign of Chinggis Khan's first successor, Ögödei, who died in 1241. A major part of this book deals with the events which occurred during the life of Chinggis Khan. In the later reigns of the Yuan dynasty. Some Chinese scholars suggested that this book be supplemented with new materials; their suggestion was declined because of the special nature of this book.\textsuperscript{59}

The particular nature of this book determines that it might not intend to provide false information, or to hide any facts, or to polish anything, for it had recorded both the positive and negative facts in the Mongol history. For example, it recorded the incident in which Chinggis murdered one of his half-brothers; it also recorded the fact that Chinggis' wife, Borte, was captured by the Merkit people and married to one of the tribesmen. Although she was rescued later by Chinggis, she gave birth to Jochi and it was highly probable that he had the blood of Merkit. There are three Chinese versions of this book, all in Uighur Mongolian script, using the phonetic value of the characters irrespective of their meaning to represent the Mongolian sounds. Because it is the only substantial surviving Mongol work about the foundation of the Mongol Empire, it is of great importance. Most historians this century have used it as their main source for the study of the life and career of Chinggis Khan.

\textsuperscript{59} See the biography of Yu Ji 裕集, in Yuanshi, Zhonghua Shuju, juan 181: 4179.
One of the major differences between European and Chinese historiography in the past, as pointed out by many historians, was the predominance of official historiography in China. The standard dynastic histories focus on the institutional and administrative aspects of persons and events to such a degree that they report what was only known to the metropolitan bureaucracies. The picture of the past as given by these sources is, as pointed out by Herbert Franke, only one-sided.60

The major Chinese source is the official dynastic history, the *Yuanshi* 元史, compiled by Song Lian 宋濂 (1310-81) et al., between 1369-70. It is complete in two hundred and ten jüan, which covers the year 1206-1369. Chinese administrative practice required that year-by-year records should be reserved relating to everything of the government. By compiling the official history of the fallen rulers they would symbolically formally declare that the new dynasty had decisively replaced the old one. The *Yuanshi* was compiled hastily by the Ming government of China after the end of the Yuan dynasty in 1368 in less than one year; this was faster than any other Standard History. It is incomplete and inaccurate in many aspects, especially the “Liezhuan” 列傳. In addition, many careless mistakes are to be found. Therefore, since its completion, the *Yuanshi* has been criticized severely. It has been deemed to be the least satisfactory of all the official dynastic histories of China. However, no matter how unsatisfactory it may appear, the *Yuanshi* nonetheless, preserves valuable source materials. In the words of Endymion Wilkinson, “the fact that it is unpolished is a blessing in disguise in that many documents are preserved in their original or near-original state.”61 Yet, by only using the *Yuanshi* we still can only gain a semi-complete picture of the Mongol Empire. Like other Chinese sources of the period, it shows almost no interest in any part of the

---

world other than China itself and its immediate neighbors, such as Korea, Japan, and Burma. There are no sections on the other Mongol khanates. Therefore, Chinese sources, though certainly the basis for the study of the most important part of the Mongol Empire, are of limited use for the history of the empire as a whole.62

The shortcomings of the official history may sometimes be remedied by the so-called "yeshi" 野史 (unofficial histories). The biji 笔记 or "notebooks", for example, is a unique genre in Chinese historiography. It provides important information ignored or omitted by official histories. Lin Yutang 林语堂 gave an excellent characterization of the biji:

Memoirs or notebooks are the laziest form of literature, requiring no organization of material, and therefore the most popular literary occupation of Chinese scholars. Such notebooks vary from serious and sometimes highly important records of historical events and documents, written to supplement official histories, to the most disorderly jumble of tales of ghosts, fox spirits, and reincarnations, all these sometimes co-existing in the same volume. In general, the notebooks come well under the general classification of 'scholarly gossip'. The purpose of the authors was in most cases the desire to supply materials for learned and witty conversations, an aim which was often expressed in the prefaces to such works. But often the authors hoped to supplement the official histories by writing down their own experiences and information. Another purpose was to illustrate traditional ethics by giving examples of behavior both laudable and blamable. Finally there was a motive which usually accompanied the other motives, namely, entertainment. It is clear that their details on cultural history have particularly high value. It is equally clear that, written by and for scholars, they also reflect the ideology of the literati class with all their traditional concepts.63

Because of the colorful and disordered nature of biji, it is often necessary for historians to be discriminatory and to make efforts to reorganize the contents of the subject matters. Of the twenty-

---

nine extant biji from the Yuan dynasty, the most extensively quoted from include Chuo geng lu 載耕錄 and Yuanshi yeting ji 元氏掖庭記 by Tao Zongyi 陶宗儀, Changchun zhenren xiyou ji 長春真人西遊記 by Li Zhichang 李志常, and Gengshen waishi 庚申外史 by Quan Heng 權衡. Chuo geng lu faithfully recorded various matters in the Yuan society, from the imperial palace to the common people, including palace court activities, and its secrets, social events, and customs. Yuan Shi Yeting Ji, on the other hand, focuses on the Yuan palace and records such details as the buildings, foods and drinks, clothing, imperial titles, and celebrations. They are indispensable for this study.

Persia, according to John Andrew Boyle, did not have a tradition of official historiography as China did, but during the Mongol rule it did produce its own variety of “official” history. The most important works of the chronicles dealing with the years after Chinggis Khan’s invasion were written by Juvaini, Rashid al-Din, and Wassaf. All of them were high-ranking government servants. Juvaini was appointed by Hülegü as the governor of all the territories that had been directly held by the Caliphs, i.e. Baghdad itself, Arab Iraq or Lower Mesopotamia and Khuzistan in 1259. He continued to administer this great province for more than twenty years.64 And the most authoritative of them was Rashid al-Din who for twenty years was the chief minister of the Il-khanate, the Mongol kingdom in Persia and Iraq. Therefore, it is unquestionable that all three historians had access to good sources of information, and that they understood their sources and writings. But the problem is, as pointed out by David Morgan, that most of these histories, even if they were not in all cases precisely official production, were written for royal patrons and reflect to a greater or lesser extent the points of view and the preconceptions of the rulers and the official classes.65

Ala-ad-Din 'Ata-Malik Juvaini's book, *Ta'rikh-i-Jahan-Gusba*-called, was translated by John Andrew Boyle as *The History of the World Conqueror*, for Juvaini tried to make it as comprehensive as he could. Juvaini traveled twice to Mongolia, where he gathered large quantities of information. To quote Steven Runciman's comments to the Forward of Boyle's translation, "Of the writers who have left contemporary accounts of the Mongols none is more important than Juvaini. He knew personally many of the chief actors in the dramatic stories that he told. He enjoyed the confidence of the Il-Khan Hülegü, the Mongol conqueror of Baghdad. He himself was intimately connected with one of the most interesting episodes in the story, the destruction of the headquarters of the Assassins at Alamut."

Juvaini's history is an encyclopedia of the early Mongol period, written in a flowery literary Persian style.

Yet Juvaini's work has for a long time been overshadowed by the later Rashid-al-Din's *Jami' al-tawarikh*, "Collection of Histories", which deserves the title of a world history, "a vast historical encyclopedia, such as no single people, either in Asia or in Europe, possessed in the Middle Ages". Rashid-al-Din had an advantage, in the sense that he was able to draw upon Mongol sources inaccessible to Juvaini. His account of the early life of Chinggis Khan is infinitely more complex and more detailed than Juvaini's work. As a trained physician, he entered Mongol service at the end of the thirteenth century. This was at the time when the Mongols in Persia had at last accepted the religion of the majority of their subjects. The Ilkhan Ghazan had declared his conversion to Islam after his accession in 1295, and the Mongols under his rule had followed his examples. With the Mongols' conversion to Islam and the gradual growth of identification between them and their subjects, it was now the Mongol, rather than the Muslim identity, that was in danger. David Morgan

---

67 See the English introduction to Vol. I of Qazvini's text, lxxii-lxiv.
assumes that, probably with this in mind, Ghazan asked Rashid al-Din to write a history of the Mongols in Persia, possibly as some kind of a permanent aide-memoire.\textsuperscript{68}

The second volume of this important work was translated by John Andrew Boyle entitled \textit{The Successors of Genghis Khan}, which was published by the Columbia University Press in 1971. A complete Chinese translation entitled \textit{Shiji} 由余大钧 and Zhou Jianqi 周建奇 was published in 1986. However, a complete English translation of this important work was not available until 1999, which was translated by W. M. Thackston and published by Harvard University, entitled \textit{Compendium of Chronicles, A History of the Mongols}.

The most important European sources are those provided by travelers, among whom the most acute observers were two well-known Franciscan friars, John of Plano Carpini (1185-1252) and William Rubruck (?1215/1220-?1270). Carpini was sent to Mongolia by Pope Innocent IV in April of 1245, after the Mongols invaded Europe and when the Europeans were in the fear of another attack from the Mongols. Carpini spent two and half years traveling as papal ambassador through Eastern Europe and to southern Russia to the camp of the Great Khan, not far from the Mongol capital, Qaraqorum in Mongolia. In the November of 1247 he returned to France. Soon he completed his report to the Pope later entitled \textit{Libellus Historicus}. Carpini’s book, \textit{L’ Ystoria Mongalorum}, describes the history and customs of Mongols he had observed on his journey. But the major part of his report discusses in detail how the Mongols organized themselves for war, and how the European powers ought to prepare themselves in resistance.

More detailed information about the Mongols was provided by William of Rubruck, who was sent by Louis IX of France at the end of 1352. Following the orders of Louis IX, Rubruck insisted that he was only a missionary instead of an official ambassador, and therefore he traveled more

freely, and eventually arrived at Qaraqorum, the capital of the Mongol Empire. He stayed there for six months, and had meetings with the then Great Khan, Möngke. Rubruck’s *Itinerarium* records his close observations on the military and political organizations of the Mongols Empire, the social position of Mongolian women, the capital of the Mongol Empire, as well as the customs of the Mongols. In sum, his book offers a much more straightforward travel narrative than Carpini’s book.

Twenty years later, when Marco Polo traveled to China, the Mongol Empire had, to a degree, broken up into separate khanates. Marco Polo spent twenty years in Asia, most of it in the service of the Mongols in China. According to himself, he soon became a high-ranking official in Khubilai Khan’s court and participated in many important policy-making processes, including Mongols’ invasions of Japan in 1281, and of South-east Asia in 1283, 1285 and 1287. His book, the *Travel of Marco Polo*, is by far the best known, and the most valuable due to its information about China. It provides useful information about the administrative organizations of the Mongol Empire, its central and local governments, palace institutions, tax system, Chinese cities, provinces, Mongol troops, as well as transportation system of the Yuan dynasty. His book greatly aroused Europeans’ enthusiasm for the East. During the 14\textsuperscript{th} and 15\textsuperscript{th} centuries, his book was the most important reference book for drawing Asian maps; it directly enlightened Europeans on how to adopt printing and gunpowder production techniques. And most importantly, it played an important role in the geographical discoveries of the 15\textsuperscript{th} and 16\textsuperscript{th} centuries.\textsuperscript{69}

Chapter One

The Origins and development of Mongolian Marital Traditions and the Characteristics of the Mongolian Royal Marriages

1. Mongolian Exo-tribal (Exogamic) Marriage

When we observe the marriages of the Mongolian tribes from the period of the eleventh to the thirteenth century, we find many distinctive facts. In this period, the basic social unit of the Mongol society was the obogh (clan or tribe), which translates to “particular blood-related alliance”. Each person belonged to a specific tribe. Every member of a Mongol tribe knew that he or she was related in blood with other members of his or her own tribe. They were his or her urugh/uruh which means “kinfolk”, “members of the same tribe”, or of “having common ancestry”. All the people in other tribes were called jad, which translates to “different race of tribe” or “aliens”. Mongols believed that the people in the same tribe should care for each other, help each other and protect each other. As for jad, they must be treated as enemies or wild animals with sharp vigilance. And if necessary, they should be plundered and butchered. However, there were so-called torgüd in the jad, which means “relatives on the side of wives”. A member of the torgüd was not regarded as a member of jad; instead, he would have been treated well. People usually called the other party (male) huda. If the relationship of huda had been established, both parties would make an agreement to exchange girls as wives of another party. Therefore, in ancient Mongol society, each

---

tribe had a relatively fixed huda—or relatives by marriage. This marriage custom was also practiced by the imperial family in the Yuan dynasty.

The ancient Mongols adopted a strict exogamic marriage institution. A man was not allowed to marry a woman from within his own tribe. Instead he had to go to another tribe to choose and receive a wife. This marital institution actually existed throughout the whole period of the Mongol clan society. But between the eleventh century and thirteenth century Mongol society had adopted a patrilineal clan system. Blood relationship would be decided only in accordance with the patrilineal relationship. For instance and as an example, the female ancestor (Mo. *emegen*) of the Mongol tribe, Alanquoa 阿蘭豁阿, had five sons, two of them were born with her husband Dobun-mergen. Three were born when she was in widowhood, which, according to the Mongolian legend, were received from the god. Therefore, the clans that came from Alanquoa’s youngest son Boduanchar 李端察兒, including Chinggis Khan’s clan, did not believe that they had any blood relationship with the first two sons of Alanquoa, still less would they believe that they had any blood relationship with the other two sons of Alanquoa, who were born during her widowhood. Therefore, the men of Chinggis Khan’s clan were able to marry the women of Salji’üd (Salezhiwuti 撒勒只兀惕) clan. This clan was the descendant of the fourth son of Alanquoa. However, because

---

*tongyi qian de shizuzhi canyu*論蒙古諸部統一前的民族制視余,*Menggushi yanjiu lunwenji,*


Every night, a bright yellow man entered by the light of the hole at the top or [by that] of the door top of the tent and rubbed my belly. His light was wont to sink into my belly. When he went out, like a yellow dog he was wont to crawl out by the beams of the sun or moon.

How [can] ye speak [so] rashly?
If one understand by that, [it is evident that]
Its sign is [that]
They are sons of Heaven.
the first two sons of Alanquoa were from the same father, definitely there was no marital relationship between them.\textsuperscript{72}

This marital custom was recorded in historical materials. For example, Chinggis Khan and the people of the Qraqin tribe and the Salji’id tribe were all the descendants of Alanquoa. Thus, when Chinggis attempted to gather people in the Mongol steppes, he sent envoys to these two tribes, saying, “Many tribes which are not our relatives now have joined us, including the Onggirat tribe, the Tartar tribe, and the Dierliejin tribe. And we have become friends. You and I are blood brothers, let us make an alliance and become friends.”\textsuperscript{73} But the people of these two tribes did not agree and insulted the envoy. Therefore they fought each other for a long time. Finally Chinggis Khan became the winner and killed many of them. The rest of the people in these tribes became his slaves. Some of them submitted to other Mongol tribes. Chinggis Khan issued an order to his tribesmen, “Do not marry their girls, and also do not give girls in marriage to them; because they still follow the way of consanguinity, which makes them distinctive from other Mongolian tribes.”\textsuperscript{74}

Chinggis Khan once sent Turuqajar and Sartahei to conquer the Barhuti tribe led by Hotan-a’în. They formed an alliance and made an agreement, and pledged, “We should be like the people in the same clan who are blood brothers. Just as the Mongols who do not marry girls within their tribe, we should not marry our girls to each other. Each of us should marry girls from the other tribes. And follow the betrothal rules and customs of marriage.”\textsuperscript{75}

Ögödei Khan had admitted that one of the four big mistakes he made in his life was “to hearken unto the word of a woman without principle and to cause [one] to bring the daughters of the \textit{ulus} of

\textsuperscript{74} Shiji 史集, vol. 1a:294.
Uncle Odchigin were [mine] errors. Although I be the Qahan, Lord of the nation, to deliver myself unto deeds [which were] errors without principle, this was one of my wrongs.” 76 The women Ögödei took were actually from the Oirat tribe, but at that time they belonged to Odchigin, the younger brother of Chinggis Khan. Therefore they were viewed as the people of Odchigin.

When Chinggis Khan conquered the Merqit tribe, the Tartar tribe, the Keliet tribe, the Naiman tribe, and many other tribes as well as states, he had taken their women as his wives,77 because these tribes had no blood relation with Chinggis Khan’s Nilun tribe. While after he defeated the Zhurqi tribe and the Taichiwut tribe, he did not take any women from them, because the people of Zhurqi tribe were also the descendants of Hobule Khan, and the people of the Taichiwut tribe were also the descendants of Khaidu. However, since they had been the enemies of Chinggis Khan, they suffered his wrath. Chinggis Khan “killed all the descendants of Awuchu Batur of the Taichiwut.” and captured the people of Zhurqi tribe and made them his slaves.78 From these we can see that although the members of the same tribe could become enemies, they still knew that they had to comply with the tradition of external-tribal marriage. Thus, for the purpose of avoiding consanguineous marriage and the multiplication of the tribal population, it was undoubtedly an important device for the existence of their own tribe.

2. Consanguineous Marriage and Inbreeding in the Mongol Imperial Family

The practice of exogamy was obvious to avoid consanguineous marriage and to prevent inbreeding, and the ancient Mongols seemed to be very aware of this. However, the Mongols did
not know that they should also avoid consanguineous marriages between two different tribes. This could happen if the two tribes maintained a constant marital relationship, such as those between the Mongol royal family and Dei Sechan's family of the Onggirat tribe. The Mongol royal family had maintained a stable marital relationship with the nobles of the Onggirat tribe since the time of Chinggis Khan, and it lasted until the extinction of the Yuan dynasty. As we will see in the following, consanguineous marriages had occurred since the time of Kubilai Khan, and its negative consequences had become gradually obvious. Because of the consanguineous marriage and inbreeding, the population quality of the Mongol royal family decreased rapidly, and many princes and princesses were born unhealthy and did not live long.

The Mongol men were allowed to marry almost all of their female relatives except their own mothers, daughters, and sisters. Marriages between cousins were very common and normal. Grandfathers, fathers, and sons might marry the sisters of the same generation. All of these had happened in the Mongolian royal clan, which made the affinity within the royal clan extremely complicated. For instance, three of the four daughters of Zha'a-qianbo 札阿絯季, the younger brother of Ong Khan, were taken by Chinggis Khan and his sons. The eldest one was taken by Chinggis Khan himself; the second one was married to his eldest son Jochi; the third one, Sorghaghtani-Beki, became the wife of Tolui, the mother of Kubilai Khan. Emperor Taiding married Sadabala 撥答八剌, the daughter of his own elder sister, Princess of Shouning.

After an investigation on the ages of the Mongol Khans and emperors, I have found that from the times of the Yeke Mongol Ulus to the Yuan dynasty, the life spans of the members of the Mongol royal family decreased rapidly.

Let's first look at the life spans of the Mongol Khans and the Yuan emperors. As for the four Mongol Khans in the time of Yeke Mongol Ulus, Chinggis Khan died when he was 66 years old,
Ögödei Khan died at 56 years old, Güyük Khan died at 43, and Möngke Khan died at 52. Among the emperors of the Yuan dynasty, Khubilai lived the longest, 80 years. Temür (Chengzong) died at 42, Qaishan (Wuzong) died at 31, Ayubarvada (Renzong) died at 36, Shidebala (Yingzong) died at 21, Yisun-Temür (Emperor Taiding) died at 36. Furthermore, Qoshila (Mingzong) died at 30, Tuq-Temür (Wenzong) died at 29, Irinjibal (Ningzong) died at 7, and Toqon-Temür (Shundi) died at 51. Among these, Güyük Khan, Shidebala, and Qoshila did not die naturally. They died of the internal political struggles of the Mongol royal family. Except Khubilai, nobody lived as long as Chinggis Khan. Many of them were afflicted with chronic illness throughout their lives, and were even unable to fulfill their daily duties. For example, Chengzong was so ill that he had to trust his empress Bulughan to handle the imperial affairs for him.\textsuperscript{79} Wuzong, Renzong and Wenzong also did not have good health.

It is not necessary to analyze all the marriages in the Mongol royal family. In the following I will give examples of the intricate affinity between Khubilai’s family and his principal wife Chabui Khatun’s family. We will see that consanguineous marriages were indeed very common and their consequences were serious.

Dei Sechan was the father-in-law of Chinggis Khan, the maternal grandfather of Tolui. Dei Sechan had three sons, Anchen, Huohu, and Ce. Anchen had three sons, the eldest son was Chigu, the second son was Wochen, the third son was Nachen. Chigu married the third daughter of Chinggis Khan, Tumanlun. Wochen married Tolui’s Daughter Yesubuhua in the tenth year of Ögödei’s reign (1238); Nachen married

\textsuperscript{79}YS 114: 2873, see Houfei zhuan, “Chengzong was always ill. The empress mediated among different parties to handle the imperial affairs. People all praised that government of the Dade era was smooth and fair, it was handled by this empress.”
Princess of the State of Lu Xuezhigan 薛只千, the granddaughter of Chinggis Khan, but her father is unknown.80

Khüišli married three women from Dei Sechan’s family. One was Chabui, the daughter of Anchen; one was Tiegulun 帖古倫, the daughter of Tuolian 脫懐 (Anchen’s grandson). The other was Nanbui 南必, the daughter of Nachen’s grandson Xiantong 仙童. Note that Khüišli’s daughter Tumanlun 途滿倫 was married to Anchen’s son Chigu 赤古, Khüišli’s another daughter Nangjiazhen 衛加真 was married to Nachen’s son Woluochen 玖羅陳, who later remarried Woluochen’s younger brother Tiemur 帖木兒, and then remarried Woluochen’s another younger brother Manzitai 閔子台. Ögedei’s daughter Suorhahan 蘇兒哈罕 married to Anchen’s grandson Nahe 納合. 81

Chabui Khatun gave birth to four sons, none of them were healthy, and all died young. Her first son Dorji died early and have no descendants.82 Her second son, the crown prince Jin Gim 真金, was very weak in health, and finally died when he was forty-three years old, leaving three unhealthy sons, Kamala甘麻剌, Tarmabala 答剌麻八剌, and Temür 鐵穆耳 Khan. The eldest son of Jin Gim, Kamnala, died at forty; the second son, Darmabala, died at twenty-nine; and the third son, Temür (Öijeitü) Khan, died at forty-two.

Tarmabala had three sons. The eldest son was Amoga 阿木哥, Prince of Wei. His death date is unknown. But he probably died early because he was not involved in the political struggles for the throne with his younger brothers. The second son was Qaishan 海山 Khan (Wuzong, r.1307-

80 YS 109: 2757-60, see Gongzhu Biao.
81 Please refer to the tables in Chapter Four of this thesis for details. YS 118: 2915-21, see “De Xuechan”; 109: 2757-60, Gongzhu Biao.
82 Rashid Al-din, The Successors of Genghis Khan, trans. by John A. Boyle, Columbia University Press, (1971): 242: “He did not marry and had no issue. He was older than Ahaqa Khan. He was always sickly and ill and died of that chronic illness.” Rashid Al-din, as a doctor, probably had sensed the common hereditary disease in the Mongol royal clan, therefore he mentioned it as “that chronic illness.”
Amogha's three daughters were married to the Koryo kings and they all died very young. The Senior Princess-of-State of Cao 曹國長公主, Kimdong 金童, was married to the King Wang To 王聶 in around 1326 and died one year later when she was only eighteen years old; her sister, Princess of Qing-hua 慶華公主, Bayan Khudu, succeeded her and married Wang To in 1333 and died in 1344 when she was about twenty-seven years old. Another daughter of Amogha, Princess Supreme-of-State of Lu 魯國大長公主, Botasirin 寶塔失里, was married to King Kongmin, Wang Ki 王祈, and died at about thirty-two.\(^{83}\)

From Temür (Öljeitü) Khan, Mongol royal population quality began to decline, and many princes died very young. For example, the son of Chengzong, Deshou 德壽, was born of Shiliandali 失慎答里, the daughter of Woluochen 於羅陳. Deshou was designated as the heir apparent in the sixth month of the ninth year of Dade (1305). But he died in the twelfth month of the same year. In addition, the second son of Renzong, Wudusibuhua, the four sons of Emperor Taiding, the three sons of Wenzong, and the two sons of Shundi, all died very young.

The “Table of the Imperial Clan Genealogy” in the Yuanshi has the following records, which may help us understand the consequences of consanguineous marriage and inbreeding in the Mongol imperial clan.

- Emperor Chengzong had one son, the crown prince Deshou, who died early and had no children.
- Emperor Wuzong had two sons. The elder one was the Emperor Mingzong; and the younger one was the Emperor Wenzong.
- Emperor Renzong had two sons. The elder one was the Emperor Yingzong; and the younger one was Wudusi-buhua, Prince of An, who died early without children.
- Emperor Yingzong had no children.

\(^{83}\) Please refer to TABLE 2 of this thesis, “Death Ages of Mongol Princesses in the Korean Court”.
Emperor Taiding had four sons. The elder one was Alijiba, the crown prince; the second one was Badima-yirjianpu, the prince of Jin; the third one was prince Xiaoxue; the fourth one was prince Yundan-zangbu. They all died young and had no children.

Emperor Mingzong had two sons. The elder one was the Emperor Shun; and the second one was the Emperor Ningzong.

Emperor Wenzong had three sons. The elder one was Alatenadala, the crown prince, who died early without children. The second one was prince Yantiegusi; the third one was prince Taipingna. They all died early without children.

Emperor Ningzong died early without children.

Emperor Shun had three sons. The elder one was Aiyushilidala. The other two died early.\(^\text{84}\)

The early deaths of royal members were so frightening for the survivors that all of them became very superstitious. They deeply believed in curses and retribution and were turned to religions for refuge. In addition, to protect their sons from these mishaps, they chose to entrust their children to the care of other people. For example, Khubilai’s third son Mangqala, born of Chabui, married Anchen’s niece Khutui, and had three sons. When Mangqala found that many of his children died very young, he decided to hand over his son Ananda to a Turkistan Muslim called Mihtar Aqtachi to bring him up.\(^\text{85}\) Wenzong’s empress Buda-shili bore two sons: Alatena-dana, who was titled Prince of Yan, and Guna-dala. In the twelfth month of 1330 Wenzong designated Anatena-dana as the heir apparent. But in the second month of 1331 the crown prince died. Wenzong was so frightened that he decided to entrust his second son Guna-dala to the care of the chief-minister Yantie-mur, and changed his son’s name to Yantie-gusi. Both Wenzong and Buda-shili were very superstitious. The death of the crown prince made them believe that they were getting repaid for the murders of Mingzong and his wife Babusha. Quan Heng in *Genshen waishi* records that when Wenzong was about to die in 1332, he admitted that the murder of his brother Mingzong was the most serious mistake in his whole life,

\(^{\text{84}}\) *YS* 107:2729.

and he regretted it deeply. His last will was to transfer the throne to Mingzong’s son. “The throne originally belonged to Mingzong, if you love me, please recall Mingzong’s son Tuohuan-tiemûr (Toghan-Temûr) and let him ascend the throne, so that when I meet Mingzong in the nether world, I can tell him that and fob him off with some lame excuse.”

Wenzong’s mother Daji was the daughter of Hundu-tiemuer, the grandson of Anchen. Wenzong’s empress Buda-shiri was the daughter of Diao’a-bula. Diao’a-bula was the son of Tiemur. Tiemur married Khubilai’s daughter Nangjiazhen. Tiemur was the son of Wuoluochen, Woluochen was the son of Nachen, and Nachen was the son of Anchen.

Out of fear of sudden death, the Mongol royal members tried to seek protection in religion. Buddhism became popular in the imperial clan throughout the Yuan dynasty. All Mongol emperors spent a large amount of money on temple construction and Buddhist ceremonies. For example, Emperor Taiding once granted twenty thousand ding of money and one thousand qing of land to a temple called Da tianyuan yansheng si. The Tibetan monks (xifan seng

---

87 GSWS, p.513. Mingzong had two sons. The elder son was Toghan-Temûr born by Mailaidi; the younger son was Yilian-zhiban 尹謨質班 (Irinjibd) born by Empress Babusha. When Mingzong was murdered, Yilian-zhiban was only four years old. He came to Dadu together with his mother. Wenzong liked Yilian-zhiban and allowed him and his mother to live in the palace. Later Wenzong’s empress Budashili killed Babusha who had complained about the death of her husband. They also announced that Toghan-Temûr was not Mingzong’s son, and sent him into exile in Korea, and later moved him to Guangxi. Yilian-zhiban was brought up in the Yuan palace. (see Wang Gang 王岡, Zhongguo Yuandai zhengzhi shi, (1994): 138.
88 Please refer to Chapter Four of this thesis, Tables 3-4: “The empresses of Yuan from the Onggirat tribe” and “The Princesses of Yuan Court Married into Onggirat Tribe” for details.
89 YS 30: 674. The ministers of the Secretarial Council pointed out, “The supply of armies and common people must rely on the production of lands. Shizu built temples such as Da xuan wen hong jiao Temple and granted them permanent land properties, which were deemed then to be unnecessary expenses. However, Chengzong again built Tianshou wanning Temple, and spent twice as much as Shizu. Others like Wuzong’s building Chongen fuyuan, Renzong’s building Chenghua puqing, were even worse because they had to use the incomes of rent and monopoly. Yingzong leveled off hilltops to build temples, which injured soldiers and farmers, and eventually they were not profitable. Lands are from our ancestors. Descendants should treasure them. We are afraid that later (the monks) use the lands as excuses to improperly start constructions, and use “pray for blessing” as an excuse to satisfy their personal desires. We wish your Majesty to reconsider this decision.”
became very powerful in the Yuan court. Qaishan (Wuzong) issued a decree stipulating that, for those who beat up Tibetan monks, their hands should be cut off; for those who swore at Tibetan monks, their tongues should be cut out. 90

From Khubilai Khan to the last Yuan emperor Shundi, virtually all the Yuan emperors were initiated into monkhood through official ceremonies. During the reigns of Emperor Taiding, Wuzong, and Wenzong, the most commonly conducted Buddhist ceremony was to chant the “Sutra of Infinite Life” (Dasheng wuliangshou jing 大乘無量壽經). 91 However, none of them lived a long life. Emperor Taiding received the Buddhist commandment of “eternal life” from the emperor’s teacher in the third month of 1328, and ordered one thousand monks to pray for him. But, he died in the seventh month of the same year. 92

The reasons for the early death of the Mongol royal family members are many. Political assassination was certainly one of them. As far as we know, several Mongol Khans and Yuan emperors were murdered or poisoned by their political opponents. Besides this, there are some other factors that caused the early death of the Mongol royal family members, such as being unaccustomed to the new climate of China, indulgence in excessive drinking and sensual pleasure. But, consanguineous marriage and inbreeding must have been one of the key factors. The two-clan preferential marriage system was definitely the hotbed of inbreeding, which formed a vicious circle, and eventually led to the decrease of the population quality of the Mongol royal family.

---

90 YS 23:512.

91 Dasheng wuliangshou jing 大乘無量壽經 (Sutra of Immeasurable Life). The Sukhāvatīvyūha-sūtra is translated as the Amitaayus sūtra. The Dasheng wuliangshou jing; Skt. Aparamitaayur-naama-mahaayaanasutra; Tib. Tshe dang ye shes dpag tu med pa shes bya ba theg pa chen po'i mdo; (Great Vehicle Sutra of Immeasurable Longevity) [To.674/849, 675, □.361/474, 362] A eulogy to the merits of the tathaagata Aparimataayus 無量寿. Source for a nine-figure ma.n.dala centred on Amitaayus [Ngor.10].
http://www.human.toyogakuen-u.ac.jp/~acmuller/dicts/bdict/irmdex.htm

92 YS 30: 685-87.
The early deaths of the crown princes always aroused internal political struggles in the Mongol royal family, which reduced the strength of the Mongol superpower. The leadership of the Mongol royal family became weaker and weaker. At times they could not even find any suitable men to govern the empire. Empresses, empress dowagers, and some powerful ministers were constantly dominating the Yuan court. Finally, the last emperor of Yuan, the Shundi Toqon Temür, whose Mongol blood was controversial, ascended to the throne. It was he who led the Mongol empire to its end. Therefore, in a sense we may say that the consanguineous marriage and inbreeding contributed to the extinction of the Mongol rule.

3. Typical Patterns of Mongolian Royal Marriages—“One Way Marriages” and “Two Way Marriages”

In investigating the imperial marriages of the Mongol Yuan, I have found six tribes or states that had relatively stable marriage relationships with the family of Chinggis Khan. Besides Dei Sechen’s clan of the Onggirat tribe, Ikires tribe, Öngüt tribe, Oirat tribe, and the Koryŏ (Korean) royal family also had marriage relationships with the Mongol royal family.

These six clans can be divided into two categories according to the characteristics of their intermarriage relationships with the Mongol royal family. One can be called two-way marriage relationship, the other one-way marriage relationship. Onggirat tribe, Ikires tribe and Oirat tribe will be put into the first category since they both had women who became the empresses or imperial concubines of the Mongol Yuan royal family. They also had men married to the princesses of the Mongol royal family. As for the other three tribes, although their girls did not enjoy the honor of marrying emperors, their men did constantly have the privilege of marrying the princesses of Mongol Yuan.
This phenomenon may be explained if we relate it to the four social classes determined by the Mongol Yuan rulers. As Mongol tribes, the Onggirat, Ikires tribes, and Oirat tribe all belonged to the highest rank; Öngüt tribe and Uighur Idug-qut tribe belonged to the second class as they were “Semu” or miscellaneous peoples. While Koreans were on the third social rank as they were classified as “Hanren” 漢人 in the Yuan dynasty. The reason that the Mongol royal family did not choose women from these tribes as empresses, as suggested by some scholars, might be that they did not want their “noble” blood to be mixed and stained with that of these tribes.\(^{93}\) For instance, it is said that Khubilai Khan set up a family rule, never marrying Korean women. However, the Koryōsa records that Khubilai once issued a decree to the Koryō court, requiring it to send Korean princess to him to symbolize its submission, and the Koryō court eventually declined this request. Therefore, the establishment of a two-way marriage relationship was possibly related to political, social, cultural, and marriage traditions.

4. **Levirate Marriages in the Mongolian Royal Family**

Levirate marriage (*shouji hun* 收繼婚) is a type of marriage in which a widowed woman could be taken by one of her husband’s relatives. As one of the most distinct characteristics of the Mongol marriage customs, the levirate has attracted scholar’s attention and has been described and discussed extensively.

Mongol customs encouraged the remarriage of widows, but her new husband could be chosen only within her husband’s family. Therefore a son sometimes married his father’s widow as long as

\(^{93}\) For instance, see Xiao Qiqing, “Yuan Li guanxi zhong de wangshi hunyin yu qiangquan zhengzhi” 元麗關係中的王室婚姻與強權政治, *Yuandaishi xintan* 元代史新探, Xin Wen Feng Chuban Gongsi, 1983.
she was not his own mother, and a younger brother was occasionally expected to marry his elder brother’s widow (though an elder brother rarely married his younger brother’s widow).

In China proper, levirate had long been condemned by Chinese elites as early as the Spring and Autumn and Warring States periods (770-221 B.C.), in which it was called “zheng 蒸” (a son marries his step-mother) “bao 抱 (a younger brother marries his sister-in-law). This practice was banned officially by law in the Han dynasty (206-220 B.C.). It was condemned as “The behavior of beasts, it confuses the human relations, it goes against the heavenly rules, the punishment should be death.” However, levirate never completely disappeared in Chinese society.

According to the seniority of the successor and the succeeded (the widow) in a family or a clan, levirate marriage can be classified into two major categories: the two parties in a levirate marriage were in the same generation, such as a younger brother married by succession his elder brother’s wife, or an elder brother took the wife of his deceased younger brother. The other is that the two parties in a levirate marriage were in different generations, it can be called cross-generation levirate marriage, such as a son inherited his father’s widowed concubine, a nephew married the widowed wife or concubine of his uncle, a grandson married his successive paternal grandmother and so on.

Three types were more popular: a son married his father’s widowed concubine (or stepmother); a nephew married his widowed aunt; and a younger brother married his widowed sister-in-law.

Scholars have examined the conditions necessary for the optimum operation of levirate in early Mongol society both before and during the Yuan (1271-1368). General explanations for this custom include that a woman found it difficult to manage a household by herself and needed

---

remarriage to secure her survival. The Mongols believed that a woman who lacked the assistance of a man to share the workload might not be able to support and maintain her children and family. Remarriage with her dead husband’s younger brother or son would keep the family together, and preservation of the family was, from the Mongol standpoint, laudable;96 The Mongols condemned remarriage outside the family or clan because “a widow would be claimed by her former husband in the next life.” 97

Levirate also had strong economic implications. Herbert Franke points out that marriage in the Yuan dynasty was a contract between families and not between individuals. The wife is regarded after her marriage as a piece of family property. The economic implications of the custom of levirate are, of course, that the wife’s dowry and the betrothal presents shall remain in the husband’s family and not go to a third family.98 In Holmgren’s opinion, levirate seems to be simply a direct result of economic consideration. She argues that levirate operates most commonly in conjunction with bride-price rather than with the type of dowry system prevalent in early Chinese society: if the bride’s family have been adequately compensated for loss of the woman, then her natal relatives have little or no further claim on her labor and economic potential and little say in her subsequent marital status. Any future marriage transactions involving the woman are the concern of the husband’s family. The latter decides whether as widow she remains in the group or is remarried to an outside party. In cases of remarriage out of the family, bride-price is collected not by the woman’s relatives but by the family of the late husband. This must be compensated for the expense incurred in obtaining her. Where the cost of obtaining wives is high, the preferred option is for the widow to remain in the group as wife of one of her late husband’s relatives since the original bride-

price was paid out not by the individual but by the group as a whole.99 On the other hand, because of the physical and legal separation of the husband’s share from the parental stem, a wife easily gained control over what remained of her husband’s property at the time of his death. That property was the largest share, which has gone to the youngest son after the widow’s death. Thus if the widow were to remarry out of the group, it was essential that she first be divested of control over both her dowry and the remaining portion of her husband’s property. This, however, involved complex property redistribution within the clan, an act that might lead to disputes and loss of inheritance rights for the youngest son, particularly when that son was still a minor. In this way, continuous residence in the husband’s clan in one form or another was mandatory in Mongol society. Holmgren then concludes: the levirate was not so much a strategy for the production of heirs, but rather an economic institution designed to maintain the viability of the family patrimony.100

Holmgren also explores the other aspect of the levirate as a social strategy by comparing its operations in Mongol society with that in Chinese society. She holds that the levirate can only become a widespread or obligatory institution in a given society in conjunction with polygamy. Where monogamy operates as the legal and socially acceptable form of marriage, levirate will at best be irregular and infrequent unless it be combined with enforced bachelorhood for the younger son. Thus in traditional Chinese society, which operated on the principle of one legal wife (with concubinage), levirate occurred mainly amongst the very poor unable to afford the cost of marriage for all sons. Up to the Yuan era, widow-remarriage out of the group was the norm for the elite and almost all other classes of the society. By contrary, Mongol society was polygamous. It also had no

restriction on cross-generation marriage. Thus the widow could be incorporated with little difficulty into an established family headed by an adult with wives of his own. Thus Holmgren concludes that for ordinary Mongols levirate was widely practiced as a strategy for preservation of the social and economic integrity of the family. First, it provided wives for younger members of the family at no additional cost. Secondly, it provided security for widows with property who were unable to maintain an independent economic unit within the group and who might be forced into remarriage with an outsider for economic reasons. Finally, it reunited separate portions of the family patrimony which had earlier been detached from the base.

However, the levirate marriages in the Mongol royal family did not follow the above pattern. In investigating the occurrence of levirate within the leadership of allied and subordinate tribes during the World Empire, I have found that it was the result of singular political circumstances. The career of Alahai 阿刺海 illustrates this point. As Holmgren has pointed out, it shows how both levirate and the principle of widow-chastity were manipulated by Chinggisid leaders in their quest for greater domination over allied peoples. Also, it suggests that where Chinggisid control was secure and direct succession could be instituted, widow-chastity was the preferred modus operandi. Alahai was married three times---first to the older son of the Öngüt leader, Alaqs, then to Alaqs’ nephew, Zhenguo, and finally to Alaqs’ younger son, Boyaohe. At one time, she governed the Öngüt as a regent, first in the absence of Zhenguo and then, after Zhenguo’s death, as widow in the name of her younger son, Niegutai. Her first marriage had secured the alliance between her father and the Öngüt. But then, her husband and father-in-law were murdered by their own tribesmen. Chinggis Khan was then faced with the problem of installing a successor who would be both loyal to him and able to control the tribesmen. Chinggis Khan thus passed over the young Boyaohe and installed his older cousin Zhenguo as leader. To legitimate the succession, and to further Chinggisid control over the
Öngüt leadership, Zhenguó was married to Alahai. Since Zhenguó’s assassination had the potential to create succession problems in the next generation. Then, Boyaohe and his family might challenge the right of Zhenguó’s descendants to inherit the leadership. Thus upon Zhenguó’s death, Alahai first governed the Öngüt as regent and then married Boyaohe after his return from a military campaign. In this way, her young son by Zhenguó was forced to wait after the death of his stepfather/cousin before he could assume the leadership. Then, Boyaohe’s sons, being children of a lesser wife, were unable to threaten his position.

It seemed that not all Mongol princes had the right to inherit their fathers’ wives. The prince who was entitled to take his father’s wives was generally the eldest son and/or the heir apparent. For instance, after Jochi died, his eldest son Orda inherited one of his wives, who was from the Onggirat tribe. Orda’s grandson Qonichi had been for a long time ruler of the ulus of Orda. When Qonichi died, his first son Bayan succeeded to his throne, and at the same time married three of his wives: the first, Barquchin, the second, Chingtüm, and the third, Altaju.

According to Juvaini, Empress Mogo was originally the wife of Chinggis Khan and was inherited by Ögödei after Chinggis Khan died in accordance with the Mongol customs. Chaghatai had asked Ögödei for this woman but was not successful. According to Rashid Al-din, Empress Mogo was the daughter of the ruler of the Bekrin who gave her in marriage to Chinggis Khan. After his death in accordance with the Mongol custom she became the wife of his son Ögödei, who “loved her more than other wives so that they were jealous of her.” She was evidently a woman who was considerably attractive. Chaghatai too was enamored of her and having sought her hand too late refused the offer of any other of his father’s ladies as a substitute.

101 The Successors, 2: 100.
103 World Conqueror, vol. 1, p. 240.
Chaghatai Khan had eight sons. He loved his second son Mö'etüken more than the other children. Since Chinggis Khan also loved him greatly, he was mostly in attendance on him. Unfortunately, when the Mongol troops assaulted Khwārazm Mö’etüken was killed by an arrow. Chinggis Khan was greatly distressed at this, and, when he captured the castle he destroyed it utterly, put all the inhabitants to death and called it Ma’u-Qurghan. Chaghatai designated Mö’etüken’s fourth son Qara-Hülegü as the heir apparent in place of his father. When Qara-Hülegü died, his wife Orqina Khatun, who was from the Oirat tribe, became the ruler of the ulus of Chaghatai for ten years. Then Alghu, the son of Baidar, who was Qara-Hülegü’s cousin, became ruler of the ulus of Chaghatai by command of Arigh Böke and married Orqina Khatun. The new rulers obviously tried to use the influence of Orqina to secure their rule in the ulus of Chaghatai.

The common pattern of levirat marriage in the Mongol imperial clan was that of a son inheriting his father’s wife. But there are examples where a nephew took his aunt, or a grandson took his grandmother. Môngke Khan’s Empress Yesur 也速答兒 was taken by Arigh Böke’s son Yobuqr under the order of Khubilai Khan. According to Rashid Al-din, Yobuqr took Tolui’s wife Nayan Khatun.

5. Mongolian Marriage Custom and Sinicization

The Sinicization of the Mongols in the Yuan dynasty is a controversial topic. Many scholars have argued that the nomads and semi-nomads that conquered China (Central Plains) could never have escaped sinicization, but among them the Mongols were the least sinicized. A famous historian

---

105 The Successors, 3:142-3.
106 The Successors, 7:311. Khubilai said: “Let the great yurt, in which Yesüder Khatun lived, be administered by Yobuqr, and let Yobuqr marry Yesüder.”
in the Qing dynasty, Zhao Yi 趙翼 (1727-1814), found that “most of the Yuan emperors did not study the Chinese language”.

A Japanese scholar Haneda Tōru 羽田亨 claimed that, in the Yuan dynasty, Chinese people and Chinese culture were both despised because the Mongols pursued a policy of “Mongolism”.

Karl A. Wittfogel and Chia-sheng Feng believed that the conquerors and the conquered could not fully accept each other, and therefore one party could not be completely assimilated by the other. The cultural relation of the two parties had always been a two-way acculturation instead of a one-way assimilation. Assimilation in its real sense could possibly occur only when the conquering dynasty had collapsed and the status of the nationalities had become equal. The cultural and historical backgrounds of the conquering nationalities determined their attitudes towards Chinese culture. Basically the Jin 金 dynasty and the Qing 清 dynasty, established by the semi-agricultural and semi-nomad nationalities, were inclined to assimilate Chinese culture and consequently were deeply sinicized. While the Yuan dynasty and the Liao 辽 dynasty, established by nomads, had stubbornly resisted Chinese culture, and were consequently less sinicized.

These views above-mentioned have exerted a great influence on Yuan studies for a long time. However, they are somewhat biased. Some scholars have pointed out the fact that, although the Mongol rulers carried out Mongolism for the purpose of ruling the Chinese nation, most of them had learned Chinese culture (John Langlois 1978; Herbert Franke 1952; Luo Xianyou 1987; Li

---

107 *The Successors*, 7:312. "He (Yoboqur) had also one of Tolui's wives, called Nayan Khatun, of the Qinqirat people, and the yurt had been transmitted by [Sorqoqtani Beki] to Arigh Böke."


The founder of the Yuan, Khubilai Khan (r. 1260-1294), showed great interest in Chinese culture in his early life, and appointed many Chinese officials in important governmental positions. But for some reason, especially after the rebellion of Li Tan 李璮, a Chinese general whom Khubilai trusted before, his attitude towards Chinese and Chinese culture changed dramatically. Khubilai truly did not understand Chinese language. He had to use interpreters when receiving Chinese scholars. But it is certain that he provided for literary education of the imperial princes. The heir-apparent Jin Gim (Yuzong 裕宗) received lessons in Chinese writing and had to practice everyday. The other three emperors in the middle period of the Yuan—Temür öljeitii (Chengzong, r.1295-1307), Qaishan (Wuzong, r. 1308-1311), Yisün Temür (Emperor Taiding, r. 1324-1328) had long been living in the northern steppes as military generals and therefore were not familiar with the Chinese language and culture. After the middle Yuan, Ayurbarvada (Renzong, r. 1312-1320), Shidebala (Yingzong, r. 1321-1323), Tuq Temür (Wenzong, r. 1329-1332), and Toqon Temür (Shundi, r. 1333-1368) were all of great attainments in Chinese literature and arts. Renzong was particularly interested in Chinese erudition. Under his reign the literary examinations were reintroduced (1313). He is reported as having personally inspected the list of candidates for the jinshi 进士 degree in 1318. He could also write court documents himself.

---


113 There is a counter-evidence indicating that Khaishan did understand Chinese. In Yuanshi yeting ji 元氏掖庭記 we find a story telling us that in an evening of a Middle-Autumn Festival, Wuzong enjoyed the full moon with his concubines on a boat in the Taiye Pool 太液池. On both sides of the boat there were "woman armies" wearing different clothes. Accompanied by beautiful dance and music, the emperor started the banquet. One of his concubines, Mrs. Luo, danced and sang in front of him. The words of the song were in classical Chinese, it likened the emperor to the moon, and the emperor was delighted. See Yuanshi yeting ji, in Yuandai biji xiaoshuo, (ed.) Zhou Guangpei, Hebei Jiaoyu Chubanshe. (1998): 59-60.
However, by far the most erudite emperor of the Yuan dynasty was Wenzong, who was especially talented at Chinese poems, calligraphy and painting. Herbert Franke even believes that although there were no poets and artists of great achievements among the Yuan emperors, if the Yuan did not perish so suddenly, it is highly possible that it would have produced emperors as Kangxi and Qianlong in the Qing dynasty who had mastered Chinese language and culture.\footnote{Herbert Franke, “Could the Mongol Emperors Read and Write Chinese?” *Asia Major* (New Series), 3 (1952), 28-41. Collected in *China under Mongol Rule*, Variorum, ch. V, (1994):41.}

Etiquette and custom mostly reflect a nation’s fundamental ethics and moral standards. The etiquette and customs of the Mongols were deeply influenced by the lifestyle and living environment of the nomad society. While Chinese etiquette and custom were shaped by the Confucian ethics and moral standards of the agricultural society. In the year 1260 Khubilai ascended the throne in Kaiping 闕平, in the imperial edict he acknowledged that since Chinggis Khan conquered the world, for more than fifty years, “although the military accomplishments have been achieved, the cultural achievements have been very few.”\footnote{YS 4:64. See the basic annals of Shizu (Khubilai).} Thus, he was determined to carry out a constitutional reform. First, he announced that his Yuan dynasty was in succession to the past Chinese dynasties, and he adopted Chinese titles for his reign. With regard to the etiquette and custom, Khubilai also followed Chinese traditions. In the third year of the Zhiyuan 至元 era (1266), he built an ancestral temple to offer sacrifice to his ancestors. In the eighth year of the Zhiyuan era (1271) he ordered the ministers Liu Bingzhong 劉秉忠 and Xu Heng 許衡 to start drawing up the court rites. Since then most of the court activities had to follow the court rites, such as in times when an emperor ascended the throne, an emperor changed the title of his reign, the Yuan court celebrated an emperor’s birthday, princes and foreign envoys presented at the court, and an emperor
granted titles to his children, wives, mother, and grandmother. But when the emperor entertained his relatives or ministers, he still followed original Mongolian rites and customs.\textsuperscript{116}

It has to be noted that Khubilai's promotion of Chinese administrative system met strong opposition by the conservative Mongol noblemen. The princes in the northwest sent envoys to question Khubilai, "Our old customs are different from those of the Chinese. Now you stay in the territory of the Chinese people, and build capital and cities, and use the Chinese system of etiquettes and rites. Why do you do these?" \textsuperscript{117} To ease their anger, Khubilai had to send envoys to them to explain his governing policies, while at the same time limiting the extent of the sinicization reform experiment.

There was a distinctive difference between the marriage customs of the Han Chinese and Mongolians. The Mongols paid great attention to married women's chastity, which was similar to those of the Chinese. However, the Mongols encouraged widow to remarry, especially in levirate marriage that was in sharp contrast to Chinese marriage customs and moral standards. When Chinggis Khan knew, from a cryptic remark of his mother Hö’elun, that she wanted a husband, he gave her in marriage to Menglik Echige of the Qongqotad.\textsuperscript{118} This is confirmed by the Secret History. In 1206 when Chinggis Khan appointed captains of the thousands, the first man who was appointed was "father Mënglig".\textsuperscript{119}

\textsuperscript{116} YS 67: 1664, "\textit{Li Yue zhi 禮樂志}".
\textsuperscript{117} YS 125: 3073. See the biography of Gao Zhiyao 高智耀.
\textsuperscript{118} \textit{The Successors}, 4: 169. This remarriage initially had a strong political implication. One of the sons of Menglik, Kökőchü, was a powerful shaman who helped Chinggis Khan greatly in his early political career. By establishing this marriage Chinggis Khan intended to use the influence of the Shaman to rule Mongolia. However, things went beyond Chinggis Khan's control. Menglik's family became so powerful that it directly threatened the rule of Chinggis Khan. When Chinggis Khan founded the Great Mongol Ulus, his mother together with his youngest brother Odchigin were granted ten thousand troops, which was the largest share. Along with the remarriage of Hö’elun with Menglik, a huge part of Chinggis Khan's troops went to Menglik Echige's family. When Odchigin went to Menglik's home to get his people back, he was insulted by the shaman and his brothers. Therefore Chinggis Khan killed the shaman and decisively punctured the arrogance of this family. See \textit{The Secret History}, Ch. X, pp. 175-82. YCMS, (1980): 273-9.
\textsuperscript{119} \textit{The Secret History}, ch. VIII, p. 141.
The Levirate marriage may also function as an indicator to measure the extent of the sinicization of the Mongols. Throughout the Yuan dynasty the Yuan court never prohibited this marriage custom among the Mongols. In the early Yuan, it even tried to extend this custom to other nationalities. Later it stipulated that each nationality should follow its own marriage customs, and therefore the Han people, and the Southerners (Nan ren 南人) could not practice levirate. “Among the Han people and the Southerners, when a father dies, his son will take his stepmother; when an elder brother dies, his younger brother will take his sister-in-law. This should be banned.”

In the late Yuan, many people urged the emperor Shundi to reform Mongol marriage customs and ban levirate among the Mongols. Wugusun-liangzhen 烏古孫良楨, a highly sinicized Jurchen, pointed out:

The three cardinal guides and the five constant virtues are from the heaven and cannot be changed. The officials discussing the laws say that “the national people (guoren 國人, Mongols) are not restricted by this, and the other nationalities (Semu people) should follow their own customs.” This implies that the Han people and the southern people should, while Mongols and the Semu people should not, abide by the three guides and five constant virtues. It seems to treat them preferentially, but it actually isolates them. Outwardly it seems to respect them, but it actually insults them. From this to infer that they are not treating Mongols as well as the Han and the southern people. Please summon the officials in the Protocol Department and the zhishi in the court and have a meeting, and stipulate that from the emperor to the common people all must follow the ethical code, and thereby make laws that the former holy emperors did not have time to make, and manifest the principles that never to change for ten thousand years.”

The Confucian professor in the first ordo, Zheng Heng 鄭恒 口五, also complained:

Mongol people are the first nation of our country. It will be proper to teach them the ethical code. However, they still follow their own customs, they do not have a three year mourning period, and they inherit step mothers, aunts, and sisters-in-law. I am afraid that this will incur the ridicule of the later generations.

The Yuan emperor Shundi’s response to these suggestions was of “no reply” (bu bao 不報). Obviously the Mongol rulers were not inclined to exercise the Confucian code to reform the old Mongol customs. On the contrary, the Mongol rulers had tried to disseminate levirate marriage

---

120 YS 103: 2644. See “Xingfa zhi 刑法志”.
121 YS 187: 4288. See the biography of Wugusun Liangzhen.
among the Chinese during the early period of the Yuan dynasty. There are many stipulations in the Yuan Law Code (*Yuan Dianzhang*) concerning the marriages of the *Semu* people, Han people and the Southerners. But the Mongols were exceptional: “For the *semu* peoples, they should follow their own customs if one marries a person within their own nationality. If a marriage is between two nationalities, they should follow the custom of the male party. But the Mongols are not restricted by this.” From this we can infer that marriages between Mongols and other nationalities were allowed, but only Mongol marriage customs could be followed in a marriage between Mongols and another nationality. Throughout the Yuan dynasty, the Mongols still practiced this custom as usual, and the Mongol rulers obviously permitted these practices. During Shundi’s reign, when the chief of the Secretariat Council Kuokuodai 閩閥 (Kokodei) died, his concubine, a Korean woman, “swore not to remarry”. However, the son born by his first wife wanted to take her, and thus he bribed the Right Chancellor Boyan 伯顏 and got permission from the emperor to marry her.

But among the Mongol rulers in China proper, levirate marriages seemed to have gradually disappeared. For example, Ögödei Khan had inherited a concubine of Chinggis Khan, Mogo 木哥 Khatun. Möngke Khan inherited a wife from his father Tolui. But since Khubilai Khan, no such cases have been found among the Yuan emperors, although it occurred frequently among the Mongol princes and princesses in other Mongol khanates.

Scholars have explored the extent of the sinicization amongst the Mongols. John W. Dardess has argued that, especially in the late Yuan period, the conquerors had become Confucian adherents themselves. While Luo Xianyou 洛賢佑 points out that, as a result of many factors, such as garrisoning, enfeoffment, the assumption of office outside the capital, and the wandering of the destitute Mongols far from home, a large number of Mongols went south, which led to a wide

---

122 *YS* 44: 921. See the basic annals of Shundi.
distribution of the Mongol population across the country. By the late Yuan and Ming dynasties most of the Mongols who moved southward had become almost indistinctive from the Chinese people.\textsuperscript{125}

However, many scholars argue that the Mongols in the Yuan dynasty never lost their cultural identity. Some even believe that the Mongols were not interested in the sophistication of Chinese culture, and that therefore Chinese culture did not strongly influence the Mongols.\textsuperscript{126}

Herbert Franke pointed out that the sinicization of the Mongols rulers was never fully achieved, after a long period of potential acculturation and gradual sinicization, and a number of turning pointes.\textsuperscript{127} He has distinguished several stages in the transition from steppe rulership to (never fully realized) Chinese emperorship and back to the steppes. 1. The old-Mongol period up to Chinggis Khan’s accession in 1206; 2. The conquest of Peking and parts of Northern China, marked by the years 1215 (conquest of Peking) and 1234 (extinction of the Jin state). 3. the rule of Khubilai Khan (1260-1294, where several sub-stages could be determined); 4. the late reigns of the Mongol emperors (1294-1368); 5. the influence on the Mongols of their rule over China after their expulsion in 1368. The gradually and never fully achieved sinicization of the Mongol rulers was, of course, the chief element underlying the methods and symbol of their legislation in the eyes of their Chinese subjects. It is clear that the decisive steps to transform the Mongol ruler into a Chinese emperor have taken place under Khubilai Khan. Khubilai accepted the suggestions of his Chinese advisors and ordered his Chinese ministers to formulate court rules. But it is doubtful if these rules had ever been strictly followed. Actually the rituals to be performed by the emperor of his officials

show, under the Yuan, a syncretism, because in addition to the rituals inherited from the Song and Jin, Mongol national rites continued to be performed. Moreover, according to the “Records of Imperial Carriages and Garments” (Yu fu zhi 與服志) in the Yuanshi, the ceremonial dress of an emperor was always decorated with clouds, dragons, mountains, and rivers. However, the eight extant paintings of Yuan emperors show that none of them wore the traditional Chinese style dragon robe. We will see the difference if we compare the four famous emperors of the Yuan, the Tang, and the Qing dynasties.

Khubilai Khan (1215-1294)  Wenzong (1304-1332) of the Yuan dynasty

128 YS 72:1779, “The five rituals of the Yuan dynasty were all performed according to the Mongolian customs (guosu 國俗)”. 
The reluctance to recognize and accept Chinese symbols and to adopt Chinese rituals reveals the basic attitudes of the Mongol rulers towards Chinese culture. Contrary to the Manchu conquerors of the Qing dynasty, the Mongols had been emphatically struggling to maintain their nomadic cultural identity and to resist sinicization throughout the Yuan dynasty. The most indicative sign was the two-capital system and the migratory inspection tours of the Mongol emperors. Kubilai Khan built two capitals, with the Grand Capital (Dadu 大都, somewhere near present Beijing) being the official capital and the Supreme Capital (Shangdu 上都) in Mongolia the secondary capital. This type of capital system was not invented by the Mongols. Many Chinese dynasties had practiced this since the Western Zhou dynasty (1066 B.C.-771 B.C.). However, the secondary capitals in Chinese dynasties normally functioned only as a political symbol of the authority of the central governments. Also, rarely would the emperors go to these capitals to handle their official business. The Yuan dynasty was very special in this regard. The secondary capital had
the same political position as the official capital. The Yuan emperors spent approximately equal
time in both capitals. Generally the emperors left Dadu for Shangdu in the second or the third
month of the year, and by the eighth or ninth month they would return to Dadu. Most of the people
in the Yuan court moved to Shangdu with the emperor, including the empresses and imperial
concubines, the crown prince, other Mongol princes, and court officials. This was the time to review
Mongol customs and to be nurtured by Mongol culture. The Mongol emperors would hold
banquets. The most famous banquet was called the “Zhama banquet 诈馬宴”. During the
banquet, Chinggis Khan’s jasagh would be recited, and there were traditional Mongol sports and
music. During their stay in Shangdu, the Mongol emperors had to spend time hunting, which again
was a time to review the Mongolian cultural tradition. Even in Dadu, Mongol symbolic presence
was evident in the architecture and decoration of some of the buildings within the Yuan palace
complex. For example, in Khubilai’s sleeping chambers curtains were dropped and screens of
ermine skins set up as tangible reminder of the Mongols’ hunting and pastoral life. The main
reception hall contained a dais on which were models of reclining tigers, which were “by some
mechanical device capable of motion as if they [were] alive.” Mongol-style tents were erected in the
Imperial Parks, and Khubilai’s sons and their cousins often lived in them rather than in the palaces.
When one of Khubilai’s wives was in the last stages of pregnancy, she moved to these same tents to
give birth. Moreover, Khubilai assigned underlings to gather grass and dirt from the Mongol
steppes for his royal altar, another reminder of their pastoral heritage.

129 “Zhama” is a Persian word, meaning clothing. When the emperors hold a zhama banquet, all the princes,
the imperial sons-in-law, ministers, and the emperor’s bodyguards were invited to attend, and they had to
wear the clothes of the same color. Therefore it also was called “zhisun banquet 赤紗宴”. “Zhisun” means
color in Mongolian. It was normally deep red color. See CGL:376.
130 Paul Ratchnevsky, “Uber den mongolischen Kult am Hofe der Grosskhane in China,” *in Mongolian
Studies*, ed. Ligeti, 435-41. Quoted in Morris Rossabi, *Khubilai Khan: His Life and Times*, (University of
131 Emil Bretschneider, “Recherches archeologiques et historiques sur Pekin et ses environs”, 57. Quoted in
Throughout the Yuan dynasty, the Mongol rulers carried out a policy of racial segregation. By the end of the Yuan dynasty, Han people and Southerners were prohibited from studying Mongolian writing and those of the *Semu* peoples.\(^{132}\)

Nonetheless, despite the great efforts the Mongol rulers had made to resist sinicization and to maintain their cultural identity, they still could not stop the trend of sinicization among the Mongols. The levirate marriage is one such example. Some Mongol women had been influenced by the Confucian concept of chastity. Sengge Ragi 祥哥剌吉 (? 1282-1332), the mother-in-law of Wenzong, the Grand Princess of the State of Lu, “became a widow when she was very young. She remained chaste and faithful to her husband, and did not allow her brothers-in-law to marry her, but spent her time fostering and educating her children.”\(^{133}\) She was highly praised and given honored titles by Wenzong. Sengge Ragi became comfortable in Chinese culture. She was a great art collector, preserving many old Chinese paintings, and thus helped to protect Chinese high culture.

The *Lienü zhuan* 列女傳 (Biographies of Women) in *Yuanshi* also records such a story. A woman named Tuotuoni 脫脱尼 from the Onggirat tribe was widowed when she was young. Her stepsons born by her husband’s previous wife wanted to take her according to the Mongol custom. But Tuotuoni reproached them of “brutish behavior”, and threatened to commit suicide if they use force to take her.\(^{134}\) As a Mongol woman, she even regarded levirate as “brutish behavior”. It certainly indicated that she had been deeply influenced by Chinese moral standard.

In sum, the Mongols in the Yuan dynasty never gave up their national and cultural identities. Instead, they made great effort to maintain them. Throughout the Mongol dynasty in China they had been actively resisting sinicization by all means. One of these was to preserve the Mongol marriage

---

\(^{132}\) YS 39:893. See the basic annals of Shundi.
\(^{133}\) YS 33: 746. See the basic annals of Wenzong.
\(^{134}\) YS 200: 4495-4496. See *Lienü Zhuan.*
customs. However, one hundred years of exposure to Chinese culture had altered these Mongolian
marriage customs.

The concrete sinicization of the Mongols occurred after the end of the Yuan dynasty. By the
early Ming dynasty the Mongols who did not retreat to the north were swiftly sinicized. In 1376 a
Confucian scholar in Haizhou, Bing Zheng, reported: “Recently I have seen that many Mongols
have changed their surnames to Chinese surnames, and are not distinctive from Chinese people.
Among them some people have applied for official positions, some have become famous, some
have become rich merchant.”135 Another Ming scholar, Qiu Rui also reported, “At the beginning of
this state, the Mongols and semu people changed their names and lived together with the
commoners. They are just like one or two barnyard millets in the rice field with time they will
forget their identity and will be transformed, and will not be easily identified.”136 In addition, the
rulers of the Ming dynasty enforced special laws forbidding the Mongols and the semu people from
marrying people of their own nationalities. Apparently this was set in order to accelerate the process
of sinicization of these nationalities.

CHAPTER TWO

Chinggisid Marriage Strategies and the Political Implications of Mongol Imperial Marriages

1. A COMPARISON OF MARRIAGE STRATEGIES BETWEEN THE MONGOL ROYAL FAMILY AND TYPICAL CHINESE DYNASTIES

In comparing the imperial marriages of the Mongol Yuan with those of the other dynasties in Chinese history, we find that the Mongol Yuan imperial marriages were unique.

First of all, the Mongol Yuan royal family is the only one that actively established and maintained marriage relationships with other nationalities in Chinese history. Two equally important factors may explain this phenomenon. The first factor is related to the exogamic marriage system adopted by Mongols, which required them to find marriage partners outside of their tribe. The other factor, I believe, is political choice. The main purpose of these marriages was to enhance the political and military strength of the Mongol Empire.

In Chinese history, since the West Han 西漢 dynasty (206 B.C.-23 A.D.), one of the most important means in dealing with foreign affairs had been “heqin” 和親, in which a feudal ruling house attempted to cement relations with rulers of minorities in border areas, by marrying to them daughters of the imperial family. The aim of heqin was either to pacify a border nationality that was making trouble, or to make an alliance with a nationality through marriage. The two parties in the heqin relationship generally had to make pledges and exchange gifts. Also the weak party even had to send a prince to the other party as a hostage. The heqin strategy was always employed when a dynasty was weak and faced strong enemies. This always occurred between the powerful and the
weak. Rarely would an emperor marry his daughter to a head of a small and weak nationality or tribe that did not constitute a menace to his dynasty. Also he would not marry a girl from such a nationality or tribe as his empress. Therefore, in a general sense, heqin was a one-way marriage and a temporary expedient measure.\textsuperscript{137}

The heqin marriage was the most typical of political marriages. A woman in such a marriage was actually the victim of politics. She had no choice but to obey her destiny and to fulfill her historical mission. The most famous women in Chinese heqin history were Wang Zhaojun 王昭君 of the Han dynasty and Princess Wencheng 文成公主 of the Tang dynasty. And Wang Zhaojun was an exceptional example. She took this historical mission on her own initiative. When Huhanxie Chanyu 呼韓邪單于, the chief of the Xiongnu 匈奴, a powerful people on the north border of the Han empire, made an offer of marriage to Emperor Yuan 元帝 of the Han dynasty, the Emperor was reluctant to offer his daughter or any other girl of the imperial family to Huhanxie. Instead, he was going to offer him five palace women. Wang Zhaojun, as a palace woman, stood up in this crucial point and stated that she was willing to go to the northern steppes. After her request was approved by the emperor, she was found to be exceedingly beautiful, and the emperor was surprised at her beauty. He immediately had the imperial artist Mao Yanshou 毛延壽 killed because he drew a false and ugly picture of her. This action was supposedly the result of her refusal to offer bribes to Mao.

There were six actual heqin marriages in the Mongol Yuan. They occurred between Chinggis Khan's family and West Xia 西夏, Jin 金, and Gaochang 高昌. The Xiangzong 襄宗 (r. 1206-1211) of West Xia was compelled to present a princess to Chinggis Khan when the Mongol troops were attacking his country. The Xuanzong 宣宗 (r. 1213-1223) of Jin presented Princess Supreme of the State of Qi 歧國大長公主 to Chinggis Khan when his capital was besieged by the Mongol...

\textsuperscript{137} Zhang Zhengming 張正明, “Heqin yanjiu” 和親研究, in Minzu shi luncong 民族史論叢, Zhonghua Shuju, 4 (1986).
troops.\textsuperscript{138} Chinggis Khan married a princess to Barshukh Art Tegin 巴爾術阿爾的惕斤, the Idu-qut (Idikut) 亦都護 of the Gaochang State. Khubilai Khan married a princess to Har-dijin 哈兒的斤, the Idu-qut of the Gaochang State. Khubilai successively married two princesses to Niulin-dijin 紐林的斤.\textsuperscript{139} After Niulin-dijin, the Gaochang tribe still maintained marriage relations with the Mongol Yuan royal family. But at that time the Idu-qut had become a local officer of the Yuan dynasty, therefore the later marriages should not be viewed as heqin.

If we compare the imperial marriage of the Yuan dynasty with that of the Song, we would determine that their marriage strategies and practices were very different. The Song imperial family learned from the troubles caused by “Imperial In-laws” (waiqi 外戚) in Han 漢, Jin 晉, and Tang 唐 dynasties, and took various measures to prevent waiqi’s interference in their political affairs. In the early Song dynasty, most of the waiqi’s existed as the famous generals from the Five Dynasties. The Song imperial family intended to consolidate its political power by means of marriages with those powerful generals. But at the same time, it also intended to weaken the power of those generals by means of marriage to secure its political rule. For example, when the great generals, such as Shi Shouxin 石守信, agreed to establish marriage relationships with Song Taizu (Zhao Kuangyin 趙匡胤), they were immediately persuaded to give up their military powers. The well-known event in the Song history called “Giving up military power with a cup of wine” 杯酒释兵權 is an instance of this. In order to avoid the malpractice of waiqi in state affairs, a series of “Methods of treating waiqi” was gradually developed.\textsuperscript{141} Its strategy towards waiqi was of “Providing them with handsome salary and high-rank titles but not letting them hold and

\textsuperscript{138} YS 1:17. See the basic annals of Taizu.
\textsuperscript{139} YS 122:2999-3001. See the Biography of Barshukh Art Tegin.
\textsuperscript{140} Waiqi 外戚: Relatives of a king or emperor on the side of his mother or wife. Throughout the history a reference to relatives of rulers by marriage, ordinarily ennobled if not already of the nobility. Considered members of the Inner Court. Charles O. Hucker, \textit{A Dictionary of Official Titles in Imperial China}. Stanford University Press, (1985): 559.
monopolize power”. The Song imperial family also formulated a series of stipulations. For example, a waiqi should not be a chancellor, a Missionary of the Department of Military Affairs (Shumishi 椅密使), an Attendant (Shicongguan 待從官), a Circuit Supervisor (Jiansi 監司), or a Commandery Governor (Junshou 郡守). Also, he must be prohibited from commanding troops. Moreover, a man who holds a military or political office must resign if a woman in his family has been selected and titled as an empress.

On the other hand, one of the distinctive principles of the Song imperial marriage was “not considering family rank in marriage”. Zhang Bangwei 張邦煒 has compared the backgrounds of empresses and Noble Consorts between the Tang dynasty and Song dynasty. According to his statistics, 70.8% of the empresses and Noble Consorts in the Tang dynasty were from the high-rank bureaucratic families, while only 26.8% of empresses and Noble Consorts were from such families in the Song dynasty. Among the forty-one empresses and Noble Consorts who had biographies in history, twenty-one of them were from non-bureaucratic families, in whom many were from and low class. For example, the empress Liu 劉 of Zhenzong 真宗 had been a street-performer in Kaifeng 開封. The mother of Noble Consort Miao 苗 of Renzong 仁宗 had been the wet nurse of Renzong himself. The father of empress Zheng 鄭 of Huizong 徽宗 was the owner of a wine shop.

On the contrary, almost all of the empresses and Noble consorts in the Mongol Yuan were from aristocratic families. Among the 27 empresses who had biographies in Yuanshi, 26 of them were from aristocratic families, which make up 96% of the total statistic numbers. Only the Korean woman, Qishi Wanzhehudu 奇氏完者忽都, the empress of Shundi 順帝, was from a common family.

141 Li Yujie, Qin Xueqi 李禹階, 秦學穎, Waiqi yu huangquan 外戚與皇權, Xinan Shifan Daxue Chuban She, 1993.
142 Guochao Zhuchen zouyi 國朝諸臣奏議, juan 35. Quoted in waiqi yu huangquan.
2. Political Implications of the Mongolian Royal Marriages

Marriages in the imperial families of ancient China always had strong political implications from the very beginning. Liji-hunyi 禮記·昏義 (Records of Rites—Marriage Rituals) states that “Marriage rituals are to combine the best parts of two surnames (families or tribes), to serve the ancestral hall, and to continue the later generations.”¹⁴⁴ This is the oldest and most typical definition of marriage by the Chinese standards. It has two implications. First of all, a marriage, as a political relationship between two families or tribes, is a means to expand the sphere of political power and to raise the political positions of the families or tribes concerned. This is defined as “combining the best parts of the two surnames” 合兩姓之好. Secondly, external-tribe marriage 族外婚 was regarded as a means to increase population and to improve the quality of population in order to continue the blood lineage of the tribes or families. This is what is so called “to continue the later generation” 下以繼後世.

From the view of socio-politics, the marriages of a royal family and a duke or prince’s family were the most typical of political marriages. An imperial family always intended to establish or strengthen the political and military relationships with its marriage partners to increase their own interests. Therefore, they were extremely careful in choosing a marriage partner for their children. In short, the political interests of the royal family are of great and foremost importance in determining a marriage for their children. The feelings of the two people in a marriage were almost always ignored.

¹⁴³ Zhang Bangwei 張邦炜, Hunyin yu shehui (Songdai) 婚姻與社會 (宋代), Ch. 4. Quoted in Waiqiyu huangquan.
¹⁴⁴ Liji-hunyi, juan 44.
The political aspect of the royal marriage of the Mongol Yuan was particularly distinct. The Introduction of the Table of Princesses in the Yuanshi tells us:

By a rule of the Yuan imperial court, nobody was allowed to marry a Yuan princess if he was not a noble so conferred for meritorious service or a king in a conferred state. Therefore, the persons who maintained marriage relationships with the Yuan court were deemed as the princes, and they were sincerely entrusted by the Yuan court to guard the frontiers.\footnote{YS 109: 2759.}

Since the time of Chinggis Khan, marriage had been regarded as an important means to ally all possible forces. For example, Chinggis acknowledged Ong-Khan as his adoptive father when he was still weak, and initiated an exchange marriage relationship between these two families to keep a more intimate relationship with Ong-Khan. He proposed that his own son Jochi 抽赤 marry Senggüm’s 桑昆 (Ong-Khan’s son) younger sister Cha’ur Beki 察兀儿别乞; and his eldest daughter Khojen Beki 蒭真别乞 marry Senggüm’s son Tusaqa 禿撒哈。\footnote{YCMS 元朝秘史, annotated by Chen Binhe 陈彬韩, Shangwu Yinshu Guan, P. 87, The Secret History, Ch. V. pp. 89-90.}

\textit{The Secret History} records:

When Chinggis Khan, thinking, saying [unto himself], ‘[Over and] above [the fact that we are already] friendly, let us be doubly friendly,’ requested for Jochi Cha’ur Beki, the younger sister of Senggüm, as he requested [her], saying, ‘I shall give in exchange unto Tusaqa, son of Senggüm, our Khojen Beki.’\footnote{M. “Buwulezhhar”, Chinese translation is \textit{xu hun yan} 許婚宴. “Buwulezhhar” referred to animal neck in Mongolian. The special food at the “betrothal meal” was necks of sheep, implying that the two parties in}

But Chinggis Khan was not successful because of the refusal of Senggüm. Later when Senggüm attempted to destroy Chinggis, he invited Chinggis to his camp to eat the “betrothal meal”,\footnote{M. “Buwulezhhar”, Chinese translation is \textit{xu hun yan} 許婚宴. “Buwulezhhar” referred to animal neck in Mongolian. The special food at the “betrothal meal” was necks of sheep, implying that the two parties in} intending to catch him at the banquet. But Chinggis saw through this fraud and did not attend the banquet. When Senggüm found that his conspiracy was discovered, he launched a campaign to attack Chinggis.\footnote{M. “Buwulezhhar”, Chinese translation is \textit{xu hun yan} 許婚宴. “Buwulezhhar” referred to animal neck in Mongolian. The special food at the “betrothal meal” was necks of sheep, implying that the two parties in}

In spite of some failures, Chinggis Khan and his successors resolutely devoted to marriage strategies, which made the Mongolian royal marriages in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries the
most typical political marriages. The Mongolian royal house tried various ways to establish or strengthen the military relationship with every marriage partner. Marriages with the allied states were taken as a tool to effectively control them. All the princesses were undertaking important political missions when they were sent to marry the heads of dependencies. The Altan Tobci records three stories which will help us understand the political implication of Mongolian royal marriages and Chinggis Khan’s marriage strategies. From this we can see clearly how Chinggis Khan used his daughters as pawns on the vast chessboard of his empire.

When a princess was to marry a foreign king or a tribal chieftain, she would be first instructed formally about her mission by Chinggis Khan himself or by one of his representatives. She was seen not merely as a wife of the leader of the allied state, but her mission was to become the political representative of the Mongol Empire to help control the allied state or tribe. She fully understood that she must remain loyal to the Mongol royal family instead of to the family she was going to enter; she must keep a clear head and not be influenced by new circumstances.

When Alahai-Beki was going to be married to the Öngüt leader, Chinggis Khan issued an imperial edict to her:

You should be determined to become one of my feet. When I am going on an expedition, you should be my helper; when I am galloping, you should be my steed! You have to remember: life is short, but fame is everlasting! No friend is better than your own wise heart! No ferocious enemy is worse than a resentful and wicked heart! Although there are many things you can rely on, no one is more reliable than yourself; although many people can be your henchmen, no one is more intimate than your own consciousness; although there are many things you should cherish, no one is more valuable than your own life! If you preserve your purity, you will be able to foster good habits and characteristics! If you are eager to learn, you will always be successful. You should be prudent, steadfast and courageous. You must follow all of these carefully!  

the marriage could not go back on their worlds once they ate the meal. See Daruitibi, 道润梯步, Xinyi jianzhu Menggu mishi, Neimenggu Renmin Chubanshe, (1979): 139, fn. 1.

149 YCMS, PP. 88-93.

The career of Alahai 阿理海 proved that she had strictly followed her father’s instructions. In investigating the occurrence of levirate within the leadership of allied and subordinate tribes during the World Empire, Holmgren claims that it was the result of singular political circumstances.\(^{151}\) The career of Alahai illustrates this point. It shows how both the levirate and the principle of widow-chastity were manipulated by Chinggisid leaders in their quest for greater domination over their allied peoples. But it also suggests that where Chinggisid control was secure and direct succession could be instituted, widow-chastity was the preferred modus operandi. According to Holmgren, Alahai was married three times—first to the older son of the Öngüt leader, Alaques 阿剌兀思, then to Alaques’ nephew, Zhenguo 鎮國, and finally to Alaques’ younger son, Boyaohe 牢要合. At one time, she governed the Öngüt as regent, first in the absence of Zhenguo and then, after Zhenguo’s death, as widow in the name of her younger son, Niegutai 額古台. According to Holmgren’ analyses, her first marriage had secured the alliance between her father and the Öngüt. Then her husband and father-in-law were murdered by their own tribesmen. Chinggis Khan, faced with the problem of installing a successor who would be both loyal to him and able to control the tribesmen, passed over the young Boyaohe and installed his older cousin Zhenguo as leader. To legitimize the succession, and to further Chinggisid control over the Öngüt leadership, Zhenguo was married to Alahai, since Zhenguo’s assassination had the potential of creating a succession problem in the next generation. Thus upon Zhenguo’s death, Alahai first governed the Öngüt as regent and then married Boyaohe after his return from a military campaign. In this way, her young son by Zhenguo was forced to wait until the death of his step-father/cousin before he could assume leadership. Then, Boyaohe’s sons, being children of a lesser wife, were unable to threaten his position.

The Altan Tobci records the marriage of Chinggis Khan’s other daughter Ilkhaltun 也立安敦

(Ilghaltun) to the Idug-qut (king) of Uighur, Barchukh Art Tegin 巴而術阿而忒的斤. The Secret History also records this event in a similar way, but the name of the girl was recorded as Al-Altun 阿勒阿勒屯. In Yuanshi the girl's name is Yeli An-dun 亦立可敦, it is closer to the sound of Ilkhaltun. According to the Persian sources, the marriage between the Uighur chief and his intended spouse, variously called Al Altan or Ilkhaltun Begi, never occurred, owing to the demise of the principals. Hong Jun in Yuanshi yiwen zhengbu 元史文證補 also states that the princess died before her wedding, and Barchukh Art Tegin actually did not marry the princess. However, according to the Altan Tobci, it seems that this marriage did occur.

The record in the Altan Tobci indicates the political significance of this marriage. It reads:

When the Uighur Idug-qut came to marry Ilkhaltun Begi, Chinggis Khan issued an imperial edict to her, "A blessed woman has three husbands. Which three husbands are they? Firstly, her nation is her husband; secondly, her fame is her husband; finally, the man who married her is her husband. These are your three husbands. If you can take your nation as your husband, and serve him very carefully, you will certainly earn your (second) husband—fame. If you can take your fame as your husband and carefully protect him, how will the husband who has married you ever forsake you?"

The third daughter of Chinggis Khan was Checheyigen 扯扯亦堅, her name is not recorded in the "Table of Princesses" in the Yuanshi. However, both the Altan Tobci and The Secret History record that she was married to Inalchi 亦納勒赤, the son of Khutuqa-Begin of the Oirat tribe. In the year 1207, Chinggis Khan ordered his son Jochi 扯赤 to conquer the “People of the Forest” (linzhong baixing 林中百姓), the Oirat tribe first submitted to Chinggis Khan and influenced other

---

154 YS 109: 2760. The annotators of Yuanshi changed the Chinese character 可 to 安 based on the biography of Barchukh Art Tegin in the Yuanshi and Yu Ji’s 資治通鑑 “Gaochangwang shixun bei” 高昌王世勋碑 (in YWL, juan 26). But the pronunciation of Yelikedun seems closer to Ilkhaltun. And as we have known, the compilers of the Yuanshi almost directly copied from Yu Ji when they wrote the biography of Barchukh Art Tegin.
156 YSYWZB, juan. 3, P. 132.
tribes to submit. Therefore Chinggis Khan married his daughter to Inalchi, and married Jochi's daughter Holuiqan 霍勒罕 to Inalchi's elder brother Törölchi 脫劣勒赤. The Altan Tobci reads: "Chinggis Khan married Checheyigen Aghai\(^{158}\) to Inalchi of the Oirat tribe. When the wedding was going on, he ordered the nobleman (noyan) Boworchu 李斡儿出 to give instructions (to Checheyigen). Boworchu said:

Listen, Checheyigen Aghai! Because you are the daughter of your Khan father, you are sent to govern the people of the Oirat tribe. You are going to pitch a tent there. You should get up early and go to sleep late! Do not make yourself a stranger in your mother-in-law's family! Day and night, you should be circumspect all the time. Your words must show your wisdom, you must keep yourself chaste. Leave the things that you have not mastered home, and bring all the things you have mastered with you. You should organize the Oirat people and control them!\(^{159}\)

On the other hand, Chinggis Khan and his successors never married their daughters to their trustful generals, such as the King Muqali 木華黎. "He had a very close relationship with the imperial family, but they never had intermarriage for generations." (Qin lian tianjia, shi bu hunyin 觀連天家，世不婚姻)\(^{160}\) Muqali, Borshu, Borhu, and Chila’un were called Chinggis Khan's four gifted generals. They made great contributions to the Mongol Empire. But because they maintained a close relationship with the Chinggisid family, they were not allowed to marry Mongolian princesses. Although Muqali was titled King, he was still deemed as the slave of Chinggis Khan's family. The marriage strategy of Chinggis Khan was to use marriage to control the tribal chiefs and kings whose submission they believed may change. While it was unnecessary to apply this strategy to his own generals who were set on following the orders of Chinggis Khan and his successors.

\(^{158}\) According to Zhaqi Siqin, "Aghai" was an honorific title of the girls of noble family in Mongol society. It also means "baby" in Mongolian language. See Zhaqi Siqin: Menggu huangjin shi yi zhu (1979): 43.
\(^{159}\) Zhaqi Siqin, Menggu huangjinsin shi zhu (1979): 44.
From the twelfth to the thirteenth centuries, when Chinggis Khan was annexing other tribes in the great steppes, the marriage relatives of Chinggis Khan had proved to be militarily important. When the Onggirat tribe and four other tribes formed an alliance and swore at the Aleiquan 阿雷泉 to attack Chinggis Khan. Chinggis Khan’s father-in-law Dei Sechen sent an envoy to report the situation to Temüjin 鐵木真 (Chinggis). This enabled him to be prepared for the allied attack. Later, when Jamuka 札木合 was going to attack Chinggis Khan with allied troops arranged in thirteen wings 十三翼 (battle array), Chinggis’ brother-in-law Botu 李禿, who was the chief of Ikires tribe, also sent an envoy to report the impending danger to Chinggis Khan.
CHAPTER THREE

Social Position of Mongolian Women and the Political Involvement of Mongolian Empresses

1. The Social Position of Mongolian Women

Basic differences existed between the social Status of women in a nomad society and a sedentary society, and most of the differences can be explained by the ways of life of the two different types of societies. Herbert Franke points out that in a nomad society where many adult males were away on long hunting expeditions or in warfare, the responsibility of caring for the household and the education of children fell upon the wives. This resulted in a relatively great independence of the women who had to act as heads of the household during the absence of their husbands.161 This is partially true where Mongol women's responsibilities are concerned. However, a husband and a wife were often together, even in times of war. The ahuruq 奥魯 military system is an example, which was translated as "a camp of olds and young's" (laoxiao ying 老小營) in the Ming dynasty. It referred to the place where the families of Mongol army remained. It was responsible for the supplies of the Mongol army, therefore, most of the time, it moved along with the army.162

A Mongol woman who married into a tribe was certainly never sheltered from the heavy labor and intertribal warfare characteristic of nomadic pastoral societies. Morris Rossabi also points out,

The insecurities of steppe life required each member of a family, clan, or tribe to pull his or her own weight. Horses needed to be herded and led to pasture; sheep had to be sheared and ewes milked; and tents (known as gers or yurts) had to be pitched, then dismantled, and erected again in another location as the tribe moved to a new grazing area. Without the cooperation of both men and women,

162 For a discussion of the important functions of ahuruq, see Li Zhi'an 李治安, "Qiexue yu Yuandai chaozheng" 衆雪與元代朝政, Zhongguoshi yanjiu 中國史研究, 4 (1990): 110-117.
the chores which were essential for the subsistence of nomadic pastoralism could not be completed, and the tribe's or family's survival would be threatened. Women were required to share physically demanding tasks with men.\textsuperscript{163}

The Mongol women were responsible for all the domestic duties. They produced the simple necessities for pastoral life. They cooked meals, made clothing, and they were also expected to manage the carts, and the loading or unloading of the yurts and other belongings. They milked the cows, goats, and sheep, and made cheese and butter. They tanned the hides of animals and sewed them with the tendons of horses or oxen. They also made felts to cover houses. The important role placed on women involved in household management allowed them to gain high status in family life. Xiao Daheng 肖達亨 in the early Ming dynasty recorded as the following. "It is said that the barbarian men are always controlled by women." He also tried to explain this phenomenon.

It is not only because the women are shrewish, it is also because the husbands have to rely on them. All the clothing, hats and shoes, big things and small things, are all made by their hands. The husbands only know how to hold a bow to hunt, otherwise they can do nothing. The women at ordinary times attend their duties just like a hen crows in the early morning, and if they get angry they will roar as a lion. They are arrogant because they have made a lot of contributions, their behavior is unbridled because they have done hard work, it is this that makes them act like that.\textsuperscript{164}

The important role of women in economy also aided them in adopting a relatively higher social position in Mongol society. A woman could lead an army. Chinggis Khan's mother Hö’elun 許阿倫, had led the first wing of the army in the thirteen wings of his army when he fought against the combined forces of Jamuka and Ong-Khan. It is also well known that Mongol empresses in the first half of the thirteenth century also played a politically great role and de facto ruled the empire. Several times during the thirteenth century the Mongol empire was ruled by imperial widows, the most famous among them being Töregene 脫列哥納, Ögödei's widow who formally ruled the empire from 1241 to 1246, and Oghul Qaimish 策兀立海迷失, the widow of Güyük, who ruled

from 1249 to 1251. The wives of the generals often accompanied their husbands on military expeditions. Khans and princes often discussed military or political affairs with their khatuns 哈敦. 165 Chinggis Khan prescribed in the Jasagh that “Women accompanying the troops carry out the work and duties of the men when the men go to war.”166 Princesses of the khan’s family had the rights to take part in the general assembly, the khuriltai, when important decisions were taken. The high status of imperial princesses is reflected in Yuan legislation where princesses are normally mentioned as a special category apart from the princes and imperial sons-in-law.

Mongolian women had enjoyed some degree of freedom in choosing marriage. Xiao Daheng 肖達亨 in “Yisu ji” 異俗記 told us that “Among the barbarians, marriage is based only on the happiness of the man and woman, if the girl and the boy are well-matched in age, they can get married.”167 “If a woman is not happy (with her marriage), then her husband will let her remarry (someone else), the husband will have to swallow this and dares not say anything.”168 This probably has been exaggerated, or it only occurred among the women of the aristocrats. Generally speaking, the marriage of a Mongol woman would be determined by her parents. This can be seen in The Secret History. Temujin’s father Yesugei went to Dei Sechen’s tribe to look for a wife for Temujin when he was nine years old. While Dei Sechen, the father of Börte Ujin, invited Yesugei and his son to his home to see his daughter and they determined the marriage. According to the Mongol customs, a widow could inherit her husband’s property and become the family head if their sons

165 Mo. Married noble women.
167 Xiao Daheng, Beilu fengsu.
168 Xiao Daheng, Beilu fengsu.
were still young, and she would stay in this position until she died, even after her sons had grown up.

However, one should not overestimate the social position of Mongol women. We find a rather ambivalent attitude towards women among the Mongols. On the one hand, in ancient Mongolian society men and women were actually viewed as unequal both in family life and marriage with men being deemed honorable and women humble. The Mongols believed "women are short of knowledge" and "women are the dog’s face". Unfortunately, this inequality was believed to be reasonable by women themselves. Rashid al-din recorded some words of the wife of Yitiemuer亦帖木兒, “A man both has power and is the master, a wife is only his dependant. Therefore she should make efforts to make her husband satisfied, and do not make him disappointed, and do housework as instructed by him. If she can do things like this, her husband’s love towards her will undoubtedly increase.”

A woman could even be offered as a gift. Chinggis Khan had once granted his wife Yibahe亦巴合 to one of his generals, Zhuer-Chedai主兒扯歹. Ong-Khan had presented his daughter to Tuohertiua脱黑脫阿, the chief of Merkit蔑儿乞 tribe in order to borrow a road. When Dayier Wusun答亦兒兀孫 of the Mierqi tribe was defeated, he presented Hulan忽蘭 to Chinggis Khan in order to curry favor with him. In time of urgency, women could be neglected or forsaken like troublesome belongings. When Temujin鐵木真 was pursued and attacked by the Merqit tribe in his youth, he rode two horses to escape, while his wife Börte孛兒帖 and his father’s concubine had no horses to ride and were consequently caught by the Merqit people.

---

169 YCMS, P. 109, annotated by Chen Binhe陳彬龢, Shangwu Yinshu Guan, 1933.
171 YCMS, annotated by Chen Binhe, (1933): 98.
172 YCMS, annotated by Chen Binhe, (1933): 120
173 YCMS, (1933): 39-41
Women’s words were always blamed as a root of failures or mistakes. Jamuka believed that one of the sources of his failure was “my wife is a long-tongued woman.” Ögödei Khan counted one of his mistakes in his reign was “having listened to a woman’s words and taken the women in my uncle Otchigin’s state.”

The marriages of Mongol princesses also elucidated the social position of Mongol women. These women were simply the victims of the political and military strategies of the Mongol royal family. They could not decide their marriages, which were completely determined by the khans and emperors who were their elders. They were always presented just as gifts to the men they simply did not know. No matter how old the men were, or of what types, once the marriage was determined by her elders, the princess had to sacrifice her body and emotions, and obey her destiny for the sake of the interests of the royal family. With few exceptions, such as Princess Alahai Beki, most of them remained obscure their whole lives and left no traces in history. Therefore we do not know much about the quality of their marriages. What we have known is that many of them never bore children. For example, among the nine Mongolian women who were

---

174 YCMS, (1933): 103.
175 YCMS, (1933): 126
176 YCMS, (1933): 183, Ögödei Khan often listened to his sixth empress Naimazhen Tuolie Gena 乃馬真氏. 喬列哥納 (Töregene). She was originally a concubine of Hudu 忽都, the eldest son of Tuokei Tuoa 脫黑脫阿, the chief of the Merkit 萊儿乞 tribe. When Chinggis Khan conquered the Merkit people and caught Töregene, he granted her to his son Ögödei. (see YCMS, p. 122). Töregene was the mother of Güyük 貴由. After Ögödei’s death she was the regent for four years.

YS 2:35. See the basic annals of Taizong. “In the sixth month of the ninth year [of Taizong’s reign] (1237), there was a rumor among the tribes of the Left Wing 左翼 that the emperor was going to select girls from their tribes. The emperor was angry and therefore gathered all of their girls and granted them to his generals and subordinates.”

D’Ohsson, Constantin d’, baron, Historie des Mongols, Duosang Menggushi 多桑蒙古史, trans, Feng Chengjun. Taibei, Taiwan shangwu yinshuguan, 1963. “There was a rumor spreading in the Oirati tribe 烏亦刺惕 that the Khan was going to marry the girls in their tribe to the men in other tribes. The Oirati people were afraid of it, and they hastily made marriage contracts. Several of them had already held marriage ceremonies. When Ögödei knew this, he issued an order collecting all the young girls who were seven years old or above and those who were newly married in that year in the tribe, and arranged them in two lines. There were totally four thousands of them. Ögödei himself selected the most beautiful girls from them and took them to his palace. He granted some of them to his subjects, and sent the rest to brothels. But there were still some left, (Ögödei) ordered the standbys to take them as they liked.” If, as identified by
married into the Korean court, only four had children.\textsuperscript{177} From this we can infer that their marriage lives might have been unhappy. This assumption can be further evidenced by the high early death rate of the married princesses. In Chapter Six: “One-way Marriage”: Royal Marriages between the Mongol Yuan and Koryō (Korea), I will provide the specific causes of their deaths. We will see that although the Mongol princesses seemed powerful in Korea, their marriage lives were mostly miserable. Their misfortunate fate can be ascribed to the roles they played in Korea. They were married to the leaders of the former enemy state of the Mongols whose submission was shaky. And rebellions, disloyalty, and disobedience occurred frequently. Rarely had the Mongolian princesses been truly loved by their husbands in the Korean court. On the contrary, they were surrounded by the jealousy and hatred of the other wives of the Korean kings. Therefore, tensions and conflicts among the Mongol princesses, the Korean kings, as well as his other wives were often observed. Korean officials also hated the Mongol princesses because they represented the Mongol Yuan to control Korea. There were rumors saying that some Mongol princesses were cursed or tortured to death, and the Yuan court sent people to Korea to investigate and arrested many people. But the results of the investigations or interrogations were never announced.

I have found eighty-four Mongolian princesses who were married into the six tribes or states that had maintained the most stable marriage relationship with the Mongol royal family, among whom twenty-two princesses died early. They make up twenty-six percent of the total princesses.

\textsuperscript{177} Xiao Qiqing 蕭啟慶, “Yuan Li guanxi zhong de wangshi hunyin yu qiangquan zhengzhi” 理官關係中的王室婚姻與強權政治, \textit{Yuandaishi xintan}, Xin Wen Feng Chuban Gongsi, 1983.
### TABLE 1 Age at Death of Married Mongol Princesses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tribe Name</th>
<th>No. of Married Princesses of Yuan</th>
<th>No. of Princesses Died Early</th>
<th>Percentage of Princesses died early</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Onggirat</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>16%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ikires</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>28%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oirat</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>19%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ongüit</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>19%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>63%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uighur</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>43%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sum</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>26%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Obviously, the princesses who married into the Uighur tribe and the Korean royal family have the highest early death rate. They are 63% and 43% respectively, while the princesses who married into the Onggirat tribe have the lowest early death rate of 16%. We may assume that their high early death rate was attributable to their inadaptability to the unfamiliar environments, climates, life styles, customs, and cultures. Nonetheless, as we have discussed in Chapter one, consanguineous marriage and inbreeding in the Mongol imperial family may also have been responsible for this early death rate of Mongol princesses.

I must acknowledge that the numbers above are quite conservative. I employed a simple inference strategy to determine the early death of the princesses based on records of the biographies in the *Yuanshi*. For example, the Korean “Prince of Ch’ungsug” 王王 To 王ANCE first married Princess Yilianzhenbala 亦懐真八剌. When Yilianzhenbala died, he remarried “Princess Supreme of the State of Cao” 曹國大長公主 Jintong 金童. After Jintong died, he remarried the “Princess of Qinghua” 慶華公主 Boyanhudu 伯顏忽都.\(^{178}\) Then I determined that Yilianzhenbala and Jintong died early. However, based on other sources, I have found that Boyanhudu actually died when she was about only 27 years old. Unfortunately, for most of the princesses, one does not know

---

\(^{178}\) Please refer to Chapter six, “One-way Marriage”: Royal Marriages between the Mongol Yuan and Koryŏ (Korea)”, Table 9 “Princesses of the Yuan Court Married into the Koryŏ Court”.
when they married and died. Thus, there is no way to find out their accurate ages at death. The following is a table of the death ages of the Mongol princesses who were married into the Korean court.

TABLE 2 Age at Death of Mongol Princesses in the Korean Court

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Princess Name</th>
<th>Birth Year—Death Year</th>
<th>Marriage Year</th>
<th>Age at Death</th>
<th>Years in Marriage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Khudulu (gh) Khaimis</td>
<td>1258-1296</td>
<td>1274</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Botashirin</td>
<td>?—1343</td>
<td>1296</td>
<td>~63</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yesujin</td>
<td>?—1316</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irinjimbala</td>
<td>?—1319</td>
<td>1316</td>
<td>~19</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kimdong</td>
<td>1307—1325</td>
<td>? 1326</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>? 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bayan Khudu</td>
<td>?—1344</td>
<td>1333</td>
<td>~27</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nolun</td>
<td>?—1329</td>
<td>1316</td>
<td>~29</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irinjinbal</td>
<td>?—1375</td>
<td>1330</td>
<td>~61</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Botasirin</td>
<td>?—1365</td>
<td>1349</td>
<td>~32</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Average Age at Death: 33 (260/8)</td>
<td>Average Years in Marriage: 18 (146/8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This table was made based on the records in the Koryŏsa. We have the basic information for eight of the nine princesses whose birth years and marriage years are available to infer their ages at death.

I decide, that their common marriage age was sixteen, which I believe to be close to the real marriage age at that time. For example, Khudulu (gh) Khaimish 忽都鲁揭里迷失, the daughter of Khubilai Khan, married the Korean King Wang Sim when she was 16(1274-1258=16).

Surprisingly, five out of the eight princesses whose death ages are known died before thirty. They make up 63% of the total data. This information probably indicates the quality of their marriages.

2. Political Involvement of Mongol Empresses

It is often suggested that the high political profile of imperial wives and princesses during the early Tang period (seventh-eighth centuries) was the result of the relatively high status of women in steppe society. This also indicates their consequent involvement in court politics during the preceding conquest era. In a similar manner, the well-documented concern of the founder of the Ming dynasty set to restrict the power of imperial wives in the fourteenth century has been seen as a reaction against the authority assumed by such women in the preceding Mongol Yuan era.¹⁸⁰

Mongol empresses played very important political roles throughout the history of the Mongol Empire. One the one hand, they had the absolute right to participate in the khuriltai 庫爾台 to determine the major issues of the Mongol Empire. In particular, they played a crucial part in the election and enthronement of new emperors. One the other hand, they often became regents with direct command over the government, or they represented the emperors who were too old or too ill to handle state affairs, or they at least influenced the emperors in policy or decision-making procedures.

During the thirteen reigns of the Mongol Khans and the emperors of the Yuan dynasty, eleven empresses were actively involved in governmental affairs.¹⁸¹ Some of the empress dowagers partially or even fully controlled the Yuan emperors for several reigns. The trend in the Yuan

dynasty was an escalation of the influence of the empress and the decline of the power of the emperor.

One of the distinctive evidence is that Mongol empress had the authority to issue decrees to the local governments. The decrees of empress and imperial concubine were called “yizhi (exemplary edict), to differ from the “shengzhi (imperial edict) of emperors and “lingzhi (princely decree) of princes.

---

183 1240 Nian Jiyuan shifang da zizhong shengzhi bei 一二四零年濟源十方大紫微宮聖旨碑. In Cai Meibiao 蔡美彪 (ed.), Yuandai baihuabei jilu 元代白話碑集録, Kexue Chubanshe, 1955. This tablet was found in Jiyuan 濟源 County, Henan 河南 Province.
(1) Empresses as Regents

Women's political involvement was encouraged or at least tolerated in early Mongolian society. Chinggis Khan's mother Hö'elun and his wife Börte Ujin helped him make many important decisions in his political and military career. Sorghaghtani-Beki, the wife of Tolui, also greatly influenced politics in the reigns of Ögödei Khan, Güyük Khan, and Möngke Khan. "In any business which Qa'an (Ögödei) undertook, whether with regard to the weal of the Empire of the disposal of the army, he used to consult and confer with her and would suffer no change or alteration of whatever she recommended."\(^{183}\) Khubilai's daughter-in-law, the wife of the crown prince Jin Gim, had displayed her political talents and was appreciated by Khubilai. "His (Jin Gim's) wife, Kökejin by name, was very intelligent and the Qa'an was on very good terms with her and did whatever she commanded."\(^{184}\)

In the early World Empire, the Mongol emperors were elected at the khuriltai. In principle all the Mongol princes, princesses, and nobles were required to attend this assembly. An empress would be expected to be temporarily in charge of the affairs of the empire before a new emperor was elected. When that khuriltai could not be held on time, an empress would become regent and govern the whole empire until the khuriltai was held. Chaos and confusion was unavoidable during the transitional period.

Khuriltai was one of the legacies inherited from primitive Mongol society. Originally it was a conference for Mongol tribes and tribe alliances to discuss and determine important issues such as electing leaders and the planning of wars. Along with the expansion of the Mongol Empire, many traditional Mongol institutions had been changed to adapt to the new situation, and only the Khuriltai was retained. This institution seemed democratic, but because the Khuriltai was often

---

manipulated by some powerful noblemen and empresses and because of the unpredictability of the elections, political confusion and even wars always occurred in the transitional period of a throne transaction.

One of the Mongol customs included that the youngest son was entitled to inherit family property. Based on this, some people believed that the youngest son was entitled to inherit the throne. But this was not clearly affirmed by anybody or any khuriltai. Some people claimed that the eldest son had the priority to succeed to the throne, but the fact was that Chinggis Khan did not let his eldest son Jochi succeed to his throne, and designated his third son Ögödei as the crown prince instead. Because the Mongol Empire lacked an efficient system for the stable transfer of the throne, the confusion that occurred in the intermediary period seemed inevitable. The princes always entrusted empresses with the affairs of the empire during this period, and the roles they played were not always destructive. Most of the time, they were able to effectively and fairly conduct state affairs with the help of ministers. They were also able to run the affairs and the Empire itself, eventually helping the new Khan to ascend the throne.

Töregene became the regent after Ögödei died and remained in that position for four years. According to Rashid Al-Din, she played many political games to lure the support of the princes. “Töregene Khatun, who was the mother of the eldest son, making use of all the arts of diplomacy, seized possession of the kingdom by herself without consulting aqa and ini and wooed the hearts of kinsfolk and emirs with all manner of gifts and presents until they all inclined toward her and came under her control.” “For nearly 3 years the throne of the Khanate was under the

---

182 The Successors, p. 299.
183 Juvaini said, “By the yasa and custom of the Mongols the father’s place passes to the youngest son by the chief wife. Such as Ulugh-Noyan (Tolui), but it was Chinggis-Khan’s yasa that Ögödei should be khan...” World-Conqueror, Vol. II, p. 549. This account is obviously contradictory. It implied that there was no definite stipulation for the succession of throne in Chinggis Khan’s yasa.
control of Töregene Khatun.” During this period the government was in chaos until she handed over power to her son Güyük. “In that time of interregnum and confusion, everyone sent ambassadors in every direction and broadcast drafts and assignments; and on every side they attached themselves to parties and clung to such protection, each with a different pretext.” During this period a very serious incident occurred. Otchigin Noyan, the younger brother of Chinggis Khan, attempted to seize the throne by force. He set out a large army to the capital of the empire. The whole army and ulus were alarmed. Töregene even planned to escape from the capital but was stopped by the Right-Chancellor Yelü Chucai. Following Yelü Chucai’s instruction, she sent a messenger to say, “We are the kelins and have set our hopes on thee. What is the meaning of thy coming with an army and so much gear and equipment? The whole ulus and army have been disturbed.” Fortunately, at this moment her son Güyük returned from the West with a large army. Otchigin Noyan withdrew his army and the crisis was resolved.

Töregene probably did not intend to stay in the position for long, but she was determined to put her own son Güyük on the throne. She sent ambassadors to the East and West of the world to summon the princes, the sons of Chaghatay, the emirs of the right and left hand, the sultans, maliks, great men, and sadrs and invited them to the quriltai. Töregene continued to execute decrees until the Khanate was bestowed upon her son.

The disadvantage of the Mongolian military democracy in throne transferring was once again manifested after the death of Güyük Khan. “When Güyük Khan passed away confusion again found its way into the affairs of the Empire, and matters of the state were administered by Oghul-Qaimish

---

186 The Successors, pp. 176, 178. The number of years Rashid records is not correct. The regency of Töregene was four years, not three years.
187 The Successors, p. 178.
188 YS 146: 3464. See the biography of Yelü Chucai.
189 Mo. Sister-in-law.
190 The Successors, p. 178.
191 The Successors, p. 179.
and the ministers.”

Oghul-Qaimish remained in charge of state affairs for six months until Móngke Khan was elected at the khultai. Although she tried to put Shiremün, the grandson of Ögédei Khan, on the throne, she failed.

When Khubilai Khan died, his daughter-in-law, Kókejin, the senior wife of Jin Gim, immediately seized state power. “When Qubilai Qa’an passed away in the morin yil, that is the Year of the Horse, corresponding to the year 693/1293-1294, the senior wife of Jin Gim, who was the mother of Temür Qa’an, dispatched Bayan that same day along with the great emirs in search of Temür Qa’an to inform him of the Qa’an’s death and bring him back so that he might sit on the throne of the Empire. For the space of a year before his return, Kókejin administered the affairs and business of the realm. Upon his auspicious arrival a great quriltai was held.”

In view of malpractices in the throne transfer, some Confucian scholars had repeatedly advised Khubilai Khan to adopt the Chinese succession institution of primo-geniture in which only the eldest son of the emperor had the right to succeed to the crown. In 1260 after Khubilai succeeded in the struggle for the throne with his younger brother Arigh Böke, Hao Jing advised him “to designate a heir apparent to avoid the chaos.” However, this step would arouse the strong protests of the Mongol noblemen because it would completely destroy the traditional Mongol khuriltai. The latter was an important occasion involving merry-making, feasts, and the acceptance of large amounts of grants from the new Khan. Therefore, Khubilai had to be very careful to avoid alienating them.

192 The Successors. P. 199.
193 The Successors. P. 320.
In 1267 a Chinese scholar Yao Shu 姚枢 again advised Khubilai "to designate an heir-apparent to attach importance to the throne." In 1268 Chen You 陈祐 wrote a letter to Khubilai, pointing out "the heir apparent is related to the foundation of the state and should be designated as soon as possible." Khubilai might never have truly realized the urgency of this until he was warned by Zhang Xiongfei 张雄飞, a Chinese scholar-official, that "the designation of heir apparent is the foundation of the state, it should be determined as soon as possible to reassure the public. Even the common people in the alleys know that they should entrust their children with the little grain they stored. The land under heaven is so vast, and state affairs are so important. It will be unwise to not designate an heir apparent early. If the former emperor had understood this, would you have become the emperor?" The last words really shocked Khubilai who suddenly sat up in his bed exclaiming repeatedly, "Yes! Yes!" In 1273, Khubilai was finally determined to designate his son Jin Gim as the heir apparent. But he did not completely abandon the khuriltai institution, which caused even more confusion and political struggle for the throne throughout the Yuan dynasty.

(2) Empresses’ Manipulation of the Election of a New Khan or Emperor

An emperor was always the representative of various groups of Mongol nobles who shared the same interests. Mongol empresses constantly tried to exert maximum influence on the power transfer, and they played very important roles in the election and designation of a new Khan or emperor. In particular, they applied most of their influence upon the election of khuriltai. One typical instance was after Ögödei Khan's death Sorghaghtani-Beki, the wife of Tolui, made good

---

195 YS 158:3715. See the biography of Yao Shu.
196 YS 168:3940. See the biography of Chen You.
197 YS 163: 3819-20. See the biography of Zhang Xiongfei.
198 YS 163: 3820. See the biography of Zhang Xiongfei.
use of all her resources. She had the support of the powerful prince Batu, and therefore successfully seized the throne from the family of Ögedei for her own son, Môngke Khan.

In the khuriltai following Khubilai Khan’s death, Kökejin Khatun, the daughter-in-law of Khubilai Khan, put to good use her political skills and finally helped her favorite son, Temür, ascend the throne. At the khuriltai there was a dispute about the throne and the succession between Temür and his brother Kamala.

Kökejin Khatun, who was an extremely intelligent woman, said to them: “Chechen-Qa’an (that is, Qubilai Qa’an) said that whoever knew the biligs of Chingiz-Khan best should ascend the throne. Now, therefore, let each of you recite his biligs so that the great men who are present may see which knows them better.” Being extremely eloquent and [a good] reciter, Temür Qa’an declaimed the biligs well and with a pure accent, while Kamala, having something of a stammer and not being so well gifted in this respect, was unable to match him in the contest. All cried out with one voice: “Temiir Qa’an knows them better and recites them better also. It is he that is worthy of crown and throne.”

Khuriltai had actually terminated after Temür Khan’s reign. However, the role of empresses became even more vital to the enthronement of new emperors. They often assumed the authority to directly enthron the new emperors. In the late Yuan three emperors, Yingzong, Ningzong, and Shundi were directly enthroned by the empress dowagers when they were very young and easy to control. All empress dowagers preferred to designate younger and weak emperors so that they could continue to control governmental affairs. When Renzong died, according to seniority, Mingzong should have succeeded. However, the empress dowager Daji found that Mingzong was full of heroic spirit while he was young, while Yingzong was relatively weak. All the villains thought that the enthronement of Mingzong would not benefit themselves, therefore they supported the enthronement of Yingzong.” Surprisingly, however, Yingzong soon turned out to be an independent-thinking emperor. As soon as he ascended the throne, he pursued a series of radical

---

199 The Successors, 8:321.
200 YS 116:2902. See the biography of Daji.
reforms, which went against the interests of the Empress Dowager Daji and her followers. Daji was overcome with regret and soon died.

(3) Empresses’ Involvement in State Affairs

When an emperor was too old or too ill, his principal empress was entitled to handle governmental affairs on his behalf. In 1283, when Khubilai was 69 years old, Nambui 南必 became his principal empress. “At that time Shizu was very old, this empress gradually became involved in politics. The chancellor and ministers could not see the emperor frequently. They had to report things [to Shizu] through the empress.”

When Chengzong (r.1295-1307) was very sick in his late years, his wife Bulughan 不鲁罕 also played an important role in government. “Chengzong had always been ill, this empress undertook some work in the government. She trusted the chancellor Halahasun. The government in the Dade 大德 era had been deemed to be stable and fair, which was all decided and handled by this empress.” Probably she enjoyed the pleasure of power too much and was reluctant to give it up easily. Therefore when Chengzong died, she planned to become regent. She failed only because Renzong and his supporters took preemptive measures against her.

The political involvement of empresses in the Yuan dynasty was allowed even when the emperors were alive and healthy. Confucian officials had never criticized them for their interference in governmental affairs. Instead, they were deemed constructive. Chabui 蔡必, the principal empress of Khubilai, had proved to be a good political assistant of Khubilai. One day, four chieshig officers presented a memorial to Khubilai. They planned to enclose and occupy a piece of land at the outskirts of the capital to herd horses, and Khubilai had already given permission. When Chabui

\[201\] VS 114:2873. See the biography of Nanbi.
\[202\] VS 114:2873. See the biography of Bulughan.
\[203\] Chieshig, Imperial guard.
discovered this, she immediately realized that it was a wrong decision. To avoid embarrassing her husband, the empress cleverly turned to the Grand Guardian (chn. Taibao 太保) Liu Bingzhong 劉秉忠 and reproved him, “You are a clever man of the Han people. The emperor will listen to your words. Why do you not admonish the emperor? If we are only now beginning to build the capital, it would be all right to use this land to herd horses. But now the land has already been divided among the army and commoners. How can you take it by force?” Khubilai acquiesced and ordered this stopped. Chinese historians recorded this as the most important deed of Chabui in her biography, which shows their gratitude towards her, as it was extremely important to them to preserve the agricultural culture of China under Mongol rule.

(4) Struggles between Empress Dowagers and Emperors

When an empress was successful in politics and had enjoyed the pleasure of great power, she would be normally unwilling to give it up even when the new emperor had already matured as an adult. Therefore, struggles for power between the empress dowager and the emperor were unavoidable. While in most cases the empresses would eventually be defeated, they were also killed, poisoned, ordered to commit suicide, or forcibly driven out of the palace.

When Chengzong died, his wife Bulughan tried to become regent, and she wished to place the Prince of Anxi, Ananda 阿難答, as her assistant. They received support from the chancellor and other important government officials. However, Renzong and his supporters arrested Ananda and killed the chancellor and the other officials. Then Bulughan was ordered to move to the Dong'an Zhou 東安州 and was soon killed.

Although Renzong and Wuzong successfully destroyed the forces of Bulughan, they were not able to cast off the domination of their mother, the Empress Dowager Daji, who had successfully

---

204 YS 114:2871. See the biography of Chabi.
controlled three emperors. "However, she was careless about her conduct. Since she occupied the principal position of the Palace, she was even more lascivious and unrestrained." Renzong and Wuzong were very obedient to their mother and dared not disobey her. When her secret lover, the chancellor of the Yunnan Province, Tiemudier 帖木迭兒, was impeached because he left his post without permission, Wuzong was going to punish him. He had to give up his plans because Daji gave protection to him. Later, since Tiemudier had committed too much evil, Wuzong decided to kill him. But, Daji let Tiemudier hide in her palace. The only thing Wuzong could do was to dismiss him from office. When the Empress Dowager’s decision conflicted with national laws, Wuzong and Renzong chose to sacrifice national interests and follow the commands of the Empress Dowager. Therefore, although they were ambitious in pursuing some political reforms, because of the interference of their mother, all their efforts went to ruin.

The empress of Wenzong Buda-shili 不答失里 became the Empress Dowager in Ningzong’s reign. After Ningning died, she seated Toghan-Temür on the throne, but she continued to control the government for several years. When Toghan-Temür became independent, he started to wipe out the forces of his aunt. In the sixth month of 1340 he issued a decree to remove the respectful titles of the Empress Dowager and banished her to the Dong’an Zhou. She died there soon after.

Toghan-Temür’s first empress Dana-shili 答納失里 was the daughter of the powerful minister Yantie-mur燕帖木兒. Yantie-mur had controlled Toghan-Temür at the beginning of his reign. Her uncle and brother also occupied important positions in the Yuan government. Because Shundi intended to reduce their power, they harbored resentment and complained openly. It is alleged that

---

205 YS 22: 478. See the basic annals of Wuzong.
206 YS 116: 2902. See the biography of Daji.
207 YS 205: 4576-77. See the biography of Tiemudier.
208 YS 179: 4149-51. See the biography of He Sheng 賀勝.
209 YS 40: 856-7.
they planned to stage a coup d’etat but failed.\textsuperscript{210} As a result, her brothers were killed, and she was also poisoned.

The deprival of the power of the Empress Dowager and his own empress reveals that Shundi was very concerned about the power of the empress and tried to restrain them. Later when the Empress Qi, a Korean woman, tried to force him to abdicate and hand over his power to the crown prince, he was very angry and refused to see her for two months.\textsuperscript{211} The struggles between the emperor, the empress, and the crown prince ran through the later period of Shundi’s reign, which seriously poisoned the political atmosphere of the Yuan dynasty and facilitated the demise of the Mongol dynasty.

\textbf{(5) Limitations to the Political Involvement of the Mongol Empresses}

Generally speaking, the successful political involvement of the Empresses depended on support from government officials and Mongol princes. However, the support they could rely on was limited, and was often unavailable. There were constant obstacles to the fulfillment of their political ambitions. For instance, in Töregene’s regency, Yelü Chucai 耶律楚材, always corrected her wrong decisions. She could not even get support from her own son Kötén, who refused to extradite the ministers who came to him seeking refuge from the political persecution of Töregene.\textsuperscript{212} Empress Bulughan had some supporters, but later she was defeated in the coup d’état. One of the important reasons was that the chancellor Hala-hasun opposed her. While the Empress Qi’s political involvement had been opposed by many ministers in the Yuan government.

\textsuperscript{210}YS 138: 3333-34. See the biography of Tang Qishi 唐其勢.
\textsuperscript{211}YS 114:2880. See the biography of Wanzhehudu.
\textsuperscript{212}World Conqueror, Vol. II, pp. 241-42.
To whom, then, did the empress dowagers and empresses resort to practice their power and to exert their political influence? In general, the most reliable forces were their sons and servants, such as eunuchs, who played an important role in late Yuan politics. For example, one of Töregene’s trusted followers, Fátima 法蒂瑪 Khatun, was initially a prisoner of war, but she became very powerful during Töregene’s regency.

It so chanced that she came to Qara-Qorun, where she was a procureess in the market; and in the arts of shrewdness and cunning the wily Delilah could have been her pupil. During the reign of Qa’an she had constant access to the ordu of Töregene Khatun; and when times changed and Chinqai withdrew from the scene, she enjoyed even greater favor, and her influence became paramount; so that she became the sharer of intimate confidences and the depository of hidden secrets, and she was free to issue commands and prohibitions.213

The Empress Dowager Daji had relied on her followers to execute her commands, “Inside her palace she trusted Hei Lü’s mother Yilie-shiba 亦列失八. Outside her palace her favorites Shiliemun 失列門, Niulin 紐鄰, and the then-chancellor Tiemudier 帖木迭兒 acted in collusion with each other, they even insulted and beat the director of political affairs Zhang Gui 張珪 stopping at nothing, fouling and confusing court affairs.”214 Empress Buda-shili had incited the eunuch Baizhu 拜住 to murder Empress Babusha 八不沙 of Mingzong. While the Korean eunuch Piao Buhua 朴不花 actually acted as the representative of the Empress Qi of Shundi. They came from the same hometown. Later, Piao Buhua became the servant of Empress Qi, and was promoted to the rank of the Great Officer in Eminent Dignity (Rong Lu Dafu榮祿大夫), ambassador of the Zizheng Yuan 資政院, and the director of financial matter of the empress. Piao Buhua collaborated with the Right-chancellor Shuosijian 揚思監 to deceive Shundi. “They hid the warnings from every quarter and the reports about the merits of the generals and ministers and did

214 YS 116:2902. See the biography of Daji.
not let Shundi become aware of these. ...They were so powerful that nine out of ten officials ingratiated themselves with them.”

Compared with other dynasties in Chinese history, the political involvement of the Yuan empresses is unprecedented. Women’s political involvement in ancient China was constantly criticized as “a hen acting as a cock to crow in the morning” (pinji si chen 北雞司晨) and rigidly restricted. Although imperial consorts were highly honored, they still remained as dependants. Their functions in reproduction and entertainment were deemed much more important than their political talents. Several women in Chinese history had been active politically and one of them, Wu Zetian 武則天, even became emperor. However, they were after all small in number. In the Yuan dynasty, empresses were active politically in almost all reigns. This was by no means a fortuitous phenomenon. It reflected women’s social position in ancient Mongol society. It is well known that Mongol women had a higher social position than Chinese women. This was, firstly, a result of their important social and economic activities. Jean de Plan Carpin, William of Rubruk, and Marco Polo all mentioned the significant role of Mongol women in household economy. “All women had power in their families. Many of them even shoot arrows as men.” The political involvement of empress was basically constructive in the early Yuan period. However, after the middle Yuan, empresses or empress dowagers controlled the emperors and the government. The internal struggles in the ruling house became more and more fierce, which greatly wore down the strength of the Mongol empire and facilitated the decline of the Yuan dynasty.

In typical Chinese dynasties, the political involvement of empresses was always supported by their powerful families. Their political involvement implied the political involvement by their

---

215 YS 204: 4552. See the biography of Piaobuhua 朴不花.
216 Shangshu-“Mu shi” 尚書-牧誓.
families, who took advantage of their daughters by monopolizing power in governmental affairs. “Disasters caused by waiqi” had been a critical problem in Chinese dynasties. However, although the empresses were very active in the Yuan dynasties, their families were rarely involved in the internal political struggles of the ruling house. There were many measures in the Yuan dynasty which limited wanqi’s access to central power. One of the good deeds of the empress dowager Kökejin, which was commented upon by historians, was that she refused her younger brother’s request for a government position.²¹⁸

Women’s interference in state affairs had been criticized and even condemned by Chinese historians. “The involvement of women in politics was the source of confusion.”²¹⁹ In their writings, the decline and destruction of almost all dynasties had something to do with the “disasters caused by women 女禍”. This certainly was a prejudice towards women, however, it has been determined that some women were responsible for the decline and destruction of some Chinese dynasties. Through their power of their beauty, empresses and concubines vied for the favor of the emperor, which easily led the emperor to fall into a dissolute life. As a result, the emperor’s personal life inevitably affected state politics. In extreme, if an emperor was very indulgent in sensual pleasures and ignored his governmental responsibilities, his dynasty would hardly be able to maintain stability of power and reign.

Since the very beginning of Chinese dynastic history, the destruction of the three earliest Chinese dynasties, Xia, Shang, and Zhou, were claimed to be caused by women. The last emperor of the Xia Dynasty, “Jie 禹 abandoned etiquette and ethics, and had sex with women. He collected many beautiful women in his harem, and gathered courtesans, dwarfs, and close servants who could play funny games. He created decadent music. Day and night he drank together with Meixi 妃喜

²¹⁸YS 116: 2899.
and other palace girls and never stopped. He put Meixi on his knees, and listened to her words." The last emperor of the Yin-Shang dynasty, Zhou Wang 王 "loved wine, sex, and pleasure, and favored women. He loved Daji 妃, and always complied with Daji’s words." The You Wang 幽王 of the Zhou dynasty favored Baosi 裴姬. "Baosi did not like to laugh. You Wang wanted her to laugh, but she did not laugh. You Wang then played a big drum and lighted the beacon-fires that were only used when foreign enemies invaded. All the dukes came, but there were no enemies, Baosi then laughed loudly." The Xuanzong 玄宗 in the Tang Dynasty favored his Honoured Consort Yang, and therefore ignored his governmental duties.

The last emperor of the Yuan dynasty shared all these characteristics of licentiousness. When he was tired of government duties and sought sensual pleasures, his bodyguard, Hama 哈麻, immediately recommended an Indian monk to teach him the method of "great pleasure (da xile 大喜樂 or yan der fá 演誦兒法)". The monk boasted that if one learned this method, one could have intercourse with ten women in a night, and absorb the feminine essence to nurture the masculine. Following the monk’s instruction, Shundi ordered a tantric temple built for the “happy Buddha 歡喜佛” in which all the Buddha figures were in all kinds of positions of sexual intercourse. Shundi then selected some beautiful women from his harem in order to practice this method in this temple. Later, Hama’s sister-in-law, Tulu-tiemur, recommended another Tibetan monk named Jialinzhen 姬琳真, to teach Shundi another sexual method called “men and women practice together (nan nü shuangxiu fa 男女雙修法).” Shundi knew that his principal empresses

---

223 A method of directing one’s strength, through concentration, to a part of the body. This “great pleasure” directs the strength to the sexual organ.
might refuse to learn this method because she rigidly adhered to etiquette, and that it would take time for the other concubines to change their minds. Therefore he ordered thirty beautiful girls selected from the common families, and ten men selected from his relatives who were called “yina 倚納”, to practice the sexual method together. Moreover, the “yina” of Shundi used Korean women as spies to look for beautiful women among the common families or even noble’s families, and introduced them to the palace. These women would stay in the palace for several days. Soon they trained sixteen beautiful girls who formed a dancing team, called “heavenly demon dancing girls (tian mo wunü 天魔舞女).” Shundi was fascinated by these girls and whenever a dancing girl attracted him he would take her to a room in order to have sexual intercourse. There was a secret room called “anything goes (shishi wuai 事事無礙)” where Shundi often had intercourse with the dancing girls, together with other officials. According to a rule of the Yuan dynasty, an emperor should not stay in one ordo for more than five days. To visit the dancing girls more often, Shundi ordered a tunnel built connecting his room and the place where the dancing girls were situated in, so that he could avoid the criticism of the ministers. It is difficult to find a parallel for him even among the most dissolute emperors in Chinese history. It would have been a miracle if the Yuan dynasty did fall with him.

---

225 Yina 倚納, companion.
The founder of the Ming dynasty drew a lesson from the lascivious practices in the later Yuan and enacted decrees strictly prohibiting empresses from contacting outsiders.

In view of the failure of the former dynasty and the fact that in the later Yuan, the wives and concubines [of the emperor] and other women in the palace committed adultery with outside ministers, or allowed monks to stay in the palace to be initiated into nunhood, and the wives of ministers also came and left the prohibited palace, and made the palace full of obscenity, the emperor (Hongwu) issued a decree: An empress could be in charge only of the business of the imperial consorts and other women in the palace. She was not allowed to be involved in things outside the palace.229

The Ming founder even attributed the extinction of the Yuan dynasty to the obscenity in the later Yuan palace.230

Chapter Four

“Two-way” Marriages: Marriages between the Mongolian Royal Family and Dei-sechan’s Clan of the Onggirat Tribe and the Ikires

The Onggirat Tribe

1. Historical Background

The Onggirat tribe was a nomadic tribe which had settled in districts from the lower reaches of the Kerulen River to the Argun River. To its west was Chinggis’s Kiyan 乞顏 tribe, a sub-tribe of Mongol; its southeast bordered on the Great Wall of the Jin; and its southwest was contiguous to the Tartar tribe. 231

According to Rashid Al-din, all the Mongol people were divided into two sub-tribes. One was the Darlakin Mongol tribe and the other was the Niru’un Mongol tribe. The Darlakin Mongol referred to the common Mongol people, while the Niru’un Mongol tribe comprised of the descendants of Alan Quo’a. 阿蘭 - 訖阿. 232 The Onggirat tribe belonged to the Darlakin Mongol tribe and Chinggis’s Kiyan 乞顏 tribe belonged to the Niru’un Mongol tribe.

The Onggirat and the Mongol Kiyan tribes had been related by marriage for many generations prior to Chinggis (Temüjin) Khan. When Temüjin’s father Yesügei took him to his maternal grandfather’s tribe to make an offer of marriage, they met by Dei Sechen 德薛禪, a nobleman of the Onggirat tribe, who said to Yesügei:

“We Unggirad people from days of old,
Having [for us] the comeliness

232 Shi ji, vol.1a: 152.
Of the daughters of [our] daughters,
And the beauty
Of [our] daughters,
Have not been disputing enemies.
For those of you which are become qahan,
We make [our] daughters comely of cheek
To ride in a Qasa cart
And, making [one] to harness a black he camel [to it],
Making him to trot, we go [unto the qahan]
And make [them] to sit together [with the qahan]
On the qatun throne.”

The Onggirat people had helped Chinggis Khan greatly in unifying the Mongol steppes and in the founding of the Great Mongol Empire. During the war conquering the Jin, Onggirat tribe was one of the “five touxia 投下”234, together with the Ikires, Wuluwut, Mangwut, and Jalair. In the early stage of the Yeke-Mongol ulus the Onggirat people were an important force that Chinggis Khan relied upon.

According to D’Ohsson’s Mongol History 多桑蒙古史, there were five sub-tribes under the Onggirat tribe. They were the Councarates 弘吉剌惕, Ikires 亦乞列思, Oulcounoutes (Olqunu’ud) 玩勒忽訶兀惕, Caranoutes哈剌納惕, and the Counkoulioutes 弘吉剌兀惕.235 Chinggis Khan’s father-in-law Dei Sechen belonged to the Oulcounoutes tribe. But later Dei Sechen’s posterity formed a tribe called the Bosihur-Onggirat.

233 The Secret History, pp. 15-6. YCMS, P. 22. We know from the words of Dei Sechen that Onggirat tribe and the Mongol tribe had longer history of intermarriage. In a note under Yesügei’s abducting Hö’elün, Daorun Tibu 道潤梯步 points out that the Onggirat tribe had an intermarriage relationship with the Mongol tribe for many generations before Yesügei. It may explain why Yesügei abducted Hö’elün. He argues that Yesügei probably did not like Olqunu’ud-Onggirat 玩勒忽訶兀惕 -弘吉剌特 tribe to establish a new marriage relationship with another tribe. (See Daorun Tibu: Xinyi jianzhu Menggu mishi 新譯簡注蒙古秘史, P. 26, Vol. 1, Sanlian Shudian Xianggang Fendian, 1980). The problem is how Yesügei knew that Hö’elün was an Onggirat woman when he first saw her on the road. It might have been a coincidence because Yesügei was initially attracted by the beauty of Hö’elün. According to Rashid al-din, these two tribes had a marriage relationship earlier than Yesügei. Chinggis Khan’s great-grandmother, the wife of Qobule Khan 合不勒, was a woman of the Onggirat tribe, who gave birth to six sons. (Shiji史集, vol. 1b: 50)

234 touxia 投下 was one of the several terms for land grants (often rendered appendages) conferred on members of the nobility; the recipient of large tracts were virtually autonomously fief-holders who nominated men for official appointments in their domains, collected taxes, and exercised other governmental powers until c. 1311, when the central government began exerting its direct control in all areas and nobles were given stipends in lieu of incomes derived from their tracts.
However, it should be noted that although the Mongol and Onggirat tribes called each other huda, for a long time most members of the Onggirat tribe were antagonistic to Chinggis Khan in his establishment of unifying wars in the northern steppes, since Chinggis’ action had threatened their interest and existence. They “were all afraid of the power (of Chinggis Khan) and felt restless. Therefore they gathered at Aleiquan 阿雷泉 ...and were going to attack the Emperor (Chinggis Khan)”.

“Onggirat tribe submitted to Jamuga’s (Zhamuhe 札木合) tribe, together with several other tribes, met at the Jian River 健河 ...and drove soldiers to invade and harass.”

Chinggis Khan’s Mongol tribe also had often plundered the Onggirat tribe. “Onggirat people came and were going to surrender, Hasar 哈撒兒 did not understand their intention and plundered them.” Therefore Onggirat people went to surrender to Jamuga. In 1201, the chief of the Onggirat tribe, Qarkeh-amıl (Dierge-ke’emiele 迪兒格-克額蔑勒) and the chiefs of the Qtqin (Hedajin 合答斤) and Saljiut tribes (Sale-zhiwuti 撒勒只兀惕) and others met at the Jian River. They elected Jamuga as their Khan, and jointly assaulted Chinggis Khan and Ong-Khan. But they were defeated by the armies of Chinggis Khan and Ong-Khan in the fields of Buir-nauur. In this campaign a part of the Onggirat people formally surrendered to Chinggis Khan.

In 1203, when Chinggis Khan was defeated by Ong-Khan and marched along the Qalqa River (Helehe 合勒合), he sent a troop to conquer the Onggirat people, and said,

If they say [unto themselves], “The Unnirad people from days of old [have had their being not by the might of arms, but]
By the comeliness
Of the daughters of [their] daughters,
By the beauty
Of [their] daughters,”

---

236 YS 1:7. See the basic annals of Taizu.
237 YS 1:8.
238 Shiji 史集, vol. 1b:158.
They should submit themselves. If they say, "Revolts!" we shall fight.\textsuperscript{240}

This part of Onggirat people then surrendered to Chinggis Khan. Later, Chinggis Khan conquered the sub-tribe of the Onggirat tribe--Niejin 蚁兒斤部. Since then, all the sub-tribes of the Onggirat tribe surrendered to Chinggis Khan. In 1203, Chinggis Khan found an excuse and killed Qarkeh-aml—the chief of Onggirat tribe, and made all the Onggirat people under the command of Dei Sechen and his descendants.\textsuperscript{241}

According to The Secret History, Chinggis Khan’s mother Hœ”elün Ùjin was an Onggirat woman abducted by Yesügei 也速该 Ba’atur.\textsuperscript{242} The story was very dramatic. One day, Yesügei was hunting with hawks at the Onon River, he saw a man of the Merkit (Märkit) tribe, named Yeke-Chiliedü 也克赤列都, who just married to a girl from the Olqunu’tud tribe (a sub-tribe of the Onggirat tribe) and was returning home with his wife. The bride was beautiful. Yesügei immediately ran home to call his two brothers, Nekün Taisi and Dari tai Odchigin, to abduct the bride. They drove the bridegroom away and brought Hœ’elün home.\textsuperscript{243}

Hœ’elün cried very bitterly when she was seized. The Secret History tells us that her cry was so loud that even the water in the Onon River and the trees in the woods vibrated.\textsuperscript{244} Obviously she loved her newly married husband. When she realized that Yesügei and his brothers were going to

\textsuperscript{240}YCMS 元朝秘史 , pp. 96-97, annotated by Chen Binhe, 1933. The Secret History, ch. VI, p. 101.

\textsuperscript{241} According to the Biography of Dei Sechen in XYS, Chinggis Khan granted Die’erge Ke’emiele a girl named Buyisaike 朶色喜覓克, Die’erge disliked the girl’s appearance and said that she looks like a toad, and he did not want to marry her. That made Chinggis Khan angry and had him killed. (XYS, Juan 114, p. 521). Ke Shaomin does not clearly state the relationship between this girl and Chinggis Khan. But Rashid Al-din said that she was a daughter of Chinggis Khan, “When Chinggis Khan married his daughter named.....to him (Qarkeh-aml); when he was marrying [his daughter] to him, [Qarkeh-aml] said: ‘your daughter looks like a toad and tortoise, how can I marry her?’ because of this, [Chinggis Khan] killed him in anger. (Shiji 史集 , vol. 1a: 263-64). I assume that Chinggis’ original intention was to establish a marriage relationship with Qarkeh-aml for the purpose to control the Onggirat tribe. It is also probable that Chinggis Khan intentionally offered him an ugly girl in order to find an excuse to kill him and give his people to Dei Sechen.

\textsuperscript{242} Ba’atur/Batur meant warrior in Mongolian language.

\textsuperscript{243} YCMS, p. 18, annotated by Chen Binhe. The Secret History, ch.1, p. 12-3.

\textsuperscript{244} The Secret History, ch. 1, p. 13. YCMS , p.18.
abduct her, she urged her husband Yeke-Chiliedü (Chledü) to run away in order to save his life. She said to him:

Hast thou observed those three men? They are other [in countenance] than [all other] countenances. They have the countenance [of being desirous] of attaining unto thy life. If there be [for thee] but thy life, there are [for thy]
Maidens
At every forefront;
Women
At every black cart.

If there be [for thee] but thy life, thou shalt find a maiden or a woman. Thou shalt also name Hö’elün [her] which hath another name. Save thy life. Go scenting my scent. 245

Then she took off her undershirt and gave it to Yeke-Chiliedü as a memento. When she had been seized by Yesügei, she cried and said:

Mine “elder brother” Chledü is one
Whose tuft hath never blown
Against the wined;
Whose belly hath never hungered
In the desert land.

Now how, tossing his two braids [of hair] one time on his breast, one time forward, one time backward, how [so] doing, goeth he.” 246

However, it was legal to abduct a married woman in ancient Mongol society. A woman could only obey her destiny. She was not allowed to protest. Her relationship with Yesügei seemed quite harmonious, for she gave birth to four sons and one daughter. The eldest son was Temüjin (Tiemuzhen) 鐵木真, the other three in order were Qasar 合撒兒, Qachi’ün 合赤溫, and Temüge 鐵木格. Her only daughter was Temülün 鐵木侖.

Hö’elün was a very important woman in Mongol history. It was she who gave birth to Temüjin, although his identity is possibly questionable. 247 As a great Mongol hero, he founded the Great

---

247 According to the study of Hadesi 哈德斯, Temüjin’s father was probably not Yesügei, instead, the Merkit people. “After about ten days when Yesügei got Hö’elün, she was again abducted by the Mirkete 密爾克特 (Merkit) people. She lived in an embarrassing situation. She even did not know whose child
Mongol Empire and significantly changed the world order in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. Therefore, in a sense, it is fair to say that the abduction of Hö‘elün was significant for it changed Mongol history and even world history.

There is also a story recorded in The Secret History about the formal establishment of the marriage relationship between the Mongol tribe and the Onggirat tribe. When Temüjin was nine years old, his father Yesügei took him to his maternal grandfather’s tribe to make an offer of marriage. On the way they met by Dei Sechen, a nobleman of the Onggirat tribe. When Dei Sechen knew that Yesügei was looking for a girl for Temüjin, he looked at the boy and found that he had a pair of bright eyes, glowing with health and radiating vigor” "With fire in his eyes, with light in his face." He then invited Yesügei and Temüjin to see her daughter who was ten years old. Her name was Börte 李爾帖, and she was pretty. Then the two fathers decided on marriage for their children. The next day when Yesügei asked Dei Sechen to allow him to take the girl with them, Dei Sechen said,

If I give [my daughter], [after] letting [thee] request [her] many times, shall [I] be exalted? If [I] give [my daughter], [after] letting [thee] request [her but] a few times, shall [I] be abashed? [It will not be so, for] the destiny of a girl is not to wax old at the door where she was born. I will give [unto thee] my daughter. And go [thou], leaving thy son as son in law.249

she conceived. When Yesügei knew that Hö‘elün bore a boy, he named him Temüjin, the same name of a warrior he captured. Yesügei treated Temüjin as his own child. Hö‘elün also treated the children born by the other wife of Yesügei as her own children. However, there were always conflicts among Temüjin, his younger brothers Bieketier (Begter), and Bielegutai (Belgiitei). One day, Temüjin said to Bieketier: 'you are not born by Hö‘elün.” Bieketier answered back: 'only you are not born by my father Yesüge. We, Bielegutai, Hasar, Tiemugai, Tiemulun, are all the children of Yesüge, but you are not his son. We all know this, and all the people in the tribe know it. Your body had the blood of the Mirkete people. Hö‘elün conceived you and bore you when she came to our tribe. If you do not believe me, you can ask your mother, she knows it the most clearly.' Temüjin angrily shouted: ‘Do not say that nonsense!’ soon after, Temüjin killed Bieketier with an arrow.” (Hadesi 哈得斯, "Hasakezu Kelie bu tuo jiqi Wang Han Tuherele" 哈薩克族克烈部落及其王汗吐和熱勤. In Xinjiang shifan daxue xuebao, vol. 18, No. 4, 1997) This study bases on the historical materials and the folk legends among the Hasake people in Xingjiang. It convincingly accounts for the true motivation of Temüjin’s murdering his younger brother. The Secret History offers an explanation that Temüjin and Hasar killed Begter because he wrested a lark they shot with a bone-tipped arrow. But this does not seem to be a strong reason for them to kill the boy. (The Secret History, pp. 22-23)

248 The Secret History, ch.1, p. 15.
249 The Secret History, ch. 1, p 17. A simple translation is as the following: “If you have asked me many times and I finally give my daughter to you, it indicates that I am putting her in a high position. If you just
Yesügei presented a horse as a betrothal gift for his son and left Temüjin in Dei Sechen’s home as an uxorilocal son-in-law.

On the way home Yesügei took part in a feast with the Tartar tribe, the feud of Yesügei’s tribe. The Tartar people recognized that he was the man who had captured their chief Temüjin-Wuge 鐵木真兀格 in a battle nine years ago; therefore they put poison in his food. Three days later, Yesügei died at home. Before he died, he entrusted his servant Münlig 蒙力克 to bring Temüjin home from his parents-in-law’s.250

Yesügei’s death brought hardship upon his widows and children. His subjects refused to obey the orders of his widow Hö’elün and his children, and finally they abandoned them. Hö’elün was a steadfast and persevering woman. In such adverse circumstances she raised five little children alone by collecting wild fruits and digging grass roots.251

When Temüjin grew up, he went to Dei Sechen’s home to marry his betrothed wife Börte. We found two different accounts about the attitude of Dei Sechen. According to The Secret History, Dei Sechen was very happy and immediately let Temüjin marry his daughter. Then he and his wife Chotan sent the newly married couple off in person. Dei Sechen returned from the Kerulen River, while his wife traveled with them to Temüjin’s home.252 However, according to Rashid Al-din, Dei Sechen had obstructed this marriage, and only with the help of Anchen, the elder brother of Börte who was on good terms with Temüjin did they finally get married.253

have asked me once and I give her to you immediately, that indicates that I am putting her in a lower position. Of course, it’s irrational for a girl to become old and die in the door where she was born. I will give my daughter to your son, you should leave your son here as a son-in-law.” YCMS 元朝秘史 / Chen Binhe, p. 23.
253 Shiji 史集, vol. 1a, p. 264.
Temüjin had been determined to restore the power and fame of his family and to revenge his father. To gain support from Ong-Khan, the chief of the Kereit tribe, which was the most powerful tribe at that time, Temüjin presented him with a valuable black marten garment which was the dowry of his wife. Ong-Khan had been the anda (sworn brother) of Temüjin’s father, therefore Temüjin acknowledged Ong-Khan as his adoptive father. Since then the alliance of these two tribes was established. With the help of Ong-Khan, Temüjin soon became powerful and he gradually destroyed most of his enemies.

In the following war years, Chinggis Khan took in more than ten wives and had many children, but Börte and her children had been placed at the highest position. Börte was posthumously titled as “Guang xian yi sheng Empress” 光獻翼聖皇后.

Because of the great contributions of the Onggirat tribe, Ögödei Khan issued an imperial edict, “The girls born to the Onggirat tribe should become empresses (of Mongol) for generations. The boys born to the Onggirat tribe should marry princesses (of Mongol) for generation. It should never cease.”

In the Yuan dynasty, Anchen’s descendants were granted a fief (shiyi) in Jining Lu in the territory of the ancient state of Lu. Therefore, they were titled Prince-of-prefecture-of-Jining, Prince-of-Jining, and Prince-of-state-of-Lu. The princesses married all titled Princess-of-state-of-Lu.

The grandson of Chigu, Changji, was sent by Khubilai Khan to guard the Prefecture Xining, therefore this part of Onggirat people migrated to Qinghai. Chigu’s fief was in Puyang (in present Henan province). Therefore, Changji was titled Prince-of-prefecture-of-

---

254 *The Secret History*, Ch. III, p 38.
255 YS 114:2869.
256 YS 114:2869. See the biography of Borte 李兒台 (Borte). YS 118:2915. See the biography of Texuechan 特薛禪 (Dei Sechan).
Ningpu and Prince-of-Puyang. The Prefecture Pu governed Juancheng 鄉城. Therefore the princesses married all titled Princess-of-state-of-Juan. In addition, because Changji’s new fief was in the west of the Qishan 岐山, his brother Tuotuoshur 脫脫術兒 was titled Prince-of-Qi.  

In 1270 (the seventh year of the Zhiyuan era), Nachen’s son Woluochen built a city named Yingchang 應昌 in the Dar Haizi 答兒海子 area. In 1295 (the first year of the Yuanzhen 元貞 era), Woluochen’s younger brother Manzitai 建宗台 built a new city named Quanning 全寧 (in present Inner Mongolia). Each of these cities had governed a circuit. All the officials within the fief were selected and appointed by the Prince-of-state-of-Lu. Therefore, the lands governed by the Onggirat nobles covered a vast part of northern China and southern Mongolia.

2. Onggirat Men Married to Mongol Princesses

Dei Sechen had three sons, they were Anchen 按陳 (Alchi), Huohu 火忽 (Huqu), and Ce 常. Although Dei Sechen himself did not command troops to participate in the conquering wars of Chinggis Khan, his three sons accomplished great things. The three thousand mounted troops of the Onggirat tribe were commanded by Anchen and had participated in the campaign against Ong-Khan and the expedition against the Naimans 乃蠻. When Chinggis Khan ascended the throne, Anchen was granted the official title of Battalion Commander (qianhu 千戶). In the campaign against the Jin 金, Anchen first fought in the east of the Liao 遼 with Hundugu 賢都古 and forced Yeliao Liuge 耶律留哥 to surrender to the Mongols. Then he was ordered to support Yelü Liuge 耶律留哥. Later when Chinggis Khan was going to launch a westward expedition, he entrusted

---

257 *Lu*, circuit.
259 Three hundred li 里 east of Shangdu 上都. YS, 118: 2920.
King Muqali 木華黎 continuing the campaign against the Jin. Anchen led his Onggirat troops to take part in the campaign under the command of Muqali and became one of the ten high-ranking officials (tikong 拔掟) of Muqali. When Chinggis Khan returned from the Western Regions, he ordered Anchen to command his troops to participate in the campaigns conquering the Xi Xia. In 1227 (the 22nd year of Taizu) Anchen was granted an assumed name “Imperial (National) Maternal Uncle Noble” (Guoji Nayan 國舅那顏). In 1232 (the fourth year of the reign of Ögedei), he was granted a silver seal and a title the Prince of Hexi. In 1236 he was granted five thousand and two hundred households in Dongping 東平 which were captured by his troops. The next year he was granted two hundred thousand min262 of money. According to the Yuanshi, Anchen participated in thirty-two campaigns and contributed to all of them.263 Anchen was titled Prince of Jining 济寧王 posthumously. Anchen’s eldest son Chiku 赤苦 married Princesses Tumanluan 秃滿倫, who was the third daughter of Chinggis Khan, and was titled Princess of the State of Yun 宜.264 In 1206 Chiku was granted a title of the commander of one thousand households and led his troops to guard the east of Liao under the commander of Qasar, the younger brother of Chinggis Khan.265

No detailed records remain describing the activities of Huqu (Huohu) in the Yuanshi, the second son of Dei Sechen. What we have known is that he was granted a big piece of land in the areas of east Mongolia bordered on the territory of the Ikires tribe.266 It was recorded that his grandson Buzhier 不只兒 married Princess Wokezhen 幹可真.267

261 Rashid Al-din claims that Dei Sechan had two sons and one daughter, but he did not mention Ce. See Shiji 史集, vol. 1a, p. 264
262 One min contained one thousand copper coins.
263 YS 118:2915. XYS 114:521.
264 XYS 114:521.
265 YS 118:2915-23.
267 YS 118:2918.
Dei Sechen’s third son Ce was granted a title of “Battalion Commander” by Chinggis Khan. His son Harhasun 哈思孫 made contributions in the campaign against the Jin and was conferred an assumed name *battur* (warrior). In 1267, (the fourth year of Shizu) the grandson of Harhasun, Duluor 都羅兒, was conferred the title of Grand Master for Splendid Happiness (*Guanglu Dafu* 光祿大夫). He was awarded a silver medal and granted a title of Duke of the state of Yi 畿國公.  

The son of Anchen, Wochen 卻陳, was granted the title of Brigade Commander (*Wanhu* 萬戸) in 1238, and married Princess Yesu-Buhua 也速不花, the daughter of Tolui.

When Wochen died, his younger brother Nachen 納陳 inherited the title of Brigade Commander in 1238 and married Princess Xuezhigan 薛只千, the granddaughter of Khubilai Khan. Nachen played a role in the campaign in Sichuan 四川 under the command of Möngke Khan. In 1261 (the second year of the Zhongtong era) he led his sons Hahai 哈海, Tuohuan 脫歡, and Woluochen 古羅陳, together with other princes, to launch a punitive campaign against Khubilai’s younger brother Arigh Böke. His troops defeated the troops of Barharhu, a general of Arigh Böke, and pursued them to Boluoketu 李羅克禿. In this battle they killed more than ten thousand troops of Arigh Böke.  

When Nachen died, his son Woluochen inherited the title of Brigade Commander and married Princess Wanze 完澤. After princess Wanze died, he remarried Princess Nangjiazhen 楊加真, the daughter of Khubilai Khan. Woluochen died in 1278. Since he did not have a son, his younger brother Tiemuer 帖木兒 inherited the title Brigade Commander in 1281 and married his elder

---

268 YS 118: 2918.
269 Brigade was the standard military unit in the Yuan dynasty, theoretically comprising 10,000 soldiers under a Brigade Commander, most commonly the headquarter at the Route (*lu*) level of territorial administration, subordinate to a Circuit (*dao*) command of one of several types. In theory divided into Battalions (*qianhu*) of 1,000 soldiers each.
270 YS 118: 2916.
brother’s widow, Princess Nangjiazhen. In 1287 Naiyan rebels against Khubilai and Tie-
muer led his troops to suppress the rebellion. He was granted the title of “Prince of the prefecture of
Jining” 濟寧郡王. In the year 1282 Princes Hadan-Tulugan 哈丹秃魯干 rebels against
Khubilai, and Tiemuer led his troops, together with other princes, to suppress the rebellion. His
troops killed all the enemies. Khubilai Khan granted him the name Anchardu Noyan 按察兒都那
顏 to praise his contributions.273

When Tiemuer died, his two sons Diao’a-bula 琨阿不剌 and Sangge-bula 桑哥不剌 were still
young. So Manzitai 曼子台, the younger brother of Tiemuer, inherited the title of Brigade
Commander in 1290. Manzitai also married the widow of his elder brother, princess Nangjiazhen.
When Chengzong 成宗 succeeded to the throne, Nangjiazhen was titled “Princess Supreme of the
State of Lu” 魯國大長公主, while Manzitai was titled “Prince of the prefecture of Jining” with a
gold seal. When Manzitai was ordered to lead his troops to suppress the rebel princes Haidu (Qaidu)
海都和 Du’a (Du’a) 都哇. He was very brave and rushed into the enemy’s battle array four times
and threw the enemy into confusion, and thereby defeated them. After princess Nangjiazhen died,
he remarried “Princess of the State of Lu” Nange Bula南哥不剌, who was the daughter of the
crown prince Jin Gim.

Manzitai died when he was fifty-two years old. In the third month of 1307 (the eleventh year of
the Dade 大德 era), Diao’a-Bula 琨阿不剌, the eldest son of Tiemuer, inherited the title of Brigade
Commander and married Sengge Ragi (Xiangge-Laji 祥哥剌吉) who was granted the title of
“Princess Supreme of the State of Lu” in the sixth month of the same year. Diao’a-Bula was granted
a gold seal and the title of “Prince of the State of Lu”. Later during the Tianli 天暦 era (1328-29)

271 Naiyan was the great-great-grandson of Otchijin 幹赤斤, Chinggis Khan’s youngest brother. His fief
was in the east of Mongolia and most parts of Liaodong 遼東. When 1286 the princes Qaidu 海都 and
Du’a 都哇 rebelled in the north-west, Naiyan followed them and rebelled against Khubilai Khan.
See The Successors, pp. 266-69.
Sengge Ragi had six characters “Huiwen yifu zhenshou” added to her title. Wenzong was the son of Wuzong, thereby, Sengge Ragi was called “Imperial Aunt” (Huanggu 皇姑) by Wenzong.274

Diao’a-Bula died in 1310 (the third year of the Zhida 至大 era). His son Alijiashili 阿里嘉室利 inherited the title of Brigade Commander in the same year when he was only eight years old. In the seventh month of the next year he was granted the title “Prince of the State of Lu”. He married princess Duor-Zhiban 杜兒只班, who was titled Princess Suyixianning 肅雍賢寧公主 later during the Zhishun 至順 era.275 Alijiashili died in the first year of Yuantong 元統 (1333).

Sangge-Bula 桑哥不剌 was the younger brother of Diao’a-Bula and the uncle of Alijiashili. He was raised from childhood in Princess Nangjiazhen’s home under the order of Khubilai. Later he inherited four hundred households of his tribe. In Chengzong’s 成宗 reign he received an imperial decree to marry Princess Puna 善納 who was granted the title of “Princess Supreme of Yun’an” 鄭安大長公主 later in the years of the Zhishun era. Sangge-Bula was granted a gold seal and titled “Prince of Yun’an” and commanded a thousand of households. In 1333 he was promoted to Battalion Commander. The next year he was titled “Prince of the State of Lu”. Sangge-Bula died when he was sixty-one years old.276

The men mentioned above were those who had inherited the title of prince and who had married princesses. There were still some men in the Onggirat tribe who married princesses of Yuan but did not inherited a title of prince. Many of the princesses they married are not listed in the Table of Princesses in the Yuanshi. Besides, the records of Yuanshi are very incoherent and in chaotic order. In the following paragraph I attempt to reorder them from one line to another.

272 Hadan-Tulugan was the descendant of Hechiwen 合赤温, the younger brother of Chinggis Khan.
274 See Francis Woodman Cleaves, “The Sino-Mongolian Inscription of 1335”.
Anchen’s younger brother Ce 步 was granted the title of Battalion Commander to command the troops of his own tribe during Chinggis Khan’s reign. Ce’s son Har-Hasun 哈兒哈孫 contributed in the campaign conquering the Jin. He was granted a name Batur. Har-Hasun’s grandson Duluor 都羅兒 was conferred the title of Grand Master for Splendid Happiness in 1267 and was titled “Duke of the State of Yi” with a silver medal.

Anchen’s son Suor-Huodu 唸兒火 都 made contributions in Chinggis Khan’s conquering wars and was granted the nominal title of Assistant Chancellor. He was also granted a title Battalion Commander, and a gold-plated silver medal. His son was called Fuma Aha 附馬阿哈 in the Yuanshi, but the Yuanshi does not state which princess he married. Aha led troops to capture Xuzhou 徐州 city in Möngke Khan’s reign. He was awarded one cube of gold and ten cubes of silver as well as a silver saddle. He inherited his father’s official title, too. Tuolian 脫戀 was also a descendant of Anchen, who was granted the title of Battalion Commander in Khubilai Khan’s reign and was ordered to guard the Kerulen river. In 1287 he took part in the expedition suppressing Naiyan’s rebellion and distinguished himself in action, and thus was granted a name “batur”. When Tuolian died, his son Bengbula 逆不剌 inherited the title of Battalion Commander. When Bengbula died, his son Maizhuhan 賈住罕 inherited the title of Battalion Commander. Maizhuhan married Princess Baidasha 拜答沙. We don’t have much information about her either. When Maizhuhan died, his younger brother Boluo Tiemur 比羅帖木兒 inherited the title of Battalion Commander. In the 1325 he was granted the title of “Prince of Yude” 銳德王 and a gold seal.

---

276 YS does not state whose daughter the princess was and in which year she was titled. Since Zhishun was the title of Wenzong’s 文宗 reign, the XYS assumes that she might be the daughter of Wenzong.
276 YS 118: 2915. XYS 114:521-23.
277 Ke Shaomin in XYS believes that it should be in Ögödei’s (Taizong) reign when Suor-Huodu was granted an assistant Prime-minister because this title had not been set up until the third year of Taizong’s reign. And Suor-Huodu was the youngest son of An Chen, he might be too young to be granted such a title.
278 Fuma 附馬 means imperial-son-in-law in Chinese.
When Boluo Tiemur died, Maizhuhan’s grandson Ashi inherited the title of Battalion Commander.

Chouhan was the descendant of Bige, the second son of Anchen. He married Princess Taihuludu, and was titled “Prince of Anyuan” in the reign of Renzong.

Anchen’s grandson Nahe married Princess Suor-Hahan, the daughter of Ögödei Khan.

Dei Sechen’s second son Huohu’s grandson Buzhier married Prince Wokezhentan.

Dei Sechen’s grandson Tuoluohe married Princess Bulughan, and later remarried Princess Kuokuolun.

3. Yuan Empresses from the Onggirat Tribe

In the Yuan Dynasty, thirteen women of the Bosihuer Onggirat tribe became the principal empresses. Nine women of this tribe were called empresses or titled empresses posthumously. Nineteen men of this tribe married Mongol princesses, and thirteen of them were titled princes.

The Onggirat tribe maintained a very stable marriage relationship with the Chinggisid clan from a very early time. Chinggis Khan’s first wife, Borte, was from this tribe. Two of Chaghatay’s wives, two of the seven wives of Hülegü, one of Möngke’s wives, two of Khubilai’s wives, one of Abaha’s wives, two of Ahmed, Tigoudar’s wives, two of Aluhun’s wives, and two of Khazan’s wives, were all from the Onggirat tribe.

My description of the empresses of the Yuan court who came from the Onggirat tribe is mainly based on the biographies of empresses and imperial concubines, and the biography of Dei Sechen in
the *Yuanshi*, with some modifications according to the *Mengwuer shiji* 蒙兀儿史记, *Menggu yuanliu* 蒙古源流, *Jami’al-Tavarikh* 史集 (Collection of Histories), and *Historie des Mongols* (Duosang Menggushi 多桑蒙古史).

After Chinggis Khan married Börte 李兒帖, eleven Mongol emperors married thirteen Onggirat women. They make up 65% of the seventeen Mongol Khans and emperors from Chinggis Khan to the last emperor of Yuan—Shundi, Toghan-Temür. Of the six emperors who did not marry Onggirat women, two of them were too young when they ascended the throne. One was Tianshun Di 天順帝 (Arigiba /Asu-Jiba 阿速吉八) who was only nine years old when he died and had an very short reign of only one month. The other was Ningzong (Irinjibal /Yilin-Zhiban 錦璘質班) who died at 7 and was on the throne for only forty-three days. The other four emperors who did not marry Onggirat women were Ruizong (Tolui), Taizong (Ögödei), Dingzong (Güyük), and Mingzong (Qoshila). Tolui was actually not an official emperor who acted as a regent to deal with the state affairs for one year. He was titled Ruizong posthumously. Mingzong did not formally ascend the throne in the Grand Capital (Dadu 大都). He was murdered by his younger brother Wenzong.

Therefore there were only two emperors who did not marry Onggirat women: Ögödei and his son Güyük. It is somewhat strange why Ögödei announced the imperial decree that women born to the Onggirat tribe should be selected as Mongol empresses but in fact only he himself and his son did not follow it. It is possible that they actually had wives from the Onggirat tribe but they were not recorded. The records of the wives of Ögödei and Güyük are not complete. They might have been modified by the descendants of Tolui after they took the throne from the line of Ögödei.

Möngke Khan’s Empress Hu [du] Tai 忽[都]台 and empress Yesuer 也速兒 were the daughters of Manggechen 忙哥陳, who was the son of Ce (the third son of Dei Sechen).
Khubilai’s Empress Chabui was the daughter of Anchen. Khubilai’s principal empress Nambui was the daughter of Xiantong 仙童 who was the grandson of Nachen 纳陳 (Anchen’s son). Khubilai’s empress Tegülün (Tiequlun 帖古倫) was the daughter of Tuolian 脫憲 (grandson of Anchen). 279

The Empress of Chengzong (Temür öljeitü), Shiliandali 失憲答里, was the daughter of Woluochen, the son of Nachen.

The principal wife of Darmabala was Daji 答吉 who was the daughter of Hundu-Tiemuer 淵都帖木兒 (Anchen’s grandson). Daji gave birth to Qaishan. When Qaishan ascended the throne in 1307, Daji was titled “Empress Dowager of Zhaoxian yuansheng” 昭獻元聖皇太后. Later in 1310 she was added another title of Honor “Empress Dowager of Tianyi xingsheng” 天儀興聖皇太后. When Aiyuli Balibada (Renzong) ascended the throne, Daji was added twelve characters on her title—“Ciren zhaoyi shouyuan quande taining fuqing” 慈仁昭懿壽元全德泰寧福慶 in 1315. When Yingzong, Shuode Bala, succeeded to the throne in 1320, Daji was titled Supreme Empress Dowager and added four more characters—Huiwen chongyou 徽文崇祐 on her title. Daji was undoubtedly the only woman who received so many characters on her titles.

Wuzong’s Empress Zhenge 真哥 was the daughter of Bengbula 作不剌 (son of Tuolian 脫憲). Wuzong’s another empress Sugeshili速哥失里 was the daughter of Harzhi 哈兒只 (son of Manggechen).

---

279 According to Yuanshi-“Houfei Biao”, Tie Gulun was the Grand Empress 大皇后. But she did not receive any title of honor. She was even not titled posthumously. She did not have a biography in Yuanshi either. Therefore we know very little about her.
Emperor Taiding’s empress Babuhan 八不罕 was the daughter of Woliuchar 干留察兒 (son of Anchen). His other two empresses Bihan 必罕 and Sugedali 速哥答里 were both the daughters of Maizhuhan 答罕 (son of Tuolian), 280 Prince of Yan 元王.

Mingzong’s empress Buyanhudu 不顏忽都 was the daughter of Boluo Tiemuer 伯羅帖木耳.

Wenzong’s empress Budashili 不答失里 was the daughter of Diao’abula 阿不刺 (Diwabula 代瓦 不剌).

There are four empresses from the Onggirat tribe whose fathers are unknown. They are Renzong’s Empress Anashisheli 阿納失舍里 who was the mother of Yingzong. Ningzong’s empress Dalijetemishi 答里也忒迷失; 281 Yuzong’s empress Bolan Yejiechi 伯藍也怯赤, Xianzong’s 显宗 (Ganmala) Empress Puyanqielimishi 普顏怯里迷失.

Besides the Yuan emperors, many Mongol princes’ families maintained long-term marital relationships with Dei Sechao’s clan. Among the four sons of Chinggis Khan, two married women from the Onggirat tribe. Chinggis Khan’s eldest son, Jochi Khan’s two wives were from the Onggirat tribe. One of them was the daughter of Anchen noyan, Öki-fujin Khatun. 282 The second son of Chinggis Khan, Chaghatai’s two principal wives, Yesüliün Khatun and Tögen Khatun, were from the Onggirat tribe. According to Rashid Al-din, they were the daughters of Qata Noyan, the son of Daritai, the brother of the ruler of the Qonqirat. Daritai was the brother of Dei Sechao;

280 The records in Yuanshi including those in “Houfei Zhuan”, “Houfei Biao”, and the Dei Sechen Zhuan” are different about the father of Babuhan. “Houfei Zhuan” and “De Xuechan Zhuan” record that she was the daughter of Woliuchar幹留察兒, but “Houfei Biao” records that she was the daughter of Maizhuhan 答罕, and was the elder sister of empress Bihan 必罕 and empress Sugedali速哥答里. In addition, “Houfei Zhuan” and “De Xuechan Zhuan” all record that Bihan and Sugedali were the Noble Consorts of Emperor Taiding. But “Houfei Biao” records that they were both empresses.

281 Ningzong (Yilinzhiban亦禮質班, the son of Mingzong. Mingzong was murdered with poison by Wenzong and Yantiemur 燕鐵木兒) was only seven year old when he ascended the throne under the manipulation of the prime minister Yantiemur and the empress of Wenzong, Budashili 不答失里. in the tenth month of the third year of Zhishun 至順 (1332), and died forty-three days later. I don’t think he really got married at that time.

282 The Successors, 2:99-107. The first son of Jochi Khan—Orda, “He was born of [Jochi Khan’s] chief wife, Sorghan by name, of the Qonqirat people.” The second son of Jochi Khan—Batu, “He was born of Öki-fujin Khatun, the daughter of Alchi Noyan, of the Qonqirat people.”
therefore Rashid mentions that Yesüülün Khatun was the cousin of Börte, the principal wife of Chinggis Khan.²⁸³

A Japanese scholar Uno Nobuhiro 宇野伸浩 has studied the sister marriage exchanges between Chinggisid clan and the Dei Sechen’s clan of the Onggirat tribe. He claims that Jochi’s marriage was significant.²⁸⁴ Chinggis Khan had tried to establish an exchange marriage relationship with Ong-Khan’s family of the Kereit tribe. He proposed that his daughter Qojin 誠真 Beki marry Tusaqa, son of Senggün, and that Jochi marry Senggün’s younger sister Cha’ur. ²⁸⁵ This proposal was not accepted by Ong-Khan. However, this sister marriage exchange relationship was successfully established between Jochi and Anchen’s son Chigu 赤古. Jochi married Chigu’s sister Öki-fujin, and Chigu married Jochi’s younger sister Tumanlun秃滿倫. Chinggis Khan selected Jochi to establish this marriage relationship with the Onggirat people indicating that he did not discriminate against Jochi because of his possible Merkit blood. On the contrary, he might have truly intended to establish Jochi as his successor.

Jochi’s edest son Orda-Quli married three Onggirat women as his chief wives. “One of them being Jüke Khatun of the Qongqirat people, another Tobaqana, also of Qonqirat, and another—, likewise of the Qonqirat, whose father’s name was Öge Khan; [Orda] married her after her father’s death.”²⁸⁶

²⁸³ The Successors, 3:135. “Chaghatai had many wives, but the most important of them were two. The first, Yesüülün Khatun, who was the mother of all his chief sons, was the daughter of Qata Noyan, the son of Daritai, the brother of the ruler of the Qonqirat. Börte Fujin, the chief wife of Chinggis-Khan, and Yesüülün Khatun, were cousins. The second was Tögen Khatun, the sister of the aforesaid Yesüülün Khatun, whom he married after Yesüülün’s death.”
²⁸⁴ Uno Nobuhiro 宇野伸浩, “Hungjilabu yu Chengjisihan xi tonghun guanxi de bianqian. 宏吉剌部与成吉思汗系通婚关系的變遷”, (trans from Toyoshi kenkyu 東洋史研究, vol. 52, No. 3.)
²⁸⁶ The Successors, 2:100.
TABLE 3
The empresses and imperial concubines of Mongol Yuan from the Onggirat tribe

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>TITLE</th>
<th>HUSBAND</th>
<th>FATHER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bortiel/Börte</td>
<td>Guan xian yi sheng</td>
<td>Chinggis Khan (Taizu 太祖)</td>
<td>Dei Sechen 脫薛譯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hudutai 忽都台</td>
<td>Zhenjie 貞節</td>
<td>Möngke Khan (Xianzong 懷宗)</td>
<td>Manggechen 曼哥竅 (Dei Sechen's grandson)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yesuer也速兒</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chabi 腊必</td>
<td>Zhao rui shun sheng</td>
<td>Khubilai Khan (Shizu世祖)</td>
<td>Anchen按陳 (Dei Sechen's son)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiegluln 帖古倫</td>
<td></td>
<td>Khubilai Khan</td>
<td>Xiantong 仙童</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shiliandali 失憐答里</td>
<td>Zhenci jingyi 貞恩靜懿</td>
<td>Temür (Oljeitü) Khan (Chengzong成宗)</td>
<td>Woluochen斡羅陳 (Nachen's son)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daji 贳吉</td>
<td>Zhaoxianyuansheng昭獻元聖YitianXingsheng Ciren Zhaoyi houyuan儀天興聖慈仁昭 鈕壽元Quande Taining Fuqing全德泰寧福 廉HuìwenChongyou 徽文崇祐</td>
<td>Tarmabala (Shunzong順宗)</td>
<td>Hundu Tiemuer 渤都帖木兒</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zheng 真哥</td>
<td>Xuanchuixiusheng 宣慈惠聖徽文崇祐</td>
<td>Qaishan (Wuzong武宗)</td>
<td>Bengbula 並不剌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sugeshi 帳哥失里</td>
<td></td>
<td>Qaishan</td>
<td>Harzhi 哈兒只</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Babuhan 八不罕</td>
<td>Yisün Temür (emperor Taiding 定帝)</td>
<td>Woliuchar 烏立察兒</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bihan 必罕</td>
<td>Yisün Temür</td>
<td>Maizhuhan 貓住罕</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sugesdali 速哥答里</td>
<td>Yisün Temür</td>
<td>Maizhuhan 貓住罕</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buyanhudu 不顔忽都</td>
<td>Qoshila (Mingzong明宗)</td>
<td>Boluo Tiemuer 杜羅帖木兒</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Budashili 不答失里</td>
<td>Zantian kaisheng renshou huiyi xuanzhao huangtaihou 贊天開聖仁壽徽懿宣昭 皇太后</td>
<td>Tuq Temür (Wenzong文宗)</td>
<td>Diwabula 督阿不剌</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

According to Rashid Al-din, Yesuer (Yesiider) was taken by Arigh Böke's first son Yobuqur under the order of Khubilai Khan. See The Successors, 7:311.

There is no record of the honorary title of Budashili in the "Hou-fei-biao", but it appears in the basic annals of Shundi 順帝. "On [the cyclical day] Jimao 乙卯 [25th day] of the tenth moon of the second year of Yuanzong 元宗 [22 November 1334] [the emperor] presented a jade seal and a 'jade' patent and offered the Empress Dowager the honorary title Zantian kaisheng renshou huiyi xuanzhao huangtaihou."

---

287 According to Rashid Al-din, Yesuer (Yesiider) was taken by Arigh Böke's first son Yobuqur under the order of Khubilai Khan. See The Successors, 7:311.

288 There is no record of the honorary title of Budashili in the "Hou-fei-biao", but it appears in the basic annals of Shundi 順帝. "On [the cyclical day] Jimao 乙卯 [25th day] of the tenth moon of the second year of Yuanzong 元宗 [22 November 1334] [the emperor] presented a jade seal and a 'jade' patent and offered the Empress Dowager the honorary title Zantian kaisheng renshou huiyi xuanzhao huangtaihou."
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anashisheli</th>
<th>Zhuangyicisheng</th>
<th>Ayurbarvada</th>
<th>?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>阿纳失合里</td>
<td>茅鋅慈聖</td>
<td>(Renzong 仁宗)</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daliyetemishi</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yilianzhiban 錫班質班 (Ningzong 宁宗)</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bolanyeqiechi</td>
<td>Huiren yusheng</td>
<td>Zhen Jin/Jin-Gim 真金</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>伯藍也怯赤</td>
<td>徵仁裕聖</td>
<td>(Yuzong 裕宗, Khubilai’s son)</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puyanqelimishi</td>
<td>Xuanyi huisheng</td>
<td>Ganmala</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>普顏怯里迷失</td>
<td>宣懿徵聖</td>
<td>(Xianzong 順宗)</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sorghan 鎮弟</td>
<td></td>
<td>Jochi 衙赤</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>鎮兒敷</td>
<td></td>
<td>(eldest son of Chinggis Khan)</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Öki-fujin</td>
<td>Khatun</td>
<td>Jochi</td>
<td>Anchen 賢誠</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>萬乞兀真</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yesülün 也速兩</td>
<td>Khatun</td>
<td>Chaghatai (second son of Chinggis Khan)</td>
<td>Qata 合答</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(sister of Yesülün)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(Daritai’s son)</td>
<td>(Daritai was the brother of Dei Sechan)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jüke /Jöge 主客</td>
<td>Khatun</td>
<td>Orda 鞂魯朵</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(eldest son of Jochi)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobaqana</td>
<td></td>
<td>Orda</td>
<td>Oge Khan 鞂格汗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>脫巴合納</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>? (levirate, inherited from Jochi Khan)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Orda (first son of Orda)</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hujan 元貴</td>
<td>Sartaqtai 撒兒塔壹</td>
<td></td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(first son of Orda)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neidiken 捏的斤</td>
<td>Quli 急里</td>
<td></td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(second son of Orda)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qutui 忽推</td>
<td>Khatun</td>
<td>Hülegü 旭烈兀</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(sister of Hujan)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(seventh son of Orda, grandson of Jochi)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toquluqan</td>
<td>Qonichi 火訶赤</td>
<td></td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>脫忽魯罕</td>
<td>(Orda’s first son Sartaqtai’s first son)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chingtüm 錫土木</td>
<td>Qonichi</td>
<td></td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ilgen 亦勒堅</td>
<td>Bayan 伯顔</td>
<td>Temüge 牠木格</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Qonichi’s first son)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altaju 按塔出</td>
<td>Bayan</td>
<td>Dödei Baha Tur 杜歹拔都儿</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kökejin 閔開真</td>
<td>Temür-Buqa 帖木兒不花</td>
<td>Yisün noyan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(first son of Hülegü)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bayalun 巴牙倫</td>
<td>Temür-Buqa</td>
<td></td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(sister of Hülegü’s wife Qutui Khatun)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Öljei 完澤</td>
<td>Khatun</td>
<td>Mängke-Temur</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(second son of Toqoqan, grandson of Batu)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>TITLE</th>
<th>HUSBAND</th>
<th>FATHER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tūkūnche 蹃昆怯</td>
<td>Princess of State of Yun</td>
<td>Chigu 赤古</td>
<td>Chinggis Khan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Anchen's son, Prince of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pacifying Pu 宰逺郡王)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suorhahan 唆兒哈罕</td>
<td>Princess Supreme of State of</td>
<td>Wochen 欽陳</td>
<td>(Tolui (Ruizong)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lu 魯國大長公主</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yesubuhua 也速不花</td>
<td>Princess Supreme of State of</td>
<td>Saljidai 撒勒只臺</td>
<td>Qutuqtu 忽都</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lu 魯國大長公主</td>
<td></td>
<td>(third son of Tolui)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kelmish-aqa 克勒迷失阿合</td>
<td>Princess of State of Lu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>魯國大長公主</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xuezhigan 薯只干</td>
<td>Grand and Senior Prince of</td>
<td>Nachen/Nachin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>State of Lu</td>
<td>納陳</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Toqa 脫脱 (fifth son of Toqoqan, ruler of Goden Horde from 1291 to 1312)

Töde-Möngke (third son of Toqoqan)

Kurju 閔出 (son of Ögödei)

Tolui 拖雷

Jurikeh 骑里客 (son of Tolui)

Arigh Böke 阿里不哥 (younger brother of Khubilai Khan)

Arigh Böke

*This empress was taken by Yobuqur, the first son of Arigh Böke. See Rashid Al-din, The Successors, 7: 312.*

*According to Rashid Aldin, the husband of Tumanlun was Dairkai 帶兒海. see Shiji 史集, vol. 1a:267.*

3. This empress was taken by Yobuqur, the first son of Arigh Böke. See Rashid Al-din, The Successors, 7: 312.
5. The Successors, 7:311.
6. According to Rashid Aldin, the husband of Tumanlun was Dairkai 帶兒海. see Shiji 史集, vol. 1a:267.
7. The Successors, 4:160. This woman made great contributions to the friendly relationship between Toluo's line and Jochi's line. “And because she is of the family of Tolui Khan, she is always on friendly terms with the Lord of Islam and constantly sends ambassadors to inform them of the events that occur in that country. And through her efforts, the foundations of friendship have been strengthened between Toqa and the other descendants of Jochi Khan and the Descendants of Tolui Khan, and she has put a stop to strife and enmity between them.”
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Spouse</th>
<th>Father/Relation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wanzhe 完泽</td>
<td>Princess Supreme of State of Lu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nangjiazhen 焦加真</td>
<td>Princess Supreme of State of Lu</td>
<td>(1) Woluochen 鮑羅陳</td>
<td>Khubilai Khan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nangebula 南哥不剌</td>
<td>Princess Supreme of State of Lu</td>
<td>(2) Tiemur 嚴木兒 (3) Manzitai 滿子台</td>
<td>Zhen Jin/Jin Gim 真金 (Yuzong 裕宗)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xianggelaji 祥哥刺吉</td>
<td>Princess Supreme of State of Lu</td>
<td>Diao'abula 端阿不剌 (Tiemuer’s son)</td>
<td>Dalamabala 安剌麻八剌, Yuzong’s son (順宗 Shunzong)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puna 晋納</td>
<td>Princess Supreme of State of Lu</td>
<td>Sanggebula 桑哥不剌 (Diao’abula’s younger brother)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baidasha 拜答沙</td>
<td>Princess Supreme 大長公主</td>
<td>Maizuhan 盪住罕 (Bengbula’s son)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taifuludu 台忽魯都</td>
<td>Chouhan 沐罕 (Anchen’s son Bige’s 必哥 grandson)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wokezhen 韓可真</td>
<td>Buzhier 不只兒 (Huohu’s grandson)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulughan 不魯罕</td>
<td>Tuoluoh 魚羅禾 (Dei Sechen’s descendant)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuokuolun 閻閻倫</td>
<td>Tuoluoh</td>
<td>Ayurbavada (Renzong 仁宗)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wongji Bahu 宛吉八忽</td>
<td>Huaidu 怀都 (Chigu's grandson)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caizhen 煤真</td>
<td>Aibuge 愛不哥 (Huaidu’s younger brother)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manggetai 忙哥台</td>
<td>Princess Supreme of State of Yun</td>
<td>Changji 昌吉 (Chi Gu’s great grandson, Prince of Pacifying Pu Prefecture 寧護郡王)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanggebula 桑哥不剌</td>
<td>Princess Supreme of State of Yuan</td>
<td>Tuotuomur 陀突木兒</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Marriage List I**

**Mongol Royal Family ➔ Onggirat Tribe**
1. Chinggis Khan ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... (1)Bortie
2. Möngke Khan ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... (2)Hudutai (3)Yesuer

---

298 Qian Daxin 錢大昕, Shiji zhai yangxin lu 十駕齋養心錄, Vol. 15, “Zhaocheng xian lingzhi bei” 朝城縣令旨碑. “There is a Tablet of Decrees. The third decree says, ‘Princess Baihu 百户 and Fuma Hui Du’s 言馬合都郎 includes the Zhaoxian city.’ According to "Shihuo zhi" 言貨志, Princess of the State of Yun was granted thirty thousand households in Puzhou 濮州 in the Bingshen 丙申 year. Zhaocheng belonged to Puzhou, therefore it was also her land. In addition, "Gongzhu Biao" states that “Princess Wengji Bahu married Huaidu 怀都, the grandson of Chiku 赤宿. Huaidu is actually Huidu on the tablet, their sounds are similar.” In the records of the first, sixth, and seventh month of 1267 (the fourth year of Zhongtong 仲統) in the basic annals of Khubilai Khan in the Yuanshi (YS 5:90-93), we find a woman’s name “Princess Baihu 拜忽”. “[Khubilai Khan] granted a seal to Princess Baihu.” “Granted Princess Baihu’s tribe money of one thousand ding.” “Baihu 拜忽”, “Bahu 八忽”, and “Baihu 百户” should refer to the same princess, and “Wengji” should be her tribal name “Wengjila 懋吉剌” (Onggirat).
4. Temür Ölejeitü ............................................. (7) Shiliandali
5. Dalambala .................................................. (8) Daji
6. Khaishan ...................................................... (9) Zheng (10) Sugeshili
7. Emperor Taiding ........................................... (11) Babuhan (12) Bihan (13) Sugedali
8. Khoshila ...................................................... (14) Buyanhudu
9. Tuq Temür ................................................... (15) Budashili
10. Ayurbarvada ............................................... (16) Anashisheli
11. Irinjibal .................................................... (17) Aliytemishi
12. Jin Gim ..................................................... (18) Bolanyeqiechi
13. Ganmala .................................................... (19) Puyanqielimishi
14. Jochi ......................................................... (20) Sorghan (21) Oki-fujin
15. Chaghatai ................................................... (22) Yesülün (23) Tögen
17. Sartaqtai ................................................... (26) Hujan
18. Quli .......................................................... (27) Neidiken
19. Hülegü ........................................................ (28) Qutui
20. Qonichi ....................................................... (29) Toquluqan (30) Chingtüm
22. Temür-Buqa ............................................... (33) Kökejin (34) Bayalun
23. Möngke-Temür ......................................... (35) Öljei
24. Toqta ......................................................... (36) Tükkünche
25. Töde-Möngke ............................................. (37) Arijachi
26. Kurju ......................................................... (38) Qtaqash
27. Tolui ........................................................ (39) Nayan
28. Arigh Böke ............................................... (41) Qutlu (42) Eshitei

Marriage List II

Onggurat Tribe ➔ Mongol Royal Family
1. Chigu ....................................................... (1) Tumanlun
2. Nahe ........................................................ (2) Suurhahan
3. Wochen ..................................................... (3) Yesubuhua
4. Saljidadai .................................................. (4) Kelmish-aqa
5. Nachen ...................................................... (5) Xuezhigan
6. Wołuochun ............................................... (6) Wanze (7) Nangjiazhen
7. Tiemuer .................................................... (8) Nangjiazhen
8. Manzitai ................................................... (9) Nangjiazhen (10) Nangebula
9. Diaoabula .................................................. (11) Xiangugelaji
10. Alijiashili ............................................... (12) Duorzibi
11. Sangebula ............................................... (13) Puna
12. Maizhuhudan ........................................... (14) Baidasha
13. Chouhan .................................................. (15) Taihulu
15. Tuoluohede ............................................... (17) Bulughan (18) Kuokuolun
16. Huaidu ..................................................... (19) Wengjibahu
4. Discussion

The imperial marriage constitution of the Mongol Yuan was a type of hereditary system, in which an emperor’s consorts would be selected mainly from one or two Mongol noble’s tribes. Also, these Mongol nobles’ tribes maintained that for generations, the noble families should be celebrated for their special relationship with the royal family. The most renowned “Imperial In-law” (waiqi 外戚) that maintained the most stable relationship with the royal family was the Onggirat tribe.

The Onggirat tribe and the other tribes who maintained a stable marriage relationship with the Yuan royal family all had their fiefs (touxia 投下).

There were two different administrative systems and land systems in the Yuan dynasty. One was run by the central government (zhongshu sheng 中書省), province (xingsheng 行省), prefecture (jun 郡), and county (xian 县). The officials within this system were appointed by the central government. The tax revenue in this system belonged to the central government. The other system was the touxia that was granted to the princes, imperial sons-in-law and meritorious ministers. The officials in a touxia were first appointed by its owner, then they were reported to the central government to be conferred titles. Most of the tax revenue and products of the touxia belonged to its owner.

According to the Yuanshi, the Onggirat tribe had a vast territory of fiefs. As early as in Chinggis Khan’s reign, Anchen and his brothers had been granted a huge piece of land in Mongolia. Later in this territory several circuits (lu 路) were established, including Yingchang Lu
(應昌路)，Quanning Lu (全寧路) which belonged to the “Prince of Lu 魯王”. The Onggirat tribe also had many other manors in other areas. For example, the three prefectures—Ji 淄, Yan 兖 and Shan 孫 in Jining Lu (濟寧路) commanded sixteen counties; the six counties in Ting Zhou Lu (汀州路); seven counties in Yong Ping Lu (永平路). These areas cover parts of three present provinces of Shandong, Jiangsu and Jiangxi.

In general situation, it was very easy for such a powerful tribe to control the imperial court and threaten the existence of the dynasty. However, although some empress dowagers in the Yuan dynasty had been regents, there were not any imperial maternal uncles who had controlled imperial political affairs. The following reasons may account for this fact. First of all, every duke or prince in the Yuan dynasty had his own manor in which he could function however he pleased. The manor was actually like his mini kingdom; he had enough things to deal with. Which, to a certain extent, diverted his attention from the throne. Secondly, and it may be the most important factor, the Yuan imperial court maintained the military democratic tradition throughout the dynasty. The princes and nobles were always invited to discuss and determine important state political or military affairs. In addition, the “Four Keshig System” of Yuan also contributed to safeguard this tradition. The “Four keshigs” was a safeguard army established by Chinggis Khan in unifying Mongolia. It was composed of skilled and strong men who were the sons of Brigade Commander, Battalion Commander (qianhu 千戶), Company Commander (baihu 百戶), Squad Commander (shihu 十戶) as well as common people (baishenren 白身人). According to the military service laws of the Yuan, every noble (noyan 那顏) must send his son to serve the Mongol Khan. Therefore the key members of the keshig were sons of the Mongol nobles. The main duties of the keshig were to safeguard the imperial court and to be in charge of the various affairs in the imperial court.²⁹⁹ At the same time it

²⁹⁹ For a detailed discussion of the important role of Keshig in the Yuan politics, see Li Zhi'an 李治安, “Qiexue yu Yuandai chaozheng” 佔薛與元代朝政, Zhongguoshi yanjiu 中国史研究, 4 (1990): 110-117.
was also a fresh and combat-worthy troop directly under the command of the emperor. Chinggis Khan appointed his four meritorious generals—Borhu 博憂, Borshu 博爾術, Muqali 木華黎 and Chila’un 赤老溫 as the Chiefs of keshig army who Safeguarded the imperial court. This was an important institution in the Yuan dynasty. Because the sons of nobles or meritorious generals worked around the emperors, the influences of waiqi’s and eunuchs were effectively controlled. Tu Ji presents his comments at the end of the biography of Botu:

Amongst the Mongol emperor’s relatives on the side of his wives or mother, Onggirat tribe was the most illustrious, but this tribe had a separate manor governed by it. It took part in the expeditions or campaigns with its own people. Except collecting the land rents and tax, it had not been granted any imperial authority. Therefore it did not have the disaster that the whole people in the tribe were put to death as such happened in the Han and Tang dynasties. This strategy was actually adopted by the Qing dynasty. De Sechen had foresight in choosing a son-in-law; he helped Temüjin to become an emperor. Therefore he was the benefactor of Chinggis Khan. Moreover his descendants had made great contributions. Although they did not have the astuteness and resourcefulness of the people in the Wei and Huo families in the Han dynasty, they cannot be seen only as the fathers or brothers of the empresses and Noble Consorts. Botu was intelligent for he associated with Chinggis Khan on his own initiative and went through thick and thin together with him. It was especially important in the initial stage. 300

THE IKIRES TRIBE 亦乞列思部

1. Historical Background

According to Rashid Al-din, the Ikires tribe was one of the four sub-tribes of the Onggirat tribe. 301 It was one of the important tribes that maintained stable marriage relationships with the royal family in the Yuan dynasty.

The marriage relationship between the Ikires tribe and the Mongolian royal house started from the marriage between Botu 奚蛻 and Tiemulun 帖木倫, the younger sister of Chinggis Khan.

Botu’s father, Niequn 栗坤, was subordinate to the Taiyichiwuti tribe (Taijigot) 泰亦赤烏惕.

300 MWESJ 23:10.
Later Botu decided to submit to Chinggis Khan because he admired his fame. According to the biography of Botu in the *Yuanshi*, he excelled in horsemanship and marksmanship. Chinggis Khan had once sent Shuer-chedan as an envoy to the Argun River. When Botu knew that he was sent by Chinggis Khan, he invited him to his home and entertained him cordially, and gave him a good fine horse because Shuer-chedan’s horse was tired. When Shuer-chedan returned to Chinggis Khan and told him about this, Chinggis was pleased. He decided to establish a marriage relationship with Botu, allowing Botu to marry his younger sister Tiemulun. Soon Botu’s tribe sent Yebujiandai as an envoy to discuss the marriage and to pay respect to Chinggis Khan, “We have heard about your might and virtue. It seems that the clouds are opened and the sun is seen, the spring wind comes and the ice melts. Therefore we are very happy.” When Chinggis Khan asked how many horses Botu had, Yebujiandai said that Botu had thirty horses and he was willing to present half of them as the betrothal gift. But Chinggis Khan said, “To decide a marriage only based on the amount of property is almost like the businessmen’s conduct. The ancients said, ‘It’s really difficult to do things with one heart’. I am just going to take the whole lands under heaven, you people of Ikires tribe can follow Botu to pledge loyalty to me. What is the use of property?” Chinggis Khan’s words clearly revealed the political significance of this marriage. At the beginning of his great undertaking he really needed military talents like Botu. Therefore he was willing to initiate this marriage so that he could take advantage of the strength of the Ikires tribe for his own ends. Thus, Botu married Tiemulun as Chinggis Khan’s uxorilocal son-in-law. In this way, he had to live with Chinggis Khan in order to serve him.

---

301 *Shiji* 史集, vol. 1a, p. 267.
302 Yebu Jiandai 老堅歹 is not a person’s name according to XYS 新元史. It means “old man” in Mongolian language.
303 YS 118:2921
304 YCMS, p. 54, “A man of the Ikires tribe, Buu 不面, was a son-in-law here, then he also came.” Thereby we know that Botu was actually an uxorilocal son-in-law of Chinggis Khan.
When Chinggis Khan broke off with Jamuka, Botu was with Chinggis Khan, while the other people in his tribe were still under the control of the Taiyichiwuti tribe. Jamuka and Taiyichiwuti plotted to attack Chinggis Khan with thirty thousand soldiers. It so happened that Botu had just sent an envoy to see his parents. His father Niequn immediately asked the envoy to report the plot to Chinggis Khan. It gave Chinggis Khan enough time to prepare for the plotted attack. Tiemulun died early, so Chinggis Khan let Botu marry his daughter Huochenbieji 火臣别吉 as a second wife. Botu was one of the meritorious generals who had drunk the water in the Banzhuni River 斑朱尼河 with Chinggis Khan. He participated in many campaigns when Chinggis Khan was unifying the Mongol plateau. Later, the Ikires tribe was forced to submit to Chinggis Khan. Chinggis Khan appointed Botu as a Battalion Commander (Qianhu) to command the two thousand households of the Ikires tribe.

Botu led the two thousand households of his tribe to take part in the campaign against the Jin under the command of Muqali. The number of people he governed rapidly increased to more than ten thousand households. In the seventh month of 1227, several days after Chinggis Khan’s death, Botu died of sickness in the campaign against Xi Xia. Ögödei Khan ordered that a state funeral be held for him and his graveyard become a forbidden area for three years. Botu was posthumously titled as the Prince-of-state-of-Chang 昌王 and many other honorable titles in the reign of Chengzong.

Rashid Al-din only offers a brief account about the Ikires tribe in Jāmi‘ al-Tawarikh. In “Beginning of the History of Mōngke Qa’an” in The Successors, Rashid mentions a man named

305 YS 1:11. See the basic annals of Taizu. “(When they withdraw) to Banzhuni River 斑朱尼河, the river water was muddy. The emperor (Chinggis Khan) drank it and swore before his troops. A man of the Ikires tribe, Botu, was just defeated by the Huolula tribe 火鲁剌部, met with the emperor and swore to make an alliance.”
308 YS 118:2922.
Derekei Küregen of the Ikires people, who was a son-in-law of Chinggis Khan. In a quriltai in 1251 he suggested that Möngke, who was the newly elected Khan, launch a campaign to conquer the Southern Song, saying, “The kingdom of Nangiyas is so near and they are hostile to us. How can we neglect and delay [our attack]?” 309 In the footnote Boyle writes, “Or Dayirkei. He was a Küregen (‘imperial son-in-law’), being the husband of Chinggis Khan’s daughter Tümelün.” Boyle made a mistake by stating that Derekei was the husband of Tümelün. As we mentioned above, Tümelün’s husband was Botu. When Tümelün died, Botu married Huochen Beki, the daughter of Chinggis Khan. Botu died in 1227. Thus he could not possibly have been able to attend the quriltai election of Möngke Khan in 1251. I believe that Derekei was the son of Botu, whose name in Chinese is Tieligan 帖里干. In the Table of Princesses his name was mistakenly written as Tiejiangan 帖堅干. 310

Derekei married two princesses. One was Yiqiliesi; the other was Chalun. Both of them were titled Princess Supreme-of-State of Chang 昌國大長公主. 311

According to Rashid Al-din, Derekei was the chief of Brigade Commander (Tümen), and played an important role in Mongol military campaigns and political struggles. He was one of the military generals in the campaign that conquered the Southern Song. He actively involved himself in the campaigns for the throne between Khubilai and Arigh Böke, and commanded his troops to fight the army of Arigh Böke. 312 However, in the biography of Botu, his activities were omitted. Moreover, the Yuanshi recorded that Suorha was the chief of Tümen and he participated in the campaign against the Southern Song. However, there are still some unexplained historical areas that need to be clarified. I will leave them for future investigations.

310 The annotators of Yuanshi believe that his name should be Tieligan 帖里干, which appears in other Chinese sources including Tongzhi tiaoge 過制條格. See YS 109:2764.
311 YS 109:2758.
312 The Successors, 6:252, 256.
2. Marriages between Ikires Tribe and Chinggisid Clan

According to the Yuanshi, Botu's son Suorha 鎖兒哈 was promoted to the position of chief of Brigade Commander during Ögödei's reign. He took part in the campaign against Shu 脣 and captured Jiayou 嘉州 of the Southern Song and died on the returning way. Suorha married Princess Antu 安竹, the daughter of Kuochu 閏出 (son of Ögödei), and Princess Buhaihan 不海罕 (father unknown). \(^{313}\) The daughter of Princess Antu became the Empress of Möngke Khan. \(^{314}\)

Zhawu-Erchen 札兀兒臣, the son of Suorha, took part in the campaign against the Puxian-Wannu 蒲鮮萬奴 under the command of Güyük during Ögödei's reign, and he rendered meritorious service. Ögödei Khan allowed him to marry Princess Yesunzhen 也孫真, the daughter of Prince Anchidai 安赤歹. Zhawu-Erchen was posthumously titled “The Prince-of-the-State-of-Chang.”\(^{315}\)

Zhawu-Erchen had two sons. The eldest son was Yuelietai 月列台 who married Princess Hadahan 哈荼罕, the daughter of Prince Saiyinzhubu 賽因主卜. \(^{316}\) She gave birth to a son named Tuobietai 脫別台. Yuelietai took part in the campaign to pacify the rebel prince Naiyan 乃顏 in the northwest and distinguished himself in action.

The younger son of Zhawu-Erchen was Hulian 忽憐, who married Princess Boyaluhan 伯牙魯罕, the daughter of Möngke Khan. During Khubilai Khan's reign, Hulian played an important role in suppressing the rebel princes. Following a great victory over the rebellious prince,

\(^{313}\) The two princesses probably married Suorha one after the other when one died, but we do not know who was the second wife.

\(^{314}\) YS 118: 2922.

\(^{315}\) YS 118: 2922.

\(^{316}\) Saiyinzhubu is not listed in the “Tables of Princes” 諸王表 of Yuanshi (108: 2735-49). We do not know which emperor's son he was. Hadahan was not recorded in the “Table of Princesses” 公主表 either.
Khubilai let Hulian marry Princess Bulanxi 不蘭奚，the granddaughter of Möngke Khan, as a reward. After the southern Song was conquered, Hulian was granted the district of Guangzhou 广州 as his fief. Hulian was posthumously titled Prince-of-the-State-of-Chang.

Ashi 阿失, the son of Hulian, served Chengzong （r. 1295-1307). In 1301, Ashi participated in the campaign to suppress the rebellious princes in the northwest under the command of the Prince of Jin 昭王 Kammala (Chengzong’s younger brother) and Qaishan (Chengzong’s nephew). One day, in a battle, Ashi wounded the rebellious prince Du’a and killed many enemies. To commend his great deeds, Chengzong granted him a suit of pear clothes, and let him marry princess Yilihaiya 益里海涯, the daughter of Chengzong. Yilihaiya gave birth to two daughters. The eldest one was Sugebala 迟哥八剌, who later became the principal empress of Yingzong. The other was Yilianzhenbala 亦倫真八剌, who later became the principal empress of Emperor Taiding. Ashi also married princess Maidi 買的, the name of her father is unknown. After Qaishan succeeded to the throne, Ashi was ordered to inherit the title of Brigade Commander, and was granted a gold seal and titled “Prince of the State of Chang”. In addition, he was permitted to set up his princely mansion and government system.

Ashi had seven sons. The eldest son Balashili 八剌失里, inherited the title of Prince of Chang. After Balashili died, his son Shalanduoer 沙藍朵兒 inherited the title.

In addition, Hulian’s cousin Buhua 不花 married Khubilai’s daughter, Princess Wuluzhen 兀魯真. Hulian’s brother Suolangha 鎮郎哈 married Princess Nuwulun 奴兀倫, the daughter of

---

317 It might be that Bulanxi married Hulian as a second wife when Boyaluhan died. But the Yuanshi does not state clearly if Boyaluhan had died when Hulian married Bulanxi. Therefore it is also possible that Hulian had two princesses as his wives at the same time. “The emperor (Khubilai) highly commended him and again ordered him to marry Princess Bulanxi.” (YS 118:2922)
318 Zhang Shiguan 張士觀, “Fuma Changwang shide bei” 附馬昌王世德碑. (In YWL 元文類 25: 300-302) But according to Yuanshi-“Houfei Zhuan”, Yilianzhenbala was not the principal empress. Her name is recorded in the “Houfei Biao”, but she does not have a biography.
319 Zhang Shiguan, “Fuma Changwang shide bei”.
Khubilai's son, Manggela 完者刺, Prince of Anxi 安西王. The daughter of Nuwulun became the empress of Wuzong who gave birth to Mingzong.

"Funa Changwang shide bei" 附馬昌王世德碑 makes the following remarks, "[The men in this family] were titled princes and married princesses for generations. Their privilege was no less than that of the Yuan 蒙 family and Deng 邓 family in the Han dynasty. But their celebrity and contributions were greater than that of the Yuan and Deng."320

TABLE 5 The Empresses of Yuan from the Ikires Tribe

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>TITLE</th>
<th>HUSBAND</th>
<th>FATHER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hutuheitai</td>
<td></td>
<td>Möngke (Xianzong惠宗)</td>
<td>Suorha鎮兒哈 (Botu’s son) 321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Quuqtai)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shou Tong</td>
<td>Renxianzhangsheng</td>
<td>Khaishan (Wuzong武宗)</td>
<td>Suolangha鎮郎哈 (Hulian’s younger brother)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Mingzong’s mother]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Su gebala</td>
<td>Zhuangjingyisheng</td>
<td>Shidebala (Yingzong英宗)</td>
<td>Ashi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>辛哥八刺</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yilianzhenbala</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yisün Temür (Emperor Taiding</td>
<td>Ashi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>亦撰真八刺</td>
<td></td>
<td>蒙定帝)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 6 Princesses of Yuan Court Married into Ikires Tribe

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>TITLE</th>
<th>HUSBAND</th>
<th>FATHER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tiemulun</td>
<td>Princess Supreme-of-State of Chang 昌國大長公主</td>
<td>Botu</td>
<td>Yesugai (Liezu) 遁孫 (烈祖)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>帖木倫</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huochenbieji</td>
<td>Princess Supreme-of-State of Chang 昌國大長公主</td>
<td>Botu</td>
<td>Chinggis Khan (Taizu大祖)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>火臣別吉</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yiqiliesi</td>
<td>Princess Supreme-of-State of Chang 昌國大長公主</td>
<td>Tieligan/Tiejiangan</td>
<td>Chinggis Khan (Taizu大祖)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>亦乞列思</td>
<td></td>
<td>帖里千/帖堅千</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cha Lun</td>
<td>Princess Supreme-of-State of Chang 昌國大長公主</td>
<td>Tieligan/Tiejiangan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>茶倫</td>
<td></td>
<td>帖里千/帖堅千</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

320 YWL, juan 25:302.
321 According to the Yuanshi, Suorha married Ögödei’s great-granddaughter, Princess Antu 安兎. Their daughter was the empress of Möngke Khan. Yuanshi does not mention the princess’s name. Rashid Al-din says that her name was Hutuheitai. Her father was Uuladai (also Botu’s son). See The Successors, 6: 197.
322 Yuanshi-“Gongzhu Biao” does not record her name. She is called “Feizi Yiqlie Shi” 妃子亦乞烈氏. Mao Yuesheng 马玉生 offers her name in Yuanshi houfei gongzhu zhuan bu 元史后妃公主傳補. But he presents two names—“Shoutong” 壽童 and “Shouzhang” 壽章. See Yuanshi houfei gongzhu zhuan bu Bu, P.19. Tu Ji believes that her name was 壽童, See MWESJ 19:14.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antu 唐toFixed(1:2)</th>
<th>Princess Supreme-of-State of Chang</th>
<th>Suorha 聖兒哈 (Botu’s son, Prince of Chang)</th>
<th>Kuochu 老出 (蘇赤) (Taizong’s son)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Buhaihan 不海罕</td>
<td></td>
<td>Suerha</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yesunzhen 也孫真</td>
<td>Princess Supreme-of-State of Chang</td>
<td>Zhahuerchen 札忽兒臣 (Suorha’s son, Prince of Chang)</td>
<td>Anchitali安赤台 (阿列赤歹) (?son of Hechiwen, Prince of Ji’nan 濟南王)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hadahan 哈答罕</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yuelietai 月列台 (Zhahuerchen’s elder son)</td>
<td>Saiyinzhubu 蒙固主卜 (?Güdei’s son)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boyaluhun 伯牙魯罕 (伯雅倫)</td>
<td>Grand and Senior-of-State of Chang</td>
<td>Hulian 怒憒 (Zhahuerchen’s younger son, Prince of Chang)</td>
<td>Môngke Khan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulanxi 不蘭奚 (Xianzong’s granddaughter)</td>
<td>Grand and Senior-of-State of Chang</td>
<td>Hulian</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yilihaixia 益里海匝 (mother of the empresses of Yingzong and Emperor Tai ding)</td>
<td>Grand and Senior-of-State of Chang</td>
<td>Ashi 阿失 (Hulian’s son, Prince of Chang)</td>
<td>Temür Öljetti (Chenzong 成宗)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maidi 媳的 (Xianzong’s great granddaughter)</td>
<td>Princess Supreme-of-State of Chang</td>
<td>Ashi 阿失</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wuluzhen 呉魯真 (吾魯真)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Buhua 不花 (Hulian’s younger cousin, Tiemugan 希木干 ‘s son)</td>
<td>Khubilai Khan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nuwulan奴兀論 (mother of Wuzong’s Empress of Renxian Zhangsheng who was Mingzong’s mother)</td>
<td>Suolangha 鎮郎哈 (Buhua’s younger brother)</td>
<td>Suoduge 嚇都哥 (Buhua’s younger brother, Prince of Ning Chang 宁昌郡王)</td>
<td>Manggela忙哥剌 (Renzong’s son, Prince of Anxi 安西王)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luluhan 魯魯罕</td>
<td></td>
<td>Suoduge</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lulun 魯倫</td>
<td></td>
<td>Suoduge</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puyankelimesi 普顥可里美思</td>
<td></td>
<td>Bulianjidai 不漢吉歹 (Suoduge’s son, Prince of Ning Chang 宁昌郡王)</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yanheya 煙黑牙</td>
<td>Princess Supreme-of-State of Chang</td>
<td>Balashili 八剌失里 (Prince of Chang)</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yueiu 月魯</td>
<td>Princess Supreme-of-State of Chang</td>
<td>Shalanduor 沙蘭朵兒</td>
<td>Khoshila (Mingzong 明宗)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

323 Anchitali安赤台 was probably the son of Hechiwen合赤温, the elder brother of Chinggis Khan. See YS 107:2710-1, 108:2744.
Marriage List III

*Mongol Royal Family → Ikires Tribe*

1. Möngke Khan ............................................. (1) Hutuheitai
2. Khaishan Khan ............................................. (2) Shoutong
3. Shidebala ............................................. (3) Sugebala
4. Yisün Temür ............................................. (4) Yilianzhenbala.

Marriage List IV

*Ikires Tribe → Mongol Royal Family*

1. Botu ................................................ (1) Tiemulun, (2) Huochenbieji
2. Tiejiangan ............................................. (3) Yiqiliesi, (4) Chalun.
3. Suorha ................................................ (5) Antu, (6) Buhaihan
4. Zhaohuerchen ......................................... (7) Yesunzhen
5. Yuelietai ............................................. (8) Hadahan
6. Hulian ................................................ (9) Boyaluhun (10) Bulanxi
7. Ashi ................................................ (11) Yilihaiya (12) Maidu
8. Buhua ................................................ (13) Wuluzhen
9. Suolangha ............................................. (14) Nuwulun
10. Suoduge ............................................... (15) Luluhan (16) Lulu
11. Bulianjida ............................................. (17) Puyankelimeisi
12. Balashili ............................................... (18) Yanheya
13. Shalanduor ........................................... (19) Yuelu
CHAPTER FIVE

"Two-way Marriages": Marriages between The Mongolian Royal Family and the Oirat tribe

1. HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

The Mongolian tribes in the thirteenth-century could generally be divided into two different categories in terms of their socio-economic patterns. One of them was the nomadic people category to which belonged the Mongol, Tartar, Merkit, Kereit, and Naiman. The other category was called by the Mongols, the “people in the forest” (lin zhong baixing 林中百姓). They lived in the forests and led a life of hunting and fishing.\(^3\) The Oirat tribe was one of the more powerful tribes of the “people in the forest”. They lived at the head of the Deleger River 德勒格爾河 and the Yenisei River.\(^3\) They “had a large population, and were divided into many sub-tribes, each of these had a specific name.”\(^3\)

During a certain period, the Oirat tribe was antagonistic to Chinggis Khan when he tried to unify the Mongol steppes. In 1201 the chief of the Oirat tribe, Qudugha Beki, together with other nine tribal chiefs, elected Jamuka as Gür-khan.\(^3\) They organized allied forces to attack Chinggis

---

\(^3\) Bai Cuiqin 白翠琴 has conducted a thorough study on the intermarriages between Chinggisid clan and the nobles of the Oirat tribe. Some parts of this chapter are derived from her studies. For details see “Woyila guizu yu Chengjisihanxi lianxin kaoshu”. In Minzu yanjiu. 1 (1984): 46-59.

\(^3\) For a detailed account of the two different economic patterns, see B. Y. Wladimirtzov, Menggu shehui zhidu shi 蒙古社會制度史, tr., Zhang Xingtang 張興唐, Wu Zhankun 呉占坤, Zhonghua Wenhua Chuban Shiye Weiyuanhui, (1957): 1-7.


\(^3\) Shiji 史記, vol. 1a:193.

\(^3\) I.e. “Ruler of all”. The Secret History, ch. IV, p. 68. Fn. 29.
Khan and Ong-Khan’s troops. The Oirat people led by Qudugha Beki were the vanguards of the united army. The battle occurred at the place called Köyitien. According to The Secret History, Khudugha Beki and the Buyiruq Khan of the Nairman state had the ability to summon wind and rain, but after they performed their magic arts, the wind and rain surprisingly attacked their own army. Suddenly it became dark all round, and the battlefield became very muddy, and the united army of Jmuka was consequently defeated. In 1204, Khudugha Beki formed another alliance with the Naiman people against Chinggis Khan, but again they were defeated.

In 1207, after having conquered many tribes including the Tartar, Merkit, Kereit, and Naiman, Chinggis Khan sent his elite troops (you shou jun), commanded by his eldest son Jochi, to conquer the “people in the forest”. Surprisingly, Khudugha Beki surrendered without resistance. He probably realized that his tribe alone was unable to resist the powerful troops of Chinggis Khan. Therefore he chose to surrender, and moreover, he guided Jochi’s troops to the north where Jochi forced seven other sub-tribes of Oirat to surrender. Chinggis Khan was very pleased by the performance of Qudugha Beki whose submission set an example for other tribes to follow. As a result, the casualty of the Mongol troops was greatly reduced. As a reward for his contribution, Chinggis Khan decided to marry his own daughter and his granddaughter (Jochi’s daughter) to the two sons of Khudugha Beki. After that, the marriage relationship between Chinggis Khan’s family and the Oirat nobles was formally established. In 1217 when Chinggis Khan conquered the Tumad tribe, he granted the concubine of the chief of Tumad tribe to Khudugha Beki.

---

329 The Secret History, ch. IV, p. 69.
330 YS 1: 12-13. See the basic annals of Taizu.
addition, Chinggis Khan gave great honor and power to the Oirat nobles. He granted a title of "four thousand households" (si qian hu 四千户) to the nobles of the Oirat tribe.

The successors of Chinggis Khan also paid great attention to their relationship with the Oirat tribe. In addition to rewarding them with high-ranking official titles, they also took women from the Oirat tribe and married their daughters to the nobles of this tribe. In his discussion of the reason why the princes took wives from the Oirat tribe, Juvaini writes:

The Oirat tribe are one of the best known of the Mongol tribes, and to that tribe belong most of the maternal uncles of the children and grand-children of Chingiz-Khan, the reason being that at the time of his rise to power the Oirat came forward to support and assist him and vied with one another in their alacrity to tender allegiance, and in recognition of their services an edict was issued concerning that tribe to the effect that the daughters of their emirs should be married to the descendants of Chinggis-Khan; and he likewise bestowed upon the chief of that tribe a daughter of his own called Checheken Beki.\(^{334}\)

Oirat women were well known for their beauty. Therefore the Mongol Khans and nobles frequently selected girls from this tribe.\(^{335}\)

Chinggis Khan's original purpose was apparently to use marriage as a means to form a military alliance with the Oirat tribe. He was successful in this regard. The Oirat nobles, however, also

---

\(^{334}\) *World Conqueror*, Part Two, XXX, pp. 505-6.

\(^{335}\) According to Rashid Al-din, Ögödei Khan had done a very ridiculous thing to the Oirat tribe. "A rumor once sprang up amongst the Mongol tribe of Oirat that in accordance with a decree the daughters of that tribe were to be affianced to a certain group of people. In fear they affianced most of their daughters to husbands within the tribe, and some they actually delivered up to them. News of this reached Qu'an's ear, and he investigated the matter. It being just as had been reported, orders were given to gather all the girls of that tribe over seven years of age and to take back all who had been given that year to their husbands. Four thousand girls were thus assembled, he ordered those who were daughters of emirs to be separated from the rest and made a yasa that dl who were present should have intercourse with them. Two of the girls expired. As for the rest, he drew them up in two rows. Those who were worthy of the ordo he dispatched to the harem, some he gave to the cheetah-keepers and falconers, and some to the various attendants at Court; others again he sent to the brothel and the hostel for ambassadors. As for those that still remained, he ordered all present, whether Mongols or Muslims, to carry them off whilst their brothers, husbands, and kinsmen looked on not daring to breathe." *The Successors*, 1: 93-4. Juvaini recorded exactly the same event in *The History of the World-Conqueror*, part one, XXXII, pp. 233-4. Their records were confirmed by Chinese source. It happened in 1237. "At the Dingyou day 丁酉 of the sixth month of the ninth year [of Ögödei Khan’s reign] (1237), a rumor sprang up among the left-wing tribes that the girls of the common people were to be collected. The emperor was angry and therefore really collected [the girls] and grant them to his subordinates." YS 2:35.
realized the inevitable rise and invincible power of Chinggis Khan. Thus they were also eager to take advantage of this relationship to raise their own political position and to gain economic interests in the Mongol Empire. Therefore, this kind of marriage relationship, like the other Mongol imperial marriages in the twelfth and thirteen centuries, was both militarily and politically significant. The military and political considerations had prompted Chinggis Khan and his descendants to establish and maintain marriage relationships with the Oirat tribe.

2. MONGOL PRINCESSES MARRIED INTO THE OIRAT TRIBE

Many nobles of the Oirat tribe married Mongol princesses, and vice versa, many Oirat women married Mongol princes. This was a bilateral marriage relationship. The records of these marriages in the Yuanshi are however very incomplete. The “Tables of Princesses” in the Yuanshi records only six Mongol princesses who were married into the Oirat tribe. Yet, there are scattered records found in Chinese, Mongolian, and Persian source materials. We can piece together pieces of information found in these languages in order to draw a complete possible picture of this marriage relationship.

(1) Princess Checheyigen 扯扯亦千\(^{336}\) married Törölchi 脫劣勒赤 (or Inalchi 亦納勒赤)

Princess Checheyigan was the second daughter of Chinggis Khan. Törölchi was the eldest son of Khudugha Beki. The identity of the person to whom Princess Checheyigen married is controversial. There are two different versions. One is found in The Secret History, according to which, Checheyigen was married to Inalchi, the second son of Khudugha Beki: “(Chinggis Khan) going to meet Khudugha Beki of the Oirat, saying, ‘He is come, aforetime submitting himself and
leading [hither] his ten thousand Oirat,' he favored [him] and gave Chechegen unto his son, unto Inalchi. He gave Holuiqan, daughter of Jochi, unto Törölchi, elder brother of Inalchi. This very clear record was adopted by many scholars in Yuan studies, such as Qian Daxin, Wei Yuan, Hong Jun, and He Shaomin. However, it would have been more reasonable if Chinggis Khan had married his own daughter to the elder son of Khudugha Beki. But this record is not compatible with the record in Yuan studies.

The other record is found in Rashid Al-din’s book. In two places in this book he records that Princess Checheyigen was married to Törölchi. This has been confirmed by Yuan Shi-“Table of Princesses”. Under the Yan’an Gongzhu Wei, it says: “Princess Kuokuogan married Küregen Tuo (Yihe)(Luan) chi. Tu Ji changed “Kuokuogan” to “Checheyijian”, and the Tuoluanchi in the Yuan Shi is Torolchi. In addition, Juvaini mentions the princes, noyan, and imperial sons-in-law who followed Hülegü on the westward expedition in 1252-3, “from Checheken Beki, Buqa-Temür with an army of Oirat tribesmen.” Buqa-Temür was the son of Törölchi.

According to Rashid Al-din, Checheyigen and Törölchi had three sons and two or four daughters. The three sons were Buqa-Temür, Burtua, and Pars-buqa. There are two different records about the number of Törölchi’s daughters in Rashid Al-din’s book. One tells us that he had

---

336 There are various transliterations of her name: Checheyigen/Secheyigen Aghai/Chichigen 扯扯亦堅 / 閻固千.
338 Shiji, vol. 1a: 194. “Chenggis Khan married his own daughter Jijakan to this gurgan Turalji.”; vol. 1b, p. 88: “[Chinggis Khan’s] second daughter Jijakan was married to gurgan Turalji of the son of Khudugha Beki, the chief of the Oirat tribe.”
339 YS 109:2762.
340 Tu Ji says, “Originally it is Kuokuogan. It’s not a correct transliteration. Besides, Cheche means flower and Kuokuo means green in Mongolian language, since their meanings are different, and pronunciations are not similar to each other, it must be a mistake in Yuan Shi.” See MWESJ 151:7.
341 World Conqueror, Part three, VI, p. 608.
342 Shiji, vol. 1a:194.
two daughters, El-Chiqmish Khatun, who was the senior wife of Arigh Böko, and Orqina (Wuluhunai 元魯忽乃 in Yuanshi). She married Qara-Hülegü, the grandson of Chaghatay, and ruled the Chaghatay’s state after her husband died. The version contends that Buqa-Temür had four sisters. They were Kubak Khatun, who was the first wife of Hülegü; Orqina (Aurgneh) Khatun, who was the wife of Qara-Hülegü; Huchu Khatun, who married Tuohan, the second son of Batu (Jochi’s son); and Öljei Khatun, who was he wife of Hülegü. Rashid Al-din believed that the latter was correct.

(2) Princess Holuiqan (Huolu) 火魯 married Inalchi 亦納勒赤

The other transliterations of Holuiqan are Huolu, Huolei, and Qului-aikaji. They refer to the same person, the daughter of Jochi and the sister of Batu. The Secret History reveals that she married Törölchi, the younger brother of Inalchi. The record of the Table of Princesses in Yuanshi reads, “Princess Huolu married Hada 哈答 Küregen.” Hada was believed to be Törölchi in both the Xin Yuanshi and the Yuanshi Xin Bian. However, Tu Ji claims that this person should be Hedai 合歹 küregen, a general of Chinggis Khan. But according to Rashid Al-din, “The story of the above Inalchi, the other son of Khudugha Beki is as follows: Batu married his sister Qului-aikaji to him. She bore a son named Auldu, who had two sons named Niktai and Aqu-Temür. They were in the ulus of Qunji (the great grandson of Batu), commanding an army of four thousand for Zhalayir.” The Table of Yearly Grants (“Shihuo Zhi-Sui Ci” 食貨志- 壽 賜 ) of Yuanshi has records of the yearly grants of Princess Huolei 火露. In 1236 (the eighth year of Taizong), 9,796

---

343 Shiji, vol. 1a:194.
344 World-Conqueror, p. 274.
346 MWESJ 151: 7.
households were granted to the Prefecture of Yan’an under her name. In 1319 (the sixth year of Yanyou) she actually governed 1809 families, which supplied her with 722 jin of silk annually.\(^{348}\)

(3) Princess Tuotuohui 脫脱灰 married Tumandar 秃滿答兒

In the Table of Princesses in the *Yuanshi*, under the name of Princess Yan’an 延安 it reads, “Princess Tuotuohui, the granddaughter of Shizu (Khubilai), married Tumandar fuma.” However, the identity of Tumandar is not clear. The biography of Anbo 暗伯 in the *Yuanshi* records the story of a person named Tumiandar秃滿答兒. In 1287 (the twenty-fourth year of the Zhihyuan era) when Naiyan 乃顏 rebelled against Khubilai, Tumiandar followed the rebellion of Prince Halu 哈魯 and was later killed. “And prince Halu and fuma Tumiandar rebelled. Anbo comanded his troops to fight them at the place named Keliusu Shibatu. He stabbed Tumiandar and killed him.”\(^{349}\)

In the Table of the Princesses in the *Yuanshi*, there is only one person named Tumandar—an imperial son-in-law. Bai Cuiqin assumes that they were probably the same person.\(^{350}\)

In the Table of Princesses in the *Yuanshi*, under the name of “All the other Princesses” we find a record “Princess Supreme Tuotuohui 脫脱灰 was the granddaughter of Shizu.” Since they were all the granddaughters of Khubilai, and their pronunciations are identical although the Chinese characters are different, it is highly possible that they were the same person.

Tu Ji 夫寄 believes that Tuotuo Hui 脫脱灰 and Tuotuohui 妥妥灰 was the same person.\(^{351}\)

The basic annals of Shundi of the *Yuanshi* records that in 1334 (the second year of Yuantong), “(Shundi) granted the title of Princess of Yingshou 英壽 to the imperial aunt Tuotuohui 妥妥灰.”\(^{352}\) Shundi was the grandson of Qaishan (Wuzong), and his aunt should be the daughter of

\(^{348}\) YS 95:2427. See “Shihuo zhi-sui ci 食貨志-歲賜”.

\(^{349}\) YS 133: 3237.


\(^{351}\) MWESJ 151:7.

\(^{352}\) YS 38:820.
Qaishan instead of Khubilai. But if Tumantar and Tumiandar was the same person, then Tuotuohui
should not be Tuotuohui 奄奄灰. She should be the daughter of Khubilai.

(4) Princess Yixiji 一悉基 married Balituo 八里托

Their names cannot be found in either the Tables of princes or the Table of Princesses of
Yuanshi, but they appeared in the inscription on a tablet known as “Shijiayuan bei” 释迦院碑
discovered by the archeologists of People’s Republic of Mongolia in 1953. The inscription was
written in both Mongolian and Chinese. It was a prayer and a congratulation on the birthday of
Möngke Khan by imperial son-in-law Balituo and princess Yixiji in the year of 1257. 353

Bai Cuiqin has found that in Yuanshi there is someone named Balitu 八里土. The
pronunciation is very similar to Balituo. “In the spring of the seventh year dingsi (Möngke’s reign,
1257), Möngke went to Hulanyerji. He ordered all the princes to dispatch troops to conquer the
Song.” “In the winter, the emperor passed the south of the desert and arrived at Yulongzhan 玉龍
梭. Khubilai, Balitu, Chumuhar, Yulondashi, Xilieji, and Princess Tuomiekan came to meet him,
and they had a big banquet. Then everybody was sent to his own army.” 354 However, Tu Ji believes
that the name Balitu in this document should be the eldest son of Möngke Khan, whose name was
Bantu 班秃. 355

Fortunately, Rashid Al-din provides us with important clues about the family background of
Balituo in Jami‘ al-Tawarikh. “Chinggis Khan had married a girl in his clan to this Burtua, her
name and seniority are not clear, [therefore] Burtua became the emperor’s son-in-law.” 356 The
pronunciations of Burtua and Balituo are similar, and they lived during the same period, therefore

353 Hu Sizhen 胡斯振, Bai Cuiqin 白翠琴, “1257 nian Shijiayuan bei kaoshi 1257 年释迦院碑考释”,
354 YS 3:50.
355 MWESJ 6:10. See the basic annals of Möngke Khan.
Bai Cuiqin maintains that Balituo was very likely the grandson of Khudugha Beki. And Yixiji must have been the woman from Chinggis Khan’s clan.357 According to Rashid, Burtua was known as being weak in personality. He had two sons, Auluq and Hin. They were all officials in the reign of Khubilai Khan.358

(5) Princess Ile-Temūr (Yantiemur) 燕帖木兒 married Pars buqa 巴儿思不花

Ile-Temür Yantiemur was the daughter of Tolui and Lingqun 領昆 Khatun. She married Parsbuqa, the third son of Törölchi.359 According to Rashid Al-din, “when Lingqun Khatun died, she left a daughter named Ile-Temür who married Pars-buqa Küregen”.360

(6) A princess (name unknown) married Biklamish (Bielimishi) 别里迷失

This princess’ name was omitted in the “Table of Princesses” in the Yuanshi. It merely indicates that a certain princess was married to the imperial son-in-law Bielimishi.361 Biklamish was the great-grandson of Khudugha Beki, the son of Parsbuqa. Rashid Al-din points out that Parsbuqa had two sons. One was called Shirap; the other was called Biklamish. They all served Khubilai Khan at his palace as his attendants.362

(7) A princess (name unknown) married Shirap

This princess’ name was left blank in the “Table of Princesses” in the Yuanshi. She was married to the imperial son-in-law Shalan 沙蘭.” Shalan, according to Bai Cuiqin, was Shirap who

361 YS 109:2762.
362 Shiji, 1a, p. 195.
was mentioned in Rashid Al-din’s book. He was the son of Parsbuqa, the brother of Biklamish. He worked in the Yuan palace.

(8) The Princess of Yan’an 延安 married the Prince of Yan’an Yebugan 也不干

“Yan’an” was obviously the title representing the name of the fief. There was no record about the origin of this princess. The “Tables of Princesses” in the Yuanshi tell us that Princess of Yan’an married Prince of Yan’an Yebugan. Yebugan was a noble of the Oirat tribe, who, according to Bai Cuiqin, was probably the descendant of Princess Holuiqan (Huolu) 和鲁 and Inalchi 亦納勒赤 since he inherited the fief and the title of Prince of Yan’an. There is a record in the basic annals of Ningzong’s reign in Yuanshi that in 1332 (the eighth month of the third year of Zhishun 至順), “[The emperor] granted Huantehachi 敖突哈赤, the son of the imperial son-in-law Yebugan, with gold, silver, and clothes in different amounts.”

(9) Numugan married Junan

According to Rashid Al-din, Numugan was the daughter of Arigh Böke and Hutuheita Khatun, and Junan was the eldest son of Buqa-Temür, the son of Törölchi.

(10) Emegen married Toq-Temür

According to Rashid Al-din, Emegen was the daughter of Melik-Temür, the second son of Arigh Böke; Toq-Temür was the grandson of Pars-buqa and the great-grandson of Törölchi.

---

364 YS 109:2762.
365 YS 37:810.
366 Shiji, vol. 1a:194, vol II, p. 366. “She (Hutuheita Khatun) lives in the yurt of Sorghaghtani-Beki, he (Arigh Böke) and she gave birth to a daughter named Qamty who has not been married. The other daughter was named Numugan. She was married to Chuban käregen.” Junan and Chuban were probably the same person.
367 The Successors. 7:313.
(11) A princess married Tanggis (Tengjisi 騰吉思)

This princess was the daughter of Güyük Khan. Her name was not recorded in the Yuanshi. Tanggis Kuregen was the chief of the Oirat tribe. According to Rashid Al-din, “Among the güragan commanders who are related to the chief of the Oirat tribe, Qutuqa Beki, one was the Tanggiz güragan to whom Güyük Khan gave a daughter, and he served as a son-in-law. When Güyük Khan died and Möngke Khan became ruler, Güyük Khan’s family and some officers plotted a mutiny, but he had the officers executed. Tanggiz güragan was also accused, and he was so beaten that the flesh fell from his thighs. After that, the girl who was his wife asked for his life to be spared, and he was spared for her sake.”

(12). Todogach married Tanggis

Todogach was the fourth daughter of Hülegü Khan. According to Rashid Al-din, she was initially married to Tanggis. After Tanggis died, she remarried his son Sulamish. Later she remarried Chechak, the son of Sulamish. However, the Jami‘ al-Tawarikh reads: “Hülegü Khan’s daughter Todogach, who was married to Tanggis Kuregen, is at this time married to his grandson Chechak kuregen, and they have had children.” There is a discrepancy in the records of Jami‘ al-Tawarikh. It is hard to imagine that a woman could marry her great grandson and bear several sons to him. Bai Cuiqin also doubts this levirate marriage for the age span of four generations was simply too great.

---

(13) Mankku-lukan married Jaqir

Mankku-lukan was the third daughter of Hulegü Khan. Jaqir was the son of Buqa-Temür, and the grandson of Törölchi. He and his son Tarqai were both the Battalion Commanders (qianhu zhang) of the Oirat tribe. In 1253 his father Buqa-Temür commanded an Oirat troop to conquer Persia under the command of Hulegü. His two aunts, Öljei Khatun and Guyuk Khatun, married Hulegü. According to Rashid Al-din, Jaqir married Mankku-lukan, the third daughter of Hulegü Khan. But in the accounts of the history of the Oirat tribe, Rashid Al-din offers a different version, saying that the princess was married to Jaqir’s son. “Tarqai married Hulegü Khan’s daughter Mankku-lukan. After she died, he married Mengü-Temür’s daughter Ara-Khutluq.” Since Jaqir was called gurgen (imperial son-in-law), he must have married a princess. It is also probable that this was a levirate marriage and Tarqai married his father’s widow.

(14) Araqutluq married Tarqai

Araqutluq was the daughter of Möngke-Temür and the granddaughter of Hulegü. According to Rashid Al-din, Tarqai first married Mankku-lukan, the daughter of Hulegü, and then he married Araqutluq, the niece of Hulegü. But the biography of Hulegü Khan states that Mankku-lukan married Tarqai’s father. Tarqai was the son-in-law of Mengü-Temür because he married Araqutluq. One possibility was that Tarqai first married his stepmother Mankku-lukan, and then married Araqutluq.

In the reign of Ghazan Khan in Persia, Tarqai led the Oirat troops to guard Bagda. But they rebelled and fled to Syria in 1296. According to D’Ohsson, “When Ghazan Khan’s troop revolted and attempted to enthrone a new Khan, the Oirat army that was guarding Baghdad also rebelled and

---

373 Shij, vol. 1a:196.
ran to Syria. Because their commander of the ten thousand households Tarqai Gürgen joined Bodu and attacked the Qihe tribe, Ghazan decided to kill him, and he ordered Mulai, the newly pointed commander at Diyar-Bieker to command troops to surround Tarqai, and dispatched eighty cavalrymen to arrest the other Oirat high-ranking military officers. However, the Oirat people killed the envoys and the cavalrymen. They then crossed the Efurat River and went westward to Syria for shelter. Mulai commanded his ten thousand troops to pursue the Oirat people, but many of his troops were killed by them. About eighteen thousand households from this tribe ran away." Finally the Oirat troops were defeated and many were killed. “His (Tarqai’s) troops were captured and were distributed.” As refugee and pagans they were rejected by the local people and not allowed to enter any Syrian city, and many of them died. D'Ohsson writes, “Their children were pretty, and the local people liked them, therefore many generals, soldiers, and other people in Syria adopted their sons and married their daughters. As for their solders, they were distributed to Syrian military units. Later they became Muslims and they were no different from other people.”

(15) Two princesses married Nauruz and Lakzi

Nauruz and Lakzi were the sons of Arghun-aqa, who was the emir of the Oirat tribe. He was of a very low class family background. Initially he was a member of keshik in Ögödei Khan’s ordu. Later he was promoted to the high position of Basqaq, governing the whole territory of Iran. “His sons Nauruz and Lakzi married the women of Chinggis Khan’s family.” But the names and origins of these women are unknown.

374 Shiji, vol. 1a:196.
376 Shiji, vol. 1a:196.
3. OIRAT WOMEN MARRIED INTO THE CHINGGISID CLAN

Although the Oirat tribe did not enjoy the special honor given to the Onggirat tribe, still approximately eleven Oirat women married Mongol Khans or princes. The following record discusses these marriages.

1. Oghul Ghaimish married Möngke Khan (or Gûyük Khan?)

The records of Oghul Ghaimish are controversial. Bai Cuiqin’s studies reveals three different views. One is represented by Rashid al-Din. He recorded the existence of two Oghul Ghaimishes. One was the daughter of Khudugha Beki, the chief of the Oirat tribe. She was married to Möngke Khan. The other was from the Merkit tribe. She was the empress of Gûyük. Rashid Al-din informs us that the chief of the Oirat tribe Khudugha Beki had two sons, Inalchi and Törölchi, and a daughter named Agul-quimish, who was married to Möngke Khan. Initially Chinggis Khan intentioned to marry her, but the marriage never occurred.³⁷⁹ Rashid al-Din holds that although she was the sister-in-law of Khubilai Khan and Hülegü Khan, she always called them her sons, while they showed much respect toward her.³⁸⁰ However, in the basic annals of Möngke Khan, Rashid differently states that Möngke Khan also had a principal wife from the Oirat tribe, whose name was Oghul-Qoimish, she was the sister of Öljei Khatun.³⁸¹ This woman was very talented. Initially she was betrothed to Tolui, so she called her husband’s brothers, Khubilai Khan and Hülegü Khan, as

³⁷⁸ Shi ji, vol. 1:198.
³⁸¹ According to Boyle, “Öljei Khatun, one of the wives of Hülegü, was actually Oghul-Qoimish’s grand-niece.” See Khetagurov, p. 119 and The Successors. 6:198, fn.11.
her sons. They all respected her. She did not have sons, but two daughters.\(^{382}\) Although the transliterations of the names are slightly different in these two places in Rashid Al-din’s book, there is no doubt that they refer to the same person. The only difference is that according to the “Tribal Histories” in Jami’al-Tawarikh, Chinggis Khan originally intended to marry her, but eventually she was married to Möngke Khan. According to the basic annals of Möngke Khan, however, she was betrothed to Tolui initially and later married Möngke Khan instead. That was why she called Khubilai and Hülegü her children. In addition, she was not the sister of Öljei Khatun. Rather, she was the aunt of Öljei Khatun. Rashid Al-din also mentioned in the account of the Merkit Tribe, “Agul-quimish Khatun was the first wife of Gûyük Khan. She bore two sons to him, Khuajeh and Naqu.”\(^{383}\)

Another opinion is represented by D’Ohsson’s Mongolian History, Tu Ji’s Mengwuer Shiji and Hong Jun’s Yuanshi Yiwen Zheng Bu. All these historians believed that there was only one woman called Oghul Ghaimish and that she was the daughter of Khudugha Beki of the Oirat tribe, and the empress of Gûyük Khan. D’Ohsson writes, “Oghul Ghaimish was the wife of the highest Status among Gûyük’s wives. She was the daughter of Khudugha Beki, the chief of the Oirat tribe.”\(^{384}\)

Ke Shaomin in his Xin Yuanshi provides a third opinion. He unifies two opinions and contends that there were two different persons named Wowuli-haimishi 幹兀里海迷失 (Oghul Ghaimish) among Gûyük’s empresses. “The empress Qinshu of Dingzong, Mrs. Wowuli, whose given name was Haimishi, and whose courtesy name was San Huanghou (the third empress), acted as an regent in the imperial court for four years, and did not give up power until Xianzong ascended the throne. Two years later she was found guilty of committing imprecation together with the imperial

\(^{382}\) Shiji, vol. II:233. In the YS-Houfei biao, under the name of Xianzong (Möngke Khan), there is no name similar to Oghul Ghaimish. But under the name of Dingzong (Gûyük Khan), there is a record of Oghul Ghaimish (Wowuli-Haimishi).

\(^{383}\) Shiji, vol. 1a:189.
grandson Shiliemen (Shiremün). Shiliemen was banished to Muchituo, and the empress was put to death. In the third year of Zhiyuan (1266), she was posthumously conferred a respectful title and her memorial tablet was placed in the temple of Dingzong. When Dingzong was still a prince, his original wife was called Wowur-heimishi, who was from the Merkit tribe. Her date of death is unknown.” Although Ke Shaomin changed the Chinese characters, the pronunciations are nearly the same and clearly they are of the same person. It is unclear whether Ke had a strong reason for doing this.

*The History of the World Conqueror* provided the reader with details about how Oghul Ghaimish acted as a regent and how she was killed. But it did not tell us of her family background. Neither the “*Houfei zhuan*” nor the “*Houfei biao*” in the *Yuanshi* mentions her family background.

The background of Oghul Ghaimish remains a mystery. If we can trust the scholarship of Rashid Al-din, then there existed two Oghul Ghaimishs. One was the wife of Güyük Khan, and the other was the wife of Möngke Khan. One possibility may lay in that Möngke Khan took the empress of Güyük, Oghul Ghaimish, as his wife. However, considering the relationship between Güyük’s widow Oghul Ghaimish and Möngke, this explanation seems implausible. Oghul Ghaimish protested strongly when Möngke tried to ascend the throne. Therefore, they were clearly enemies. Möngke Khan once condemned her as “viler than a dog” The records in the *Yuanshi* indicate that she was killed by Möngke Khan.

---

385 XYS 104:482-3.
387 *Yuanshi* has a very short biography of about forty Chinese characters for Wowuli-haimishi, in which there are three mistakes, it indicates that the author of *Yuanshi* was very ignorant about this woman.
388 William of Rubruk, *The Journey of William of Rubruk to the Eastern Parts*, 1253-55. (Rockhill, 249-50)
390 YS 3:45. See the basic annals of Möngke Khan.
The clan of Khudugha Beiki maintained a constant marriage relationship with the clan of Tolui. This trend may have started from Oghul Ghaimish. The nephew of Khudugha Beki, Balituo, erected a monument to commemorate the birthday of Möngke Khan, indicating that they had a special relationship.

(2) Ailjiqmish married Arigh Böke

Ailjiqmish was the daughter of Törölchi. According to Rashid Al-din, she was the senior wife of Arigh Böke. She was Tuolei’s favorite wife, but she did not give birth to any children.390

(3) Orqīna (Aurgneh) married Qara-Hülegü (remarried to Alghu)

Orqīna was the daughter of Törölchi and Chinggis Khan’s daughter Checheeyigen. Rashid Al-din states “Orqīna Khatun married Qara-Hülegü, the son of Muatugan, the grandson of Chaghatai. Mubarak-Shak was born by this Orqīna Khatun. Ögödei (? Chaghatai) liked her and called her Orqīna Bieli, which means daughter-in-law. She had managed Chaghatai’s ulus for a long time.”391 According to the History of the World Conqueror, after Chaghatai died, Qara-Hülegü acted as regent. In 1246 Gıyük replaced him with Yesū-Möngke, the fifth son of Chaghatai, with the excuse that a grandson should not ascend the throne while a son was still alive.392 However, Yesū-Möngke later joined Shiremûn to challenge Möngke Khan’s claim for the throne, therefore, when Möngke Khan ascended the throne, he ordered Qara-Hülegü to rid Yesū-Möngke of his power. But Qara-Hülegü died on his way to the Chaghatai ulus. Because his son Mubarak-Shak was still young,

390 Shiji, vol. 1a:194-95. But Rashid Al-din also offers another record that Buqa-Temûr had four sisters. They were Kubak, Aurgneh, Öljei and Kõchü. Among them there was no name of Ailjiqmish.
391 Shiji, vol. 1a:119. Ögödei was obviously a mistake for Chahatei.
Möngke Khan ordered Orqīna to act as regent, and ordered Yesū-Möngke to be put to death. She ruled the Chaghatai ulus for ten years.

In 1260, a struggle for the throne occurred between Arigh Böke and Khubilai. Both of them realized the strategic political-military importance of central Asia and tried to control it. Khubilai sent Abishqa, the eldest son of Būrī, to return to the Chaghatai ulus to marry Orqīna Khatun and to rule the ulus of Chaghatai, in place of Qara-Hülegü. But on his way he was caught by Arigh Böke and later was put to death. At the same time, Arigh Böke appointed Alghu, the son of Baidar, the sixth son of Chaghatai, as ruler of the ulus of Chaghatai. The latter successfully seized the state power from Orqīna Khatun. Orqīna went to Arigh Böke and stayed there for a while. Soon Alghu killed the envoys of Arigh Böke who levied large amounts of cattle and money in his ulus and rebelled against Arigh Böke. In 1262, Arigh Böke dispatched troops to attack him. In Alimali his troops killed many people and seized goods, and therefore lost the support of the local people. Even his own troops ran away from him. Afraid of the sudden attack from Alghu, Arigh Böke sent Orqīna Khatun to Alghu to negotiate peace. Alghu then took Orqīna Khatun as his wife. Alghu died in 1266. Orqīna Khatun, having all the emirs and army under her command, installed her son Mubarak-Shak, the eldest son of Qara-Hülegü, as ruler. Soon after Khubilai Khan sent Paraq, the son of Yesūn-To’a and the nephew of Qara-Hülegü, to the ulus of Chaghatai in order to jointly govern the state. But Barak deposed Mubarak-Shak and became the absolute ruler of the ulus. In 1270 Parak died, and Mubarak-Shak recaptured the throne.

---

394 Būrī was the elder brother of Qara-Hülegü’s.
(4) Kubak married Hülegü Khan

Kubak was the daughter of Törölchi and the sister of Buqa-Temür. According to Rashid Al-din, “Kubak Khatun was Hülegü’s first wife, the mother of Jumqr.” The biography of Hülegü Khan also mentions that Kubak was born by Checheyigen, the daughter of Chinggis Khan.

(5) Öljei (Aulljai) Hülegü (remarried Abaha)

Öljei Khatun was the daughter of Törölchi, the sister of Guyuk. She married Hülegü and gave birth to one son named Mönge-Temür and two daughters named Mankku-lukan and Qimishi. After Hülegü died, Abaqa took her as a wife. When Abaqa died, she initially intended to set up her son Mönge-Temür as Khan. But Mönge-Temür died, and helped Arghun, the son of Abaqa, to become Khan.

(6) Quchu married Toqoqan (Tuqan)

Quchu Khatun was the daughter of Törölchi. She married the second son of Batu. In the account of the history of the Oirat tribe, Rashid Al-din says that Törölchi’s other daughter’s name was unknown. She was married to Tuqan in Batu’s honorable clan and gave birth to Mönge-Temür. However, in the biography of Jochi her name was given, “Third son of Toqoqan—Töde-Mönge. His mother and Mönge-Temür’s was Köchü Khatun, the sister of Öljei Khatun and the daughter of Buqa-Temür of the Oirat people.” Her two sons were the Khans of Qipchaq, who ruled consecutively from 1266 to 1290.

---

(7) Emegen married Melik-Temür

Emegan was the daughter of Pars-buqa. According to Rashid al-Din, she married Melik-Temūr, the second son of Arigh Böke. Among the six sons of Melik-Temūr, four were born by this woman. They were Mingqan, Ajiqī, Yesū-To’a, and Baritai. 401

(8) Nulun married Jumgur (remarried Tekshin)

Nulun was the daughter of Buqa-Temur (son of Törölchi). According to Rashid Al-Din, Nulun Khatun married Hülegü Khan’s second son Jumgur and was his senior wife. Her daughter Urgudaq was married to Shadi, the son of Sunjaq-aqa. 402 According to the biography of Hülegü Khan, after Jumgur died, Nulun remarried Tekshin, the fourth son of Hülegü Khan and gave birth to a girl named Yesūn. 403

(9) Auljatai married Mönge-Temür (remarried Barchi)

Auljatai was the daughter of Buqa-Temür, the nephew of Öljei (Aulja) Khatun, the mother of Mönge-Temür. According to the history of the Oirat tribe and the biography of Hülegü Khan, Auljatai initially married Mönge-Temür, and gave birth to two daughters. After Mönge-Temür died, she was taken by Barchi, the son of Mönge-Temür, and she gave birth to a daughter named Quruqtaï. The latter married Alapu, the son of Samuqur. 404

401 The Successors, 7: p. 313.
403 Shiji, vol III:22-23.
Qutluq and Öljei married Arghun Khan

Qutluq was the daughter of Tanggis *gurgan*. Her mother was the daughter of Güyük Khan. She married Arghun, the fourth Il-Khan of Persia (1284-1291). Öljei was the granddaughter of Tanggis *küregen*, the daughter of Sulamish and Tudakaj Khatun. Öljei married Arghun khan when her aunt, Qutluq, had died.

In summary, there existed sixteen princesses of the Chinggisid clan who married into the Oirat tribe. Among them were the daughters of Chinggis Khan, Jochi Khan, Tolui, Güyük Khan; Hulegü Khan, Arigh Böke, and Kubilai Khan. In total there were eleven women from the Oirat tribe who were married into the Chinggisid clan. The daughter of Khudugh Beki married either Môngke Khan or Güyük Khan. The five daughters of Tööröchi married Arigh Böke, Hulegü, Qara-Hulegü (the grandson of Chaghatai), and Toqqan (the grandson of Jochi). One must states that these statistics are most probably incomplete since they are merely based on current known information. On the other hand, some marriages were not recorded in historical books. Therefore the actual number of marriages should be much higher.

There are some distinct characteristics in the marriages between the Oirat tribe and the Chinggisid clan. One is the marriage of cousinship. For example this occurred when Chechejigen married her daughter to her nephew Hulegü and Öljei Khatun married her daughter to her nephew Jaqir. Under this arrangement, an aunt and a niece became mother-in-law and daughter-in-law, two sisters became sisters-in-law, or they married the same man. This is a typical "consanguineous marriage". The purpose of this type of marriage was obviously established in order to form a closer relationship between the two clans. Another of type marriage is the "levirate marriage".

405 *Shiji*, vol. 1a:196. vol. III:186.
## TABLE 7 Oirat Women married into the Chinggisid clan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Husband</th>
<th>Father-mother</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oghul Ghaimish 鈴兀里海迷失</td>
<td>Mөngke Khan</td>
<td>Khudugha Bеki忽都合别乞 (chief of Oirat tribe)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>? Oghul Ghaimish</td>
<td>? GүүҮк Khan</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aliqmish</td>
<td>Arigh Bөke阿里不哥 (the youngest son of Tului)</td>
<td>Tөrөlчi.托勒勒赤 (eldest son of Khudugha Bеki)or Inalchi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orqina/Aүгнге乞儿吉納 (daughter of Checheyigen)</td>
<td>Qara- Hүегү 合刺旭烈兀 (Son of Muatugan and Grandson of Chaghatal Khan)</td>
<td>Tөrөlчi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kubak 古巴克 (mother of Jumgur)</td>
<td>Hүегү Khan</td>
<td>Tөrөlчi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oljei /Auljai完者 (sister of Kubak, mother of Mөngke-Temүү, remarried Abaha)</td>
<td>Hүегү Khan</td>
<td>Tөrөlчi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khuchu 忽出 (mother of Mөngke-Temүү)</td>
<td>Toqоqan/Tuqan 稀罕 (second son of Batus)</td>
<td>Tөrөlчi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emegen 舖木干</td>
<td>Meilik-Temүү 明理帖木儿 (second son of Arigh Bөke)</td>
<td>Pars-buqa 巴儿恩不花 (third son of Tөrөlчi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nulun 邠倫 (cousin of Jumgur, remarried Tekshin)</td>
<td>Jumgur 出木哈儿 (second son of Hүегү Khan)</td>
<td>Bуqa- Temүү 不花帖木儿 (son of Tөrөlчi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auljatay完者壹 (cousin of Mөngke-Temүү remarried Barchи)</td>
<td>Mөngke-Temүү 蒙哥帖木儿 (son of Hүегү Khan)</td>
<td>Bуqa-Temүү,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khutlq忽都鲁 (Daughter of GүүҮк Khan’s daughter)</td>
<td>Arghun 阿魯浑 (II-Khan of Persia, r.1284-1291)</td>
<td>Tанккы зөөгөн (chief of Oirat tribe)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oljei完者 (granddaughter of Tenggis)</td>
<td>Arghun 阿魯浑</td>
<td>Sulамыш 迪剌迷失</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 8 Princesses of the Chinggisid clan Married into the Oirat tribe

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Princess</th>
<th>Husband</th>
<th>Father</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Checheyigen 杜赤亦干 (second daughter of Chinggis Khan)</td>
<td>Tөrөlчi 脫不勒赤 (Eldest son of Khudugha Bеki) or Inalchi 亦納勒赤 (Second son of Khudugha Bеki)</td>
<td>Chinggis Khan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holuiqan/Huolu 火鲁</td>
<td>Inalchi 亦納勒赤</td>
<td>Jochи 靖赤 (first son of Chinggis Khan)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuotuohui 脫脱灰 (Granddaughter of Khubilai Khan)</td>
<td>Tумandар 秃滿答儿</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yixiiji 一悉喜</td>
<td>? Burtua [Palituo八里拓] (Grandson of Khudugha Bеki)</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

406 *Shi ji*, vol. III:186.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Marriage List V Mongol Royal Family → Oirat tribe</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Möngke Khan ........................................ (1) Oghul Ghaimish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Arigh Böke ......................................... (2) Ailiqmish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Qara-Hülegü ........................................ (3) Orqüina/Aürgneh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Hülegü ................................................ (4) Kubak (5) Öljei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Toqoqan .............................................. (6) Khuchu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Melik-Temür .......................................... (7) Emegen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Jumgur ................................................. (8) Nulun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Möngke-Temüür ........................................ (9) Auljatai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Arghun ................................................ (10) Khutlq (11) Öljei</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Marriage List VI Oirat Tribe → Mongol Royal Family</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Törölochi ............................................ (1) Checheyigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Inalchi ............................................... (2) Holuiqan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Tumandar ............................................. (3) Tuotuohui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Burtua ................................................ (4) Yixiji</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. Pars-buqa............................................................(5) Ile-Temür
6. Biklamish............................................................(6)?
7. Shirap.................................................................(7)?
8. Yebugan.................................................................(8)?
9. Junan...............................................................(9) Numugan
10. Toq-Temür...........................................................(10) Emegen
11. Tanggis..............................................................(11)? (12) Tööögach
12. Jaqir.................................................................(13) Mankku-lukan
13. Tarqai..............................................................(14) Araqutluq
14. Nauruz...............................................................(15)?
15. Lakzi...............................................................(16)?

4. Discussion

As previously mentioned, the marriage relationships between the Chinggisid clan and the Oirat noblemen were motivated by political interests of the Mongol royal family. When Chinggis Khan initiated this relationship by sending his own daughter, Checheyigen, and his granddaughter, Holuiqan, to the Oirat tribe, his purpose was very clear. He was using his own daughters as his political agents to control this tribe. This was revealed by an imperial edict issued to Checheyigen.

The Altan Tobci reads:

Chinggis Khan married Checheyigen Aghai \(^{407}\) to Inalchi of the Oirat tribe. When the wedding was going on, he ordered the nobleman (noyan) Boworchu 李斡儿 to give instructions [to Checheyigen]. Boworrchu said, "Listen, Checheyigen Aghai! Because you are the daughter of your Khan father, you are being sent to govern the Oirat people. You are going to pitch a tent there. You should get up early and go to sleep late! Do not act as a stranger in your mother-in-law's family! Day and night, you should be circumspect all the time. Your words must show your wisdom. You must keep yourself chaste. Leave the things that you have not mastered home, and bring all the things you have mastered with you. You should organize the people of Oirat and control them! \(^{408}\)

By taking advantage of the strength and influence of the Oirat tribe, Chinggis Khan was able to successfully conquer the "people in the forest." The geographic position that the Oirat tribe occupied was very critical to the Mongol Empire. Thus, during the later political struggles, the

\(^{407}\) According Sechin Jagchid, "Aghai" was an honorific title for the girls of noble family in Mongolian society. It also means "baby" in Mongolian language. See Sechin Jagchid, Menggu huangjin shi yizhu (1979): 43.
descendants of Chinggis Khan all tried to win over the Oirat noblemen by marriage relationships to receive support from them. This resulted in the break-up of the Oirat tribe. In the ensuing political struggles of the imperial clan, one part of the Oirat people joined the rebellions of the northwest princes against the Yuan court. However, another part of the Oirat people supported the Yuan court to pacify the rebellions of the northwest princes. Therefore it was always viewed that the Oirat troops fought against each other in campaigns because they belonged to different parties within the internal struggles of the Mongol royal family. According to the basic annals of Khubilai Khan in the Jāmi‘ al-Tawarīkh, in 1261 a decisive battle was fought between Arigh Böke’s army and Khubilai Khan’s army at the Shimultai lake. As a result, Arigh Böke’s army was defeated and many Oirat soldiers were killed by the troops of Khubilai Khan.409 In the biography of Shuchitai in the Yuanshi, the troops of Arigh Böke were called “Oirat troops” during the “battle of Shimultai”. This suggests that the main military strength of Arigh Böke relied on in his rebellion was from the Oirat tribe.410

The Mongol royal family maintained a constant marriage relationship with the Oirat nobles, and granted their descendants official titles and territories. In return they also made great contributions to the Mongol empire. Many of them held important positions in the Mongol court, including Khudugha Beki, Törölchi’s son Burtua (Balituo), Burtua’s son Wuluhei-hexin, Törölchi’s grandsons (Barsbuqa’s sons) Shirap and Biklamish (chn. Bieqilimishi), and Yebugan, Prince of Yan’an. For instance, Biklamish participated in the campaigns led by Boyan conquering the Southern Song and was active in the campaigns against the Mongol princes’ rebellions.

On the other hand, the Oirat nobles were also very active in seeking such political marriage relationships with the Mongol imperial clan. It was an important device to enhance their political

---

408 Sechin Jagchid (Zhaqi-Siqin), Menggu huangjin shi yizhu (1979): p. 44.
409 The Successors, 7: 256.
status and economic interests. Their marriage relationships with the descendants of Chinggis Khan continued even after the destruction of the Yuan dynasty.

For example, when the Mongol Anda Khan launched the westward expedition, he married the Oirat woman Zhongjin who was the daughter of the Oirat noble Qilagute-zheheng. He “followed the example of Chinggis Khan by marrying Holuiqan and Chichigan to Inalchi and Törölchi, making them become Küregens.” Yaomen son Anta married his two daughters Manzhuxili and Songbur to Bokedai and the chancellor Oge, and made them become his Küregens.”

When Tuohuan was unifying the Mongol territories, he married his daughter Nuwen-Dashili to Buda-shili, Prince of Zhongshun, to control the Hami area. Beginning in 1460, when her son Buliege died, Nuwen-Dashili acted as regent for 22 years. The Oirat nobles also maintained a marriage relationship with the descendants of Chaghatai. They tried very hard to establish a marriage relationship with the rulers of the Chijin Mongol.

Another typical example is the Oirat attack on the Ming in the early Ming dynasty, which was called the “Incident of Tumu Port”. In the Tumu battle, two hundred thousand Mongol mounted troops under the command of Esen defeated half-a-million Ming troops. Many scholars have studied the economic motivation for the Oirat invasion of China in 1449. They have shown that the Oirat ruler Esen (Yexian) was concerned about the Chinese mistreatment of his envoys and the inadequate, even worthless, gifts and payments offered him in return for his tribute. However, the basic factor that instigated the war between the Chinese and the Oirats was a proposed marriage.

Several Chinese books, including the Mingchao Jishi Benmo, reports that the Ming ambassadors to Mongolia, without any authorization, assured him that his son could marry a
Chinese princess. In 1449, when Esen sent the marriage ritual presents for the forthcoming marriage, however, the Ming court, totally ignorant of Esen’s discussion with the ambassadors, abruptly rejected the proposed betrothal. Esen was so angry that he gathered his troops for an invasion of China. 413

Morris Rossabi offers a different explanation for Esen’s attack on Ming China. 414 He believes that it is more likely that Esen used a marriage proposal for his own purposes and advantage. As we have seen above, marital alliances were one of his favorite devices and an integral part of his foreign policy. By the late 1430s, he had his older sister marry his superior, the Mongol Khan Toyto-buqa. Thus he buttressed his own position and at the same time gave himself the aura of belonging to the Mongol ruling family. He presented another one of his sisters to Dawadasiri, the prince of Hami. Again he hoped to exert influence on that important oasis on the road from China to Central Asia and the Near East. However, in 1452 an open battle occurred between Esen and Toyto-buqa Khan because the latter did not designate the son born by Esen’s sister as the crown prince. Esen defeated Toyto-buqa and proclaimed himself Great Khan of Yuan. 415 He also twice needed to send punitive expeditions to Hami, so that it would follow his leadership. In 1443 he dispatched envoys to propose a marital alliance with Shazhou and Chijin, two strategic Mongol Guards on China’s northwest border. But these chiefs procrastinated and finally rejected his proposal. At approximately the same time he himself married the daughter of the chief of the Taining Guard, one of the Uriyangqad settlements on China’s northeastern frontier. Thus he sealed an alliance with these tribes, who incidentally served as his spies in China.

In summary, Esen apparently used the marital agreement to attract other states or tribes before attacking them. Taking into account his previous foreign policy, Rossabi states, it seems likely that he wished to form a marital alliance with China. But the Court envoys, or perhaps the interpreters, probably informed him that the Court would never agree. Nevertheless, he dispatched an embassy with gifts for the "impending marriage." 416 If the Court permitted the marriage, not only would Esen's prestige among the peoples of Mongolia and Central Asia had increased, but also he would have exerted influence on the Chinese border areas. If, on the other hand, the Court would have rejected the proposal, he would have had a convenient excuse for an invasion of China. 417

417 Morris Rossabi, "Notes on Esen's Pride and Ming China's Prejudice".
CHAPTER SIX

“One-way Marriage”: Royal Marriages between the Mongol Yuan and Koryŏ (Korea)

The marriage relationship between the Mongol Yuan imperial family and the Koryŏ royal family in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries was unique. It lasted for almost a century, and among the seven Koryŏ kings from Loyal and Stern King (King Ch’ungyŏl 忠烈王) Wang Sim 王世 (1275-1308) to the Respectful and Pitiful King (King Kongmin 恭愍王1352-1374) Wang Ki 王祺, five of them married eight princesses of the Mongol Yuan court. 418 Because of the marriage relationship with the Mongol Yuan imperial family, the Koryŏ court received special treatment from the Mongols which was deemed to be “unique among all the states”419 The original Koryŏ political organizations and institutions were maintained: the Koryŏ kings retained the authority to set up their own governmental structures, to appoint officials, and to exercise laws. Taxes collected were not sent to the Yuan capital but were for the consumption of the Koryŏ government. The Yuan court only assigned some senior officials (Mo. Darughachi) for periods of time to Korea as supervisors. Rashid Al-din states that Korea was a province in name but was actually a separate state in the Yuan dynasty. 420

418 They were King Ch’ungyŏl Wang Sim, the Loyal and Mighty Prince (King Ch’ungsŏn 忠宣王) Wang Wŏn 王原(1309-1313), the Loyal and Decorous Prince (King Ch’ungsug 忠肅王) Wang To 王遂(1314-1330), the Loyal and Compassionate Prince (King Ch’unghye 忠惠王) Wang Chŏn 王禎(1331-1332), and the Respectful and Pitiful Prince Wang Ki 王祺. The Prince of Sim (Sim Wang 沈王) Wang Sung 王嵩 also married a princess of the Yuan court. Although he was not a crown prince, his position was equal to that of the crown prince. Therefore he had the right to marry a Mongol princess.
419 Yao Sui, Mu’an Ji 牧庵集, juan 3, “Gaoli shen wang shi xu”高麗神王詩序. Taiwan, Shangwu Yinsuguan, 1975.
420 The Successors, 7: 282, “Third—the sheng (Chinese sheng省, province) of Goli (Koryŏ 高麗) and , which is a separate kingdom. Their ruler is called yang (Chinese wang 王, prince/king). Qubilai Qa’an gave him his daughter in marriage. His son is one of the Qa’an’s intimates, but he is not yang there.”
This chapter will argue that imperial marriage was employed as a means by both the Mongols and the Koreans to secure their own political and military interests.

1. Husband-Wife Relationships and Their Impact on Yuan-Koryŏ Relations

The Mongol princesses were the de facto representatives of the Yuan court. Therefore the relationship between the Mongol princesses and the Koryŏ kings had a great impact on the relationship between the two courts. If the relationship between husbands and wives was harmonious, or if the Mongol princesses were able to effectively control the Koryŏ kings and the Koryŏ government, and if the Koryŏ kings were willing to accept this kind of control, then the relationship between the Mongol Yuan court and the Koryŏ court tended to be stable and harmonious. Otherwise, if the relationship between a particular Mongol princess and a Koryŏ king worsened, or if the Mongol princesses were unable to control the Koryŏ kings, or if the Koryŏ kings did not respect the Mongol princesses or tried to cast off the control of the Mongol princesses, then the Koryŏ court would lose the trust of the Yuan court. The Yuan court did not hesitate on one occasion to dethrone a Koryŏ king and replace him with a man who was docile and obedient to the Yuan court.

King Ch'ungyǒl 忠烈王 (r. 1275-1308) was the first to marry a Mongol princess. He was loyal and devoted to the Yuan court, and worked very hard to improve relations with the Mongol Yuan. At the same time he grasped every opportunity to fight for the interest of his state and people. Therefore he was trusted by the Yuan court and was loved by the Korean people.
However, the son of King Ch’ungyŏl, Wang Wŏn 王陛下 (later King Ch’ungsŏn 忠宣王), apparently did not follow the example of his father. He was born of the Mongol princess, Khudulu Khaimish, the daughter of Khubilai Khan. The King Ch’ungyŏl abdicated and handed over the crown to him in the first month of 1298 (the 24th year of the reign of King Ch’ungyŏl).\footnote{1} He must have hoped him to form a closer relationship with the Mongols and to better protect the interests of Korea. The Mongol court must have believed that as a man of half Mongolian blood, Wang Wŏn would be loyal and obedient to the Mongol court and easy to control. Neither of them expected that this Koryŏ king would not love the Mongolian princess chosen to be his wife, but he refused to make love with her. The Korean historians truthfully recorded, “It was said that since the King married the Mongolian princess, he did not do his duty well as a husband. But other concubines slept with the King and became pregnant, which aroused jealousy.”\footnote{2} The “arrogant” Mongol princess refused to tolerate such neglect, and her first reaction was to pick quarrels and to stir up trouble for the Koryŏ king. She also sent messengers to the Yuan court, trying to use the Yuan court to compel the Koryŏ king to submit to her control, but she seemed unable to understand that she could not win the love of the Koryŏ king by force.

The Empress Dowager of the Yuan finally sent an envoy to persuade the Koryŏ king to mend his relationship with the princess, but the Koryŏ king was not moved. Because of jealousy mingled with shame, the princess was determined to have revenge and did so by conducting loose sexual relationships with other officials in the Koryŏ court. In the beginning the abdicated Koryŏ king tried to help this couple to improve their relationship, but since all efforts failed, and he knew that the princess had become loose in morals, he decided to appeal to the Yuan court to remarry the princess.

\footnote{1}{KRS, I, 31:642-3. Jin Weixian, ed. Gaoli shi zhong Zhong Han guanxi shiliao huibian, p. 620. When King Ch’ungyŏl abdicated, the Yuan court granted him the title of “King of Pleasure and Longevity” (Yishou Wang 逸壽王 ).}

\footnote{2}{KRS, III, 89:26-27.}
to someone else. It was understandable for him to do so. He must have worried about the behavior of the princess bringing disgrace to his family; and, if the princess were to bear illegitimate children, the Koryo court would face a difficult situation. The risk was that the Koryo throne might be taken by an outsider because the son born of the Mongol princess had the priority to succeed to the Koryo throne. To avoid this awkward situation, the best choice would be getting rid of this princess by remarrying her to another person. In suggesting this, he was also taking a great risk to offend the Yuan court because remarrying the princess meant to reduce her position in the Koryo court, which would not only humiliate the Yuan court, but also greatly damage its marriage strategy. Therefore, although the Yuan court did not receive a formal appeal from the Koryo court, it still decided to depose Wang Won, and restore his father in the eighth month of 1298.

King Chungsón 忠宣王 (r. 1298, 1309-1313) married two Mongol women. One was the Mongol princess Botasirin; the other was Yesujin. Yesujin was not a princess and is called “a Mongol woman” by Korean historians. But she gave birth to a son, therefore she was posthumously entitled “virtuous concubine” (Üibi 處妃). It is not clear when she married King Chungsón, but she died in 1316 in the Yuan court.

The king Chungsug 忠肃王 (r. 1314-1338), Wang To 王倜, married three Mongol princesses. The first Mongol princess he married was Irinjinbala 赤璘真八剌, the daughter of the Prince of Ying 莊王 Esen-Temür (Yexian-Tiemur). They married in 1316 when Wang To resided in China as a hostage. In the winter of the same year they went to Korea together. Three years later (1319) the princess died. The Yuan court was suspicious about the death of the princess. Therefore the

423 For instance, King Ch'ungyǒ married Chǒnghwahwa 崇和 who gave birth to a son named Kangyangkong Cha 江陽公澄 before he married Khubilai’s daughter Hudulujelimish. “Kangyangkong Cha was the oldest, but because he was not born of the (Mongol) princess, he was not designated as crown prince.” Later in the fifth year of King Ch'ungyǒ (1279) he was even moved to a temple afar to “shun the crown prince”. (KRS, vol. 91, III, P. 57. See the biography of Kangyangkong Cha ).
425 KRS, III, 89:27.
princess was not formally buried until 1320. In 1321 the Yuan court sent envoys to Korea to arrest a servant girl and the cook of the princess to investigate the death of the princess.\textsuperscript{426} The cook admitted, "Last August when the king consorted with Tökbôi德妃 in the Yangyŏng Palace, the princess was jealous, and she was beaten by the King and her nose bled. In September the King visited the Yŏnhwa Temple, and he beat the princess again."\textsuperscript{427} The cook and the servant girl were escorted to the Yuan court for further interrogation. If the death of this princess was really the consequence of ill-treatment or even murder by the Koryŏ King, it would surely be a disaster for Korea. At this critical moment, many Koryŏ ministers collectively wrote an appeal to the Yuan court to defend the Koryŏ king and to charge the cook with a false accusation.\textsuperscript{428} Fortunately for them, the Yuan court abandoned this case, and for the next five years there were no Mongol princesses in the Koryŏ court. In 1324, the Yuan court married Jintong 金童 (k. Kimdong), the daughter of the Prince of Wei, to the Koryŏ King Ch'ungsug 忠肃王 when he was a hostage in the Yuan court. One year later, they went to Korea together. Unfortunately, this princess had an even shorter married life. In 1325 when the princess visited the Dragon Mountain (Yongsan 龍山) with the Koryŏ king, she gave birth to a son later named Yongsan Wŏnja 龍山元子. But the princess soon died in the temporary dwelling of the Koryŏ king. She was only eighteen years old. In 1342 she was posthumously entitled "The Senior Princess of the State of Cao".

A second Mongol woman King Ch’ungsug married was Princess Kyŏnhwa, Bayan Khudu 伯顏忽都. The Koryŏsa simply mentions her as a "Mongol woman" without indicating her family background. However, since she had a royal title, she must have belonged to the Mongol Royal family. According to Xiao Qiqing 蕭啓慶, she was the sister of Jintong, a daughter of Amuge, the

\textsuperscript{426} KRS, III, 89:26.
\textsuperscript{427} KRS, III, 89:28.
\textsuperscript{428} KRS, III, 89:28.
Prince of Wei.¹²⁹ She married King Ch’ungsug in 1333 in the Yuan court, but three years later King Ch’ungsug died.

This princess was powerful and had her own government office. But when she was in widowhood, she was raped by her stepson, King Ch’unghye 忠惠王, who was the son of Ch’ungsug. The princess felt humiliated by the new Koryŏ king and decided to return to the Yuan court. However, when she ordered her servants to buy horses, the Koryŏ king issued an order to ban the horse trade, and Yuan envoys who were in Koryŏ at that time immediately arrested the king and escorted him to the Yuan court. At the same time the princess issued an order to arrest many other Koryŏ officials.¹³⁰

The reason that Ch’unghye did such a foolish thing as rape his stepmother was probably because he tried to follow the Mongol tradition of levirate marriage. We know that he was one of the most Mongolianized of the Koryŏ kings. His changes were not only in dress and hairstyle, but also in conduct. The Koryŏsa records: “When the previous King (e.g. Ch’ungsug) was traveling to the Yuan, ... the King (Ch’unghye) went to greet him on the way using the Mongolian etiquette of kneeling. The previous king said: ‘your father and mother are both Koreans, why do you salute me with “barbarian” etiquette (huli 胡禮)?’”¹³¹ King Ch’unghye was not born by a Mongol princess. His mother was a Korean woman who gave birth to King Ch’unghye and King Kongmin.¹³²

In fact, King Ch’unghye had married a Mongol princess named Irinjinbal 亦愽真班 (posthumously titled as Princess of Dening) in 1330 before he ascended the Koryŏ throne. This princess was the daughter of Jiaoba, the Prince of Zhenxi Wujing. She gave birth to two children,

---

¹³⁰ KRS, III, 89:28.
¹³¹ KRS, I, 36:726.
¹³² When the King of Ch’ungsug married the Mongolian princess, this woman was moved to another place because of the jealousy of the Mongolian princess. But the King of Ch’ungsug still secretly met her. See KRS, III, p. 29.
one was a son named Wang Sin (Mongol name Basima Duorzhi), and the other was a daughter. In 1344 the Yuan emperor, Shundi, issued a decree to depose King Ch’unghye, and put his eight-year-old son to the throne. The government was actually run by his mother. Four years later, Wang Sin died. Yuan Shundi ordered Wang Sik (Mongol name Misijian Duorzhi), the son of Ch’unghye born of a concubine, to succeed the throne. Wang Sik became King Ch’ungding when he was only twelve years old, and Princess Irinjinbal still controlled the Koryŏ government during his reign. Ch’ungding was forced to abdicate in 1351. The Yuan court finally ordered Wang Ki (Mongolian name Boyan Tiemur), the brother of Ch’unghye, to ascend the throne. Wang Ki was the last Koryŏ king who married a Mongolian princess. He was probably the only Koryŏ king who truly loved a Mongolian princess.

In 1349 Wang Ki married the Mongol princess Botashirin, the daughter of Prince of Wei, Amuge, when he was a hostage in the Yuan court. This princess was a devout Buddhist. She did not have any children nine years after she married King Kongmin, and therefore she agreed to the suggestion of the ministers to select women for the king to bear sons. She was also loyal to her husband when, in a palace coup, the Koryŏ king hid under a blanket in his mother’s bedroom, while the princess calmly sat beside the door to guard him. The princess finally became pregnant in 1365. The Koryŏ king was so pleased that he issued an order of amnesty, but unfortunately the princess died in childbirth. The Koryŏ king was so bereaved that he did not go to court for three days. He ordered all the governmental officials to wear their mourning apparel, and he decided to hold a state funeral for the princess. The funeral arrangements were made according to the specifications of the Princess Supreme of Qi, Khudulu[gh] Khaimish. In addition, the Koryŏ
king led all the officials in holding a memorial ceremony for the princess accompanied by Mongol music.434

2. MONGOL-KORYO STRIFE DURING THE THIRTEENTH CENTURY

Korea suffered greatly from the warfare with the Mongols during the thirteenth century, yet it eventually survived as a relatively independent state by acknowledging the Mongol Yuan as its suzerain. As a vassal state, Korea had to fulfill specific duties, but after all it preserved itself in spite of the determination of Chinggis Khan to conquer it.

Mongolia was not originally contiguous to Korea, but since 1218, Mongol troops had encroached on Korean territory from the northwest. In 1216, the Khitan generals Qi Nu, Jin Shan, Tongguyu, Ya'er, Han She, who had all previously submitted to the Mongols rebelled in the Liaodong area and after suppression by Mongol troops they eventually retreated to Korea and occupied the city of Kangdong 江東. In December of 1218, the Mongol general Hechiwen 合赤溫 and general Wanyan Ziyuan 完顏子淵 of the Dongzhen 東真 state led a troop of thirty thousand soldiers to Korea to suppress the rebellion. They sent envoys to the Korean king, requesting Korea to provide the Mongol troops with provisions and funds. The Koryo king Wang Chốń 王巜 then sent the general Cho Ch’ung 趙沖 in the northwest to lead a force to meet them with provisions. Kangdong was captured in the next year. Before retreating, Hechiwen swore an oath with Cho Ch’ung, "from now on our two countries should become brothers forever. Our sons and grandsons of a thousand generations should not forget this."435 The Koryo king was grateful and willing to pay tribute to the Mongols, but Hechiwen said, "your country is far from ours, and it

434 KRS, III, 89:33-34.
will be too much trouble for you to travel. We will send no more than ten envoys to you every year."

This report is dubious since Chinggis Khan’s original purpose was to conquer Korea. He had previously declared, “the holy King came here to collect tax and corvee”, and announced to the Koreans that “you must send tax and corvee to me, so that you may preserve your land.”

Therefore the relationship between the Mongols and Koreans could never be that of “brothers”. It is recorded in Koryŏsa that from 1219 to 1224 the Mongols demanded that Korea pay tribute on eight occasions. For instance, in 1221, Chinggis Khan’s younger brother Otchigin sent an envoy Zhuoguyu 著古與 to Korea, requesting a large amount of tribute, including ten thousand otter furs, three thousand bolts of fine silk, two thousand bolts of fine ramie, ten thousand jin of cottonseed, one thousand lumps of ink, two hundred brushes, ten thousand sheets of paper, and many other things. The insatiable demands of the Mongols for tribute became a heavy burden on Korea, thus it enraged more and more Koreans. It happened in 1225 that the Mongol envoy Zhuoguyu was murdered by unknown assassins on his way home from Korea.

New envoys were sent to Korea to

---

435 MWESI 蒙兀儿史记 38, Shijie shuju, 1962.
436 Based on the records in KRS (Koryŏ History) and MWESI, juan 38. But the record in the Yuanshi is slightly different, “Your country is far and there is too much trouble to travel. You can send ten envoys every year to pay tribute.” I believe that the record in KRS is correct because during the following years the Mongols sent envoys to Korea every year to collect tribute. This way of tribute payment was changed since Kubilai Khan’s reign when Korea sent envoys every year to the Yuan court to pay tribute.
437 “Solongyut”, which meant Korea according to the translation of Zhu Feng, Jia Jingyan. See Han yi Menggu huangjin shigang, trans. by Zhu Feng 朱楨, Jia Jingyan 高敬顏, Neimenggu renmin chubanshe, (1985): 20. There is a mistake here. Altan Tobci states that Chinggis Khan took a Korean woman Qulan (Hulan 忽蘭). But according to The Secret History, Qulan was the daughter of Dayir Usun of the Merkit Tribe. See Francis Woodman Cleaves (trans.) The Secret History, p. 130. In the Houfei biao in Yuanshi, Hulan belonged to the second Ordo of Chinggis Khan, while there is an imperial concubine named Solangha 索郎哈 in the fourth ordo. Suolangha means Korea. See YS, 106: 2695-96.
438 KRS, I, 22: 247. See the eighth month of the eighth year of Kojong’s reign.
439 Hao Shiyuan 郝時遠 believes that the Mongol envoys were murdered by the Dongzheng State because it had broken off its relation with the Mongols, and attempted to control Korea to get its support to resist the Mongols. Thus it assassinated the Mongol envoys and shifted the misfortune on Korea, to sow discords between Mongol and Korea. In addition, the Dongzheng soldiers often disguised themselves as Mongols to attack Korean cities for the same purpose. See “Menggu dongzheng Gaoli gaishu”, in Menggushi yanjiu, 2 (1986): 15-20.
investigate the event but were attacked by Koreans and had to return. \(^{441}\) Chinggis Khan died in 1227 and for four years the Mongols did not send envoys to Korea. \(^{443}\)

Finally, in 1231, Ögödei Khan dispatched Mongol troops commanded by General Salita to punish Korea. The Mongol troops captured more than forty Korean cities, though they encountered fierce resistance, and the Koryô king was eventually compelled to submit to the Mongols in 1232 (the nineteenth year of Kojong 高宗). In the same year Mongol troops departed, but 72 Mongol senior officials were appointed to Korea’s central, provincial, and county administrative units to supervise and control the Koreans. Mongol officials were placed above the Koryô officials, thus holding power over Koreans’ lives and property. On behalf of the Mongol Khan, they frequently ordered the Koreans to pay large tribute to the Mongols.

Hatred towards the Mongols increased among the Koreans. In 1232, a powerful Korean minister Ch’oe Yi 崔怡 held the Koryô king under duress on Kanghwa island 江華島 to “seek refuge from war”, and shortly afterwards, in the sixth month of 1232 all of the 72 Mongol senior officials were disarmed and killed by Koreans. \(^{443}\). In the eighth month of the same year Mongol troops commanded by Salita arrived to punish the Koreans. \(^{444}\) Although the Koryô court remained safe on Kanghwa Island from the Mongol wrath, the Korean people were plunged into misery. Many cities were destroyed and the inhabitants of these captured cities were often massacred even though the Koryô king wrote many letters to the Mongol general Salita to protest. During this period the internal struggles for the khanate in the Mongol royal family occurred frequently, leaving little time for the war with Korea, and in fact, the court held out for twenty-eight years, though their isolation was perceived as cowardice, and their prestige was seriously damaged.

\(^{442}\) YS 208: 4608.
During this time Koreans resisted tenaciously the attacks of the Mongols. They had killed the prominent Mongol general Salita at the Ch’ōin 處仁 city in 1232, and this victory boosted their morale. However, the costs were great. In the year 1254 alone (the forty-first year of Kojong), Mongol troops captured and deported more than 266,800 (Korean) men and women, and executed a number “beyond calculation”, reducing every prefecture and county they passed to ruins. Finally the Koryŏ king Wang Chŏl 王禑 found no way out but to send his son, the crown prince Wang Chŏn 王 рожд to the Mongol capital as a hostage in exchange for a Mongol agreement to withdraw from Korea. Eventually the 28-year-old Mongol-Korean war ended.

In the fourth month of 1259 the Koryŏ crown prince Wang Chŏn 王 рожд travelled to the Mongol court, and soon left Dadu (the Yuan capital, present-day Beijing) for Sichuan to call on Möngke Khan who was there commanding Mongol troops to attack the Southern Song. When Wang Wŏn arrived at the Liupan Mountain 六盤山, he was informed of the death of Möngke Khan. Wang Wŏn made a clever decision by changing his journey southward to meet Khubilai with presents and appropriate protocol, which made Khubilai pleasantly surprised. And they travelled together to Kaiping.

In the sixth month of 1259 the Koryŏ King Kojong 高宗 died. In the seventh month of the same year Möngke Khan died in the campaign against the Southern Song, and the next year Khubilai Khan ascended the throne in Kaiping 闕平. Thereby, the Mongol-Korean relationship entered a new era.

Since the beginning of Khubilai’s reign (1260-1294) the Mongols changed their Korean policy from military conquest to control through conciliation. The Koryŏ crown prince Wang Chŏn had been a hostage in the Yuan for two years and had been treated badly by the Mongols. Before

444 YS 208: 4609.
Khubilai ascended the throne, the ministers Zhao Liangbi 趙良弼 had advised Khubilai to treat Wang Chŏn as a foreign prince with proper courtesy, and to send an escort with Chŏn back to Korea to succeed to the Koryŏ throne.⁴⁴⁷ Khubilai accepted this suggestion, and Wang Chŏn (name changed to Wang Sik 王植) was escorted by Mongol troops to Korea where he became the Wŏngjong 元宗 of Korea in 1260. At the same time Khubilai rescinded the punishment of Korea, and in addition, Khubilai issued an imperial decree to Wang Sik before he went home, “Now under heaven, only your country and the Song have not acknowledged allegiance to me. When you return to home to govern your state, I hope you will clear up hatreds and dispel misgivings, demonstrate your benevolent rule and bestow your favors on your people. You should aid and comfort your people in these hard times. You should move your palace from the island to the mainland; you should sell your swords and buy cattle. You should throw away your weapons of war and take up hoes and ploughs.”⁴⁴⁸ Soon Khubilai complied with the requests of Wang Sik to withdraw the Mongol troops from Korea, and repatriate prisoners of war and refugees to Korea. Khubilai granted Wang Sik a royal seal and certificate and approved Korea’s paying tribute to the Mongols based on Korean resources.⁴⁴⁹ Also, the Korean people were allowed to maintain their traditional customs and clothing style.⁴⁵⁰

However, the Mongol control of Korea was more direct than before. Prior to the Yuan dynasty, Korea had been paying tribute to Chinese imperial courts for many generations. Theoretically China was the suzerain state and Korea was its dependency. This relationship was based on the concept

⁴⁴⁸ YS 208: 4610-2. See “Gaoli Zhuan”.
⁴⁴⁹ YS 208: 4613.
⁴⁵⁰ King Ch’ungyŏ (Wang Sim) was greatly influenced by Mongol customs when he stayed in the Yuan court as a hostage. When he ascended the Koryŏ throne, he decided to adopt Mongol hairstyles. He ordered all the governmental officials to cut their hair according to the Mongol qiechour, cutting from the top to the forehead, making it in square shape, leaving some hair in the middle. See Gaoli shi zhong Zhong Han guanxi shiliao huibian, p. 519.
that China was the center of the world, and a Chinese emperor was, in name, the universal emperor of the world. Therefore Korea was theoretically treated as one of its dependencies. However, except for requiring Korea to follow some diplomatic protocols, China after the Han, had neither tried to annex Korea, nor intended to interfere in its internal affairs. Therefore Korea had been basically an independent state for generations. In the Yuan dynasty, however, the relationship between China and Korea changed to direct control.

The Mongol Yuan first sent Darughacdzi to Korea, then set up a “Regional Secretariat Council of Conquering the East (Zhengdong Xing Zhongshu Sheng 征東行中書省)” to supervise the Koryō court. The Mongol Yuan Dynasty also stationed garrison troops and opened horse breeding grounds in Korea. Korea was responsible for paying tribute to the Yuan court, helping the Mongol troops, setting up posts, and providing grains to Mongol troops.

3. Wŏngjong’s 元宗 Marriage Proposal and Its Political Significance

Korea had greatly suffered under the Mongol raids and invasions. The Koryō court had retreated to Kanghwa Island, leaving the Mongol mounted troops to pillage wantonly on the Korean peninsula. The court and country had become exhausted and impoverished. Therefore, in 1259 the Koryō court formally submitted to the rule of the Yuan.

Although this ended the state-of-war, the intervention of powerful military ministers prevented the Koryō court from following the orders of the Yuan court, to “leave the water and go ashore” (chu shui jiu lu 出水就陸), that is, to return to its original capital Kaegyŏng 闕京 from Kanghwa island. In 1274 Khubilai mounted an invasion of Japan and was displeased with the failure of the expedition and began to regard Koryō as a half-hearted ally both against Japan and Song China. He
thus issued many imperial edicts to the Koryŏ court, requiring it to fulfill its responsibilities as a dependency.\footnote{KRS, I, Vol. 25, p. 515-6. Vol. 26, pp. 523-4} However, numerous Korean military ministers had always resented the Koryŏ court’s submission to the Mongols, and the most powerful of them, Im Yŏn 林衍, in the sixth month of the tenth year of Wŏnjong 朥宗’s reign (1269) forced Wŏnjong 元宗 to abdicate his throne to his younger brother Wang Chăng 王湯. The Yuan court immediately dispatched troops to Korea and helped to restore Wŏnjong to the throne.\footnote{KRS, I, Vol. 26, p. 529.}

By that time, Korea was close to a state of total disintegration and prey to many factions. One of these, led by a Korean general Ch’oe T’an 崔坦, presented fifty cities in the northwest to the Yuan court, and they were immediately annexed by Khubilai.\footnote{YS 208:4615.} Another faction consisted of the Korean élite who had retreated to Kanghwa Island and were against returning to the original capital. This factionalism had led to the Sambyŏlch’o 三別抄 Rebellion, which lasted for three years from 1270 to 1272.\footnote{KRS, I, Vol. 26, pp. 535-36.} In the Yuan court, some ministers still suggested to Khubilai that he conquer Korea by military force and divide it into prefectures and counties.\footnote{YS 208:4616.} In this situation, Wŏnjong finally decided to sacrifice the sovereignty of Korea in order to obtain protection from the Mongols.

One of the means Wŏnjong chose was to establish a marriage relationship with the Yuan court. During the first month of 1270 (the eleventh year of Wŏnjong’s reign), he had a personal audience with Khubilai at Dadu 大都, promising that he would return to the original capital Kaegyŏng 開京 from Kanghwa island. At the same time, he requested Khubilai to marry a princess to his son Wang Sim 王諨, “I sincerely ask your Majesty to marry a princess to my son. Should we be fortunate
enough to contract a marriage with you, my small state will rely upon you for ten thousand generations, and we will fulfill our duties with full hearts.”  

But Khubilai did not approve Wŏngjong’s request immediately. His excuse was:

“According to the laws of Dada ᶻbackgroundColor( Tartar ), two peoples should be connected together by means of marriage and contact with each other sincerely, so how can I not agree to your request? However, today you come here for something else, and it seems to me that your proposal is made in haste. When you return to your own state and have placated your people, you can send a special envoy here, and then I will agree to your request. All my daughters have been married out, but I will discuss this matter with my brothers, and we will agree upon the disposition of your request.”

Obviously Khubilai knew the political motives behind Wŏngjong’s marriage request. Therefore, although he promised to provide support for him, he required that Korea first fulfill its duties as a dependency.

Wŏngjong did as he had promised Khubilai. In May, 1270, after having destroyed the forces of Im Yŏn, he finally returned to the former capital Kaegyŏng. Then he cooperated with the Mongol troops in pursuing and suppressing the Sambyŏlch’o Rebels. In 1271 he sent a special envoy to formally make an offer of marriage to the Yuan court, saying, “We humbly hope to receive your bounty and protection forever by this marriage relationship 伏望俾諧親好於附疏, 永固恩榮於成效”.

He also sent his son to the Yuan court as a hostage (Mo turghagh 禿魯花). Khubilai then agreed to allow his young daughter Khudulugh Kelmish 忽都魯·揭里迷失 to marry Wŏngjong’s son, but since the princess was only thirteen years old at that time, the marriage had to be postponed. Three years later, in 1274, Wang Sim 王 ülkemiz married Princess Khudulugh Kelmish at the Yuan court. He was thirty-nine years old at that time. One month later, Wŏngjong died, and

457 Dada ᶻbackgroundColor( 糧和、達達、塔塔兒 ) refers to northern nationalities in general and Mongols in particular.
459 KRS, I, Vol. 27, p. 539.
Wang Sim returned to Korea to succeed to the throne, becoming King Ch’ungyŏng 忠烈王. When the princess and the Koryŏ king entered Kaegyŏng in an imperial carriage, “The people in the streets said in joy: ‘We never imagined that after the wars of one hundred years, we would see peace again.’”

According to the Koryŏsa, Khudulugh Kelmish was born of Asuzhen Khatun, but this woman’s name is not listed under Khubilai’s name in the Tables of Empresses and Imperial Concubines (Houfei biao) in the Yuanshi, but we know that before her marriage, Khudulugh Kelmish was titled Princess Supreme of the State of Qi (Qiguo da zhang gongzhu 齊國大長公主). Her marriage with Wang Sim started a new relationship between the Mongol Yuan imperial family and the Koryŏ royal family that lasted for almost one century.

Among the eight princesses married into the Koryŏ court and the house of the Prince of Sim, only the Princess of Kyŏnghwa 慶華公主 Boyan Khudu 伯顏忽都, who was the Noble Consort of the Loyal and Decorous Prince, is called “a Mongol woman” in the Koryŏsa, and was not counted as a princess of Yuan. But according to Xiao Qiqing 蕭啓慶, it was recorded in Koryŏsa that the Loyal and Decorous King had married the daughter of Prince Ying 英王 and later married two daughters of the Prince of Wei 魏王. One of the daughters of the Prince of Wei was Princess Supreme of the State of Cao 曹國大長公主 Jin Tong 金童, the other must be Boyan Khudu. This implies that Boyan Khudu was also a princess of Yuan.

Thus, only two Koryŏ kings during the Yuan dynasty did not have Mongol princesses as their principal wives. The reasons are clear. King Ch’ungmog 忠穆王 (1345-1348) ascended the throne

---

460 KRS, I, Vol. 28.
in his childhood and died when he was only twelve. King Chungjong 定王 (1349-1351) had to 
abdicate when he was fourteen years old because he was mentally deranged.

It is clear, therefore, that the pattern was essentially universal.

The royal family in the Koryŏ period customarily adopted a blood-relatio
(endogamic) marriage system. Rarely did they establish inter-marriage relationships with Koryŏ clans outside the traditional circle, and this meant that, early at least, the marriages were incestuous. In 1275 Khubilai criticized the Koryŏ royal family’s practice, “The Wang families in your state marry people of the same surname. What is the reason for you to do so? Inasmuch as you and I have become one family, we should marry each other. Otherwise how can we say we are of the same family?”

But in the same decree Khubilai said: “You know that when my grandfather the emperor conquered the thirteen states, their kings vied with each other in presenting beauties, good horses, and treasures.” The implication was very clear: the Korean king should present his “beautiful” daughter to Khubilai to symbolize his submission.

It seems to me that Khubilai initially had no interest in marrying his daughter to the Korean king. What he wanted to do was to follow the example of his grandfather Chinggis Khan by demanding the princesses of defeated states in exchange for peace. For instance, in 1209, when the Mongol troops surrounded the capital of the Jin, the emperor was forced to give his daughter, Princess of the State of Qi to Chinggis Khan in exchange for the withdrawal of the Mongol

---

463 See Chong, Yong-suk, Koryŏ wangsil chongnaehon yon ’gu, Soul: Saemunsa, 1988. For example, the Kuang-jong, To-jong, Wen-jong all married their own sisters and conferred empress titles on them. But they closely guarded the secret and announced to the public that they were from other clans. This marriage system was abandoned because of the interference of the Mongol Yuan court which clung to an exogamic marriage practice. The Yuan court ordered the Koryŏ royal family to have intermarriages with fifteen clans. Also see Wang Yi, Menggu Yuan yu Wangshi Gaoli ji Riben de guanxi. Taiwan, Shangwu Yinshuguan, (1973): 120.

464 Gaoli shi zhong Zhong Han guanxi shiliao huibian. p. 524.
465 Gaoli shi zhong Zhong Han guanxi shiliao huibian. P. 524.
troops.\textsuperscript{466} When the Mongol troops were attacking Xi Xia, the king of the Xi Xia was also forced to present his daughter to Chinggis Khan. But, when Chinggis Khan received the daughters of the enemies, he only temporarily postponed the attacks.\textsuperscript{467}

However, the Mongol treatment of the states or tribes whose leaders married Mongol princesses had been very different. Generally speaking, the reason for the kings or tribal chieftains who enjoyed the special favor of marrying Mongol princesses arose from the fact that they had submitted to the Mongols without resistance. The Ikires tribe, the Öngüt Tribe, and the Uighur Tribe all submitted to the Mongols peacefully and on their own initiative. Therefore, when their chieftains made marriage proposals to Chinggis Khan, Chinggis readily agreed to marry his daughters to them.

It should also be noted that according to Mongol tradition, princesses basically had equal political rights with the princes, and the imperial sons-in-law were treated as members of the Mongol royal family. All of them had the right to attend the quriltai—the conference attended by the Mongol royal family and the Mongol nobles to determine major issues of the Mongol Empire. Therefore, once a Mongol princess was married into a state or a tribe, the relationship of this state or tribe with the Mongols was fundamentally changed. The Mongols would no longer treat it as hostile. Instead, its status in the Mongol Empire would be notably enhanced.

If we view Korea in this light, we will find that the Korean kings and their people should not have been eligible to marry Mongol princesses. They had been among the fiercest antagonists of all the Mongol conquests. So too, were the Jin and the Xi Xia. Like them, Koryŏ had been forced to offer its own royal women to the Mongol court in order to obtain peace; but unlike them, the peace

\textsuperscript{466} See the basic annuals of Taizu of YS 1:17.
thus obtained would not be simply a cunning tactic of the Mongols, an excuse to play a waiting-game, until they were ready to extinguish the state.

There was, therefore, something very special about the Mongol-Korean relationship, and we need to ask within our restricted frame of marriage politics, what was it that made the Korean case characteristically different. We are aware that Khubilai was not Chinggis, and that a half-century had passed between the Mongol extinction of the Jin and Xi Xia, and Khubilai’s request in 1275 for a “beautiful” Korean princess. Khubilai, we also know, had used the Korean peninsula for his first, unsuccessful, attempt to invade Japan. We might thus consider that the Korean court was in a particularly precarious position.

It is strongly evident that it was an awkward matter for the Korean king to offer his daughter to Khubilai Khan. First of all, the Korean royal family had adopted an in-clan marriage system, and rarely had its princesses married into other clans. Secondly, deeply influenced by Chinese culture, the Koryŏ royal family still looked down upon the Mongols, regarding them as barbarians. As King Taejo 太祖, the founder of Koryŏ, had suggested, “Our state in the east loves the Tang 唐 (Chinese) tradition. Our dress style, etiquette, and music should all follow theirs... Khitan is a state of beasts. Our customs are different from theirs, and our language is also different from theirs. Be careful, do not follow them.”

This cultural pride prevented the Koryŏ royal family from immediately agreeing to Khubilai’s demand. Instead, as a compromise, they chose to select many beautiful young women to present to the Yuan court. In 1275, Wŏnjong issued a decree to ban all marriages in Korea in order to select

---

468 KRS, I, vol. I, p. 55. Even when Mongol troops had already occupied parts of Korea, the Koryŏ court still showed their contempt of Mongol culture. When the Duke of Ankyong, Wang Chăng, returned from Mongolia, he did not want to see his father, the Koryŏ king Kojong, simply because “I have been contaminated by the foul smell of mutton for a long time. Please allow me to see you after one night.” But the king ordered him, “Burn all the clothes you are wearing, wear new clothes, and come immediately.” (see KRS, vol. I, p. 20)
beautiful virgins to send to the Chinese (Yuan) court. This was not unprecedented, but by following a tradition, dating at least from the Tang dynasty, the Koryo court was acknowledging the legitimacy of the Mongol rule. Even though many Chinese emperors had taken Korean women as Imperial concubines, they had never married their daughters into the Koryo royal family. This exchange of women, perhaps unwelcome to the Koryo court showed a shrewd diplomacy on their past. The “family connection” protected Koryo.

One may ask: Was this a triumph for Korean diplomacy?

The political significance of the royal marriages between the Yuan and Koryo courts seems obvious: they were relationships between a ruler and the tributary. The purpose of the Yuan court’s activities of marrying their princesses into the Koryo court were done to effectively control it, and the expectation of the Yuan court was that its women would exercise significant political power. The Koryo court’s offer of marriage to the Yuan court was initially to seek peace and protection from the Mongol Yuan dynasty in circumstances of domestic troubles and foreign invasions. At the same time, however, it intended to raise its position in the world order of the Mongol Yuan dynasty by taking advantage of this relationship. The marriage relationship was on the surface unequal since it reflected the unequal relationship between the Mongol Yuan court and the Koryo court. Therefore, the character of the marriage relationship between the Mongol Yuan and the Koryo court cannot, in spite of Yuan wishes, be described as that of Heqin, the old policy of using a Chinese princess to “civilize” the barbarians (hua hui 化胡).

The marriage relationships between the Yuan court and the Koryo court was one-sided. Although the Mongol Yuan court continuously injected its princesses into the Koryo court, it never took the princesses of the Koryo royal family as empresses or Noble Consort (guifei 貴妃). In the Yuan dynasty, Korean women were famed for their gentleness and loveliness, and many officials

ol. 28, p. 569.
took Korean women as wives, concubines, or maidservants.\(^\text{470}\) The Yuan court also issued many imperial edicts to the Koryŏ court, ordering them to present girls to the Yuan imperial court, and many Korean officials presented women to the Yuan of their own accord. This happened every year according to the Korean historian Yu Kye 余傑.\(^\text{471}\) In 1307, the Koryŏ court issued a decree: “girls under sixteen and above thirteen should not marry without authorization. They must first be reported to the government, then they can marry. Those families who violate this ban will be [considered] guilty.”\(^\text{472}\)

At the same time, some of the Korean women in the Yuan court were ranked among the empresses and imperial concubines in the *Yuanshi*. Among them, Qi Shi Wanzhe Hudu 奇氏完者忽都, the empress of Shundi 順帝 (Toghon Temur), was the most famous.\(^\text{473}\) None of

\(\text{470}\) Ye Zi Ji 葉子奇, *Cao mu zi 草木子*, Zhonghua Shuju, (1959):63, “The maidens employed by northerners had to be Korean ...without this they will not be regarded as officials.”

\(\text{471}\) “[Korea] did this (presenting virgins and eunuchs to the Yuan court) every year either in response to an imperial decree or on a voluntary basis.” See Yu Kye 余傑 (1607-1664): *Yosa chegang 麗史提綱* : [23 kwon/Yu Kye ch'an], Sour: Asea Muhwasa, Han’gukhak kojon ssiriju. kwon 17, (1973): 390.

\(\text{472}\) KRS 32:667. Koreans had been perturbed so much that “when Koreans had girls they kept it secret. They were still afraid that the secret would be divulged, even their neighbors were prevented from seeing the girls. Whenever envoys came from China, the Koreans would be alarmed, and talked to each other: ‘Why do they come? Do they come to take virgins?’” KRS 109:389. See the biography of Yi Kok 李鋭.

\(\text{473}\) Empress Wanzhe-hudu完者忽都, Née Qi 奇氏, was a Korean woman who played a very important role in the politics of the late Yuan period and has been blamed for the destruction of the Yuan dynasty.

Her family was of very low origin, and she came to the Yuan palace only as a maidservant. Throughout the Yuan dynasty the Yuan government regularly selected beautiful virgins for the Yuan palace; the high officials and noble lords also liked to take Korean women as concubines or maidservants. Initially, Qi was mainly responsible for serving Shundi with tea. She was very clever and crafty, and gradually gained the favour of Shundi. Empress Dana-shi was jealous of her, and flogged her with a whip and often insulted her. When empress Dana-shi was killed, Shundi planned to designate Qi as the empress, but the then chancellor Boyan opposed this idea, and therefore Shundi had to give it up, and married an Onggirat woman Boyan-hudu as his principal empress. After Boyan was dismissed from the chancellor's position, Shundi accepted a suggestion of Shalaban and designated Qi as the second empress.

According to Quan Heng, Khubilai had decided a domestic rule by decreeing that his descendants should never take Korean woman into the palace. This was actually not true, because Khubilai himself had issued a decree to the Koryŏ king, ordering him to present his daughter to him as a sign of submission to the Mongol rule. But as far as we know, the Koryŏ king never presented his daughter to the Yuan emperor. Instead, he selected many beautiful Korean girls to present to the Yuan court, and he even had to ban all marriages in the Korean territory in order to select the most beautiful virgins. It was not clear whether Khubilai received any Korean girls in his palace. But at least in the reign of Wenzong (r. 1329-32) Korean women had been used in the Yuan palace. *Ershier shi zhaji 二十二史札記* records: “There was a practice to select Korean girls in the Yuan dynasty. Wenzong once granted a Korean woman Buyan-tieni 不顏帖亦
them originated from the Koryŏ royal family, and they seem to have been despised in the Yuan court even when they had become imperial consorts. It is said that Khubilai had declared a family rule to “despise Korean women, and not to allow them to enter the palace.”

This particular rule is in need of further examination. What special “charm” enabled the women of Korea to rise so high? Sadly, we must leave this to further discussion.

4. MONGOL PRINCESSES IN THE KORYŎ COURT

The princesses of the Mongol Yuan had the highest status in the palace chambers of the Koryŏ court. Whether or not the Koryŏ king/prince had wife/wives, as soon as he married a princess of the Yuan court, he had to place her into the position of his principal wife. Any son born by a Mongolian princess was first in line to be the crown prince regardless of his age. For example, one year after Khudulugh Kelmish was married into the Koryŏ court, there occurred a serious conflict among the Mongol princess, the Koryŏ king, and his other wife Chŏnghwa (貞和). When Khudulugh Kelmish gave birth to a son, Chŏnghwa went to express her congratulations, and a maidservant organized a banquet in the East Hall, the traditional site of a crown prince. The Koryŏ king said: “It would be better to sit in the central hall.” In response, the maidservant placed a low seat for Khudulugh Kelmish in the central hall. The Mongol princess was very angry because she believed that this arrangement of the seating made her only the equal of Chŏnghwa. Therefore she ordered the maidservant to move the banquet to the West Hall because there existed a higher seat for her there. The Koryŏ king was unhappy about this change, and when he looked at the princess during the...
banquet, she said: “Why do you look upon me with disdain? Are you not going to order Chŏnghwa
to kneel down in front of me?” Then she angrily ordered the banquet suspended, saying: “I must go
to my son’s proper place.” She ordered her servants to prepare the carriage, but the Koryŏ king beat
the servants with a cane. The wet nurse of the Mongol princess also said to her: “If you insist on
leaving, I must die here.” And she gripped her throat. The Mongol princess then agreed to stay. 476

This anecdote indicates that the Mongol princess was extremely sensitive about her superior
position in the Koryŏ court. She believed that she had the absolute right to be the first wife of the
Koryŏ king and that her position could not be challenged. It suggests also the resistance of the
Koryŏ king, though the resistance was impotent and unsuccessful.

While Korean historians describe the arbitrariness of the Mongol princess and the
“helplessness” of the Koryŏ king, we may regard this as historiographical convention.

Another story tells of the same princess who took a small golden pagoda from a temple to melt
it down for her own purpose. “The king was unable to stop her. All he could do was cry.” 477 On
another occasion, the Koryŏ king and his Mongol consort were going to visit a temple. The king
arrived early, and when his consort arrived, she found that only a small retinue was there. She was
angry and immediately decided to return. The Koryŏ king could do nothing but blame one of the
retinue for not summoning more people to come. When they arrived at the temple, the princess
became angry again because her husband did not wait for her, so that they might enter the temple
together, and she struck him with a cane, “scolding him and beating him.” 478

In spite of what seems a stormy relationship, this couple maintained a close enough connection
that the Mongol princess gave birth to three children for the Koryŏ royal family. She might have
given birth to more children if Khubilai had not sent them a doctor captured from the Song named

---

LianTexin, who was famed for his skill at concocting aphrodisiacs, and therefore was requested and favored by the Koryo king and his Mongol princess. A Korean minister by the name of O Yunpu believed that this kind of medicine was harmful to conception and pointed out this fact but his view was disregarded. The Mongol princess gave birth to three children in quick succession, but when the Koryo king accepted the prescription of the Chinese doctor, she never became pregnant again.\(^479\)

This couple visited the Yuan court together many times, and Khubilai always gave banquets to welcome them.\(^480\) The princess brought her son and daughter to visit the Yuan empress Chabui, who loved the boy and bestowed upon him a knife and wine utensils. The wife of the Yuan crown prince even gave him a Mongolian name, Yizhili-Puhua.\(^481\) In 1295, Chengzong ascended the throne as the second Yuan emperor, and as a sign of favor to Korea, he granted the title, Princess of Anping (安平), to Khudulugh Kelmish. In 1297, she and her husband visited the Yuan capital together and remained there “for a long period”. In 1298, when the Koryo king was about to return to Korea, Emperor Chengzong honored them with a visit to their own residence. At the banquet the princess sang songs and the Koryo king performed dances. This was the last time they visited the Yuan capital together. In the fifth month of 1298, they returned to Korea. Shortly after, the princess fell ill and died. She was thirty-nine years old.\(^482\)

5. Political Involvement of Mongol Princesses in Korea

Morris Rossabi suggests that Khubilai’s daughters did not play a role in politics:

\(^478\) KRS, Vol. 89. III, p. 22.  
\(^480\) KRS, Vol. 89. III, p. 22.  
\(^481\) KRS, Vol. 89. III, p. 22.  
Unlike the powerful Mongol women starting with Chinggis’ mother Hö’elun to Khubilai’s wife Chabui, Khubilai’s daughters did not have a role in political decisions. Perhaps they were influenced by Chinese cultural standards which imposed severe restrictions on women. To rule the Chinese inevitably required adoption of some Chinese attitudes and practices, and such sinicization meant less political influence for and additional restraints on women. On the other hand, it may simply be that Khubilai’s daughters lacked any interest in politics.483

However, in view of the political involvement of the Mongol princesses in Korea, this claim seems less than true. Although there was no specification for political authority of Mongol princess in the Koryô court, they played very important roles not only in the Korean palace chambers but also in the Korean government. Their power seem to have arisen simply from their status as Yuan princesses.

To begin with, Koryô kings and their native concubines were forced to take their advice and often to yield to them. According to most sources, the Mongol princesses even had the power to arrest Korean officials and Korean king’s wives.

A good example occurred in the twelfth month of the second year of King Ch’ungyö1’s reign (1276), when Khudulugh Kelmish received an anonymous letter, saying that King Ch’ungyö1’s first wife, Chõnghwâ 貞和 had placed a curse on her,484 and that forty-three persons led by Kim Pang-gyöng 金方慶 were planning to rebel by returning to Kanghwa Island. Therefore the princess arrested Chõnghwâ, and the Mongol darughachi (commandant) arrested Kim Pang-gyöng and the others. The Korean Chief-ministers and other officials begged to see the princess. They knelt before her, saying, “In recent years, powerful ministers have been controlling state power. If someone accused another person of criminal behavior, they did not investigate whether it was true, and instead, immediately executed the accused. Therefore people felt unsafe. They did not know when

484 According to the short biography of Chõnghwâ 貞和 in KRS, Chõnghwâ lost the favor of the Koryô king after he married the Mongolian princess. Chõnghwâ had to live in a separate house, and never sleep with the king again. Therefore her jealousy would be a natural reaction. See KRS, III. vol. 89, p. 25.
they would be killed. August Heaven (皇天) cared for us and helped us to get rid of these evil ministers, and let you come to the east. We all thought there would be no more disasters. We did not expect that today it would happen again.  

They made great effort to vindicate themselves, with tears running down their faces. The princess was moved and convinced by their words, she ordered the release of most of them, but kept Chŏnghwa and the chief-minister in prison. Later because of the sincere pleas of a Korean minister, the princess decided to release them all.

This event enables one to understand how powerful the Mongol princesses were in the Koryŏ court. Their powers were obviously above the Koryŏ kings. The Koryŏ kings were controlled by the Mongol princesses because the latter were trusted by the Yuan court to jointly govern Korea, and they actually represented the Yuan court.

The Mongol princesses from the beginning, were involved in the political affairs of Korea. Previous female involvement in Korean politics awaits a full study, but it seems fair to say that the open flaunting of power by these princesses was unprecedented. The Mongol princesses asserted a right to take part in imperial meetings, banquets, tours of inspection, hunting, and the reception of foreign guests. They seemed able to appoint and remove officers as they wished without the approval of kings. There are instances where they could even reverse the decisions made by the Koryŏ kings. This involvement in Korean political affairs was often encouraged by the Yuan court, especially in matters related to the Yuan interests.

In 1291, when a Mongol general Xue Dugan 薛蘭千 visited the Koryŏ court, King Ch'ungyŏl and his Mongol princess Khudulu (gh) Khaimish entertained him to a state dinner. The Mongol princess sat in the central seat, the Koryŏ king sat to her left, and the Mongol general to her right.  

---

This seating arrangement seemed to indicate that the political position of the Mongol princess was even higher than the Koryŏ king!

Therefore, the Koryŏ governmental system under the control of Mongol Yuan may be described as the joint rule of Koryŏ kings and Mongol princesses.

Khubilai recalled the Darughachi from Korea four years after his daughter married into the Koryŏ court, which might indicate that he believed that the princesses could better safeguard the interests of the Mongol Yuan and supervise the Koryŏ court.

However, we might also suggest that the interference of the Mongol princesses in Korean political affairs was not entirely negative to Korea. On one occasion, when the Koryŏ king, Wang Sim, invited the Mongol princess Khudulugh Kelmish to go sightseeing and hunting, she scolded him, "You know only how to make merry. What about your state affairs?" The Koryŏ king was ashamed, and because he had used fire to hunt animals, and in so-doing, had burnt peasants’ crops, he had to compensate them for their losses. The princess said, "The common people have been disturbed too much, and your followers are tired too. Why do we not return home?"

Wang Sim also loved music, and often ordered musicians to play music for him. The princess said: "I have never heard of a king who can use music to run his state." And she ordered the dismissal of the musicians.

With regard to cultural identity, we find little evidence that these princesses assimilated to Korean practice. They were condemned by later Korean commentators as arrogant, jealous, sexually monopolistic and irritable in the Koryŏ court. These charges are at least partially true. When

---

487 Yu, Kye (1607-1664): Yosa chegang, 1973. P. 342, “In the seventh month (of the fourth year of Wŏngjong), the Yuan dismissed the darughachi of our state and the garrisons in the capital....”
488 Ikeuchi Hiroshi 池内宏: Kôrai ni Chûzai Shita Gen no Darugachi ni Tsuite 高麗に駐在した元の達魯花赤について, Tôyô gakuhô 東洋学報, dai 18-kan 第十八巻, (1929): 277-283. Quoted in “Yuan Li Guanxi zhong de Wangshi Hunyin yu Qiangquan Zhengzhi”.
Khudulugh Kelmish learned that a Korean general, Kim Chung-kyŏng 金仲卿, had presented a beautiful girl to her husband, King Ch’ungyŏl, she immediately had the general arrested and put in prison.\(^{491}\)

Some of the Mongol princesses are said to have been unconventional and unstrained in sex. The Mongol princess, Botashirin 寶塔實親, had had a bad marital relationship with her husband, King Ch’ungsŏn, Wang Wŏn 王詔, whom she had married when he was a hostage in the Yuan capital in 1296. Two years later, in the first month of 1298 she went to Korea with her husband. Soon she found that he began to treat her coldly because he loved his other wife Chobi 趙妃. In the fifth month of 1298, the princess wrote a letter in Uighur Characters to the Empress Dowager of the Yuan, complaining that Chobi had placed a curse on her and that the Koryŏ King did not love her anymore. The Koryŏ King worried about this and sent an official to ask the princess what she said in the letter. The princess refused to tell, and ordered her retainers to beat the messenger. Although her father-in-law, King Ch’ungyŏl, tried to calm her anger, even bribing her followers with treasures and women, she still sent messengers to the Yuan court to complain. The situation escalated when someone put an anonymous letter on the gate of the palace, saying that the mother of Chobi had cursed the Mongol princess, causing the Koryŏ king to withdraw his love for her. The princess immediately had Chobi’s mother arrested along with her family, including her husband, her son, daughter, and son-in-law.\(^{492}\)

The Yuan court took this matter so seriously that it sent more than one hundred imperial envoys led by its Right-chancellor Alihui and the assistant of the Left in the Secretarial Council, Yang Yanlong, to Korea. They arrested Chaobi and her parents and sent them under escort to the Yuan court. The Empress Dowager of the Yuan then sent five Western monks and two Taoist


priests to Korea to ward off the curses on the princess and sent another envoy to negotiate with the Koryô king, urging him to amend his relationship with the princess. But obviously all their efforts were in vain, and the Yuan court finally decided to remove the Koryô king from his throne. His father, King Ch’ungyŏl, was restored to power and given the title of king.

This is perhaps the ultimate indication of “princess power”.

An interesting sidelight on this affair is the Koryŏsa suggestion of its sexual overtones. “The princess was usually promiscuous and often had sex with many court officials.” King Ch’ungyŏl then planned to remarry the princess to a handsome man, known as the Marquis of Sŏyŏ (瑞典侯). First he sent this man, disguised in black clothing to the princess to spend several nights with her. Since the princess was satisfied with her new lover, the King sent an envoy to the Yuan court in 1301, asking permission to remarry her to him. This request was seen by many as too outrageous even for the “lax morals” of the Yuan court. Therefore the envoy did not dare to present it to the Yuan court and returned to Korea instead.

6. Conclusion

Korea and China were both conquered by the Mongol forces, and both suffered discrimination from the Mongols. The Koreans and Chinese were both in the third rank among the national classes in the Yuan dynasty. To change this disadvantageous situation, the Koryô royal family developed

---

495 KRS, III, vol. 89, p. 27.
497 The Mongols belonged to the first class, the “varied peoples” (semu) the second class, the Northern Chinese (hanren) and Koreans the third class, the Southerners (nanren)—the Chinese people of the Southern Song who were conquered by the Mongols last, were in the fourth class.
a new strategy and accomplished a great breakthrough by establishing an unprecedented marriage relationship with the Mongol Yuan royal family.

Mongol princesses marrying into the Koryŏ court changed the relationship between these two countries. The marriages enhanced the political status of the Koryŏ royal court in the Mongol Empire, and as imperial sons-in-law, the Koryŏ kings were entitled to have a say in the political affairs of the Mongol Empire. Previously Korea was only one of the many foreign countries subject to the Mongol Yuan. The relation between them was no more than that between a suzerain and a dependency. After the imperial marriages, the relationship between them became that of relatives. The Koryŏ kings had previously been reluctant to have personal audiences with Yuan emperors. But after the marriages, they were presented almost every year in the Yuan court with the Mongol princesses. King Ch’ungyŏl explained the significance of this activity as follows: “going to have an audience with the emperor is the etiquette of a prince’s pledge of loyalty to the emperor. Paying a visit to her parents is the etiquette of a woman serving her parents.” The Yuan court’s attitude towards the Koryŏ court had also changed dramatically. When King Ch’ungyŏl first visited the Yuan court in 1278 after he married the princess of Yuan, the empress of Yuan sent princes, princesses, and Noble Consorts to the outskirts of the capital to welcome them. Besides the formal meeting with the emperor, Khubilai also instructed him on how to govern his country.

As the emperor’s sons-in-law, the Koryŏ kings generally enjoyed a higher position than others in the Great Mongol Empire. This was indicated by the seating order in the imperial banquet of the Yuan court. In 1294 King Ch’ungyŏl was seated seventh in the imperial banquet of the Yuan court.

---

all the princes’ presence. In 1300 he was seated fourth. The Korean historians regarded this as a “distinctive favor”.

This marriage relationship also provided the opportunity for Korea to be involved in the politics of the Mongol Empire and to exert its influence. One obvious example was that the Koryŏ kings were qualified to take part in the khuriltai to elect a new Mongol khan. King Ch’ungyŏl, for instance, participated in the khuriltai in 1294 and supported Chengzong to ascend the Mongolian throne. He received many favors from Chengzong as reciprocation, “Because of the great contributions and old age of the King (King Ch’ungyŏl), the Emperor (Chengzong) issued an edict allowing the King to ride a small carriage at the gate of the palace.” The Koryŏ king was also titled “peaceful prince” by Chengzong. Later, King Ch’ungsŏn who lived in the Yuan court after he abdicated was again involved in supporting Wuzong Qaishan’s ascent to the throne. Thus, he was entitled the Prince of Shenyang and soon re-ascended the throne of Korea in 1308. Emperor Renzong also appointed King Ch’ungsŏn as the Right Chancellor of the Yuan court in 1313, but he politely declined this offer.

Although husband-wife relationships in the Koryŏ court were rarely harmonious, their effects were basically positive in nature. These marriages helped to maintain a stable relationship between these two states, and on the Korean side, ended almost a half-century of warfare and chaos, permitting a return of some prosperity and population growth. On the Mongol side, marriage was a convenient and practical means to control Korea without debilitating warfare. Its effect was probably more peaceful and effective than conquering wars. With the marriage of Mongol princess Khudulu(gh) Khaimish to the Koryŏ king, Wang Sim, the Yuan court gradually withdrew its troops

---

from Korea. Later the “Regional Commander for Conquering the East” (Zheng dong xing zhongshu sheng) was dismantled. Only when Khudulu (gh) Khaimish died and the Koryŏ king could not control the Korean people did the Yuan court decide to restore the Regional Commander for Conquering the East (led by Kuolijisi) to govern Korea.\(^{504}\)

### Table 9 Princesses of the Yuan Court Married into the Koryŏ Court

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>TITLE</th>
<th>HUSBAND</th>
<th>FATHER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Khudulu(gh)Khaimish 失 nue鲁括里迷失 (mother of Yuan 喜)</td>
<td>Princess Supreme-of-State of Qi 齊國大長公主</td>
<td>Wang Sim 王楫 (忠烈王)</td>
<td>Khubilai Khan (Shizu 世祖)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Botashirin 寶塔實rique 布答 夫里</td>
<td>Princess Supreme-of-State of Ji 荊國大長公主</td>
<td>Wang Wén 王溫 (忠宣王)</td>
<td>Ганнана &amp;王, Prince of Jin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yesujin也曾真 (mother of To 燕)</td>
<td>Uibi懿妃 Good Imperial Concubine</td>
<td>Wang Wén 王溫</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irinjinbala 亦憐真八剌/亦憐只班</td>
<td>Senior Princess-of-State of Pu 蒙國長公主</td>
<td>Wang To 王 tonumber (忠肅王)</td>
<td>Esian-Temur /Yexian-Tiμur 也先帖木兒 (Prince of Ying 燕王, grandson of Khubilai)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jintong 金童 (mother of Yongsan Wŏnja 龍山元子)</td>
<td>Senior Princess-of-State of Cao 曹國長公主</td>
<td>Wang To 王 tonumber (忠肅王)</td>
<td>Amuge 阿木哥 (Prince of Wei, 魏王, Shunzong's son)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bayanhudu 伯顏忽都</td>
<td>Princess Qing-hua 慶華公主</td>
<td>Wang To 王 tonumber (忠肅王)</td>
<td>Amuge 阿木哥 (魏王)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nolun 諾倫</td>
<td>Princess-of-State of ? 国公主</td>
<td>Wang Hao 王好 (磐王)</td>
<td>Songshan 松山 (Prince of Liang 梁王, Môngke Khan’s son)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irinjinbal亦憐真班 (mother of King Ch’unmgog 忠穆王 (昕))</td>
<td>Princess De-ning 德寧公主</td>
<td>Wang Chŏng 王承 (忠惠王)</td>
<td>Jiaoba 焦八 (Prince of Zhen xi wu jing 鎮西武靖王)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Botasirin 寶塔失里</td>
<td>Grand and Senior Princess-of-State of Lu 魯國大長公主</td>
<td>Wang Ki 王琪 (恭愍王)</td>
<td>Amuge 阿木哥 (Prince of Wei 魏王)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Marriage List VII

*Koryŏ Royal Family ➔ Mongol Royal Family*

1. Wang Sim .............................................(1) Khudulugh Kelmish (Hudulujielimish)
2. Wang Wŏn.............................................(2) Botashirin (Baotashilian) (3) Yesujin (Yesuzhen)
3. Wang To.............................................(4) Irinjinbala (Yilianzhenbala)
   (5) Kimdong (Jintong)
   (6) Bayan Khudu (Bayanhudu)
4. Wang Hao..............................................(7) Nolun (Nalun)
5. Wang Chŏng...........................................(8) Irinjinbal (Yilianzhenban)
6. Wang Ki..............................................(9) Botasirin (Botasiri/Baotashili)
CHAPTER SEVEN

"One-Way Marriages": The Imperial Marriages Between the Mongol Royal Family and the Öngüt Tribe

1. HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

According to the Yuanshi, the chief of the Öngüt tribe, Alawusi Tijihuli 阿刺兀思·剔吉忽里 (Alaqush-tikin-quli), was the descendant of the Shatuo-yanmen 沙陀雁鶏; and according to Rashid Al-din, “Alawusi” was his name and “Tijihuli” was his official title. In the Jin dynasty he was entrusted by the Jurgens 女真 to guard the fortresses on the Great Wall. Because the Mongols called the Great Wall Ongou, the Öngüt tribe got this name.

Military and political considerations impelled Chinggis Khan to establish a marriage relationship with the Öngüt tribe. In 1203 Chinggis Khan conquered the Kereit tribe whose west territory was contiguous to the Naiman 乃蠻 tribe. The Taiyang Khan 太陽汗 of the Naiman was afraid of the invasion of the Mongols, therefore he sent an envoy named Yuehunan 月忽南 to persuade Alawusi to jointly attack the Mongols. The Naiman tribe and the Öngüt tribe belonged to the same ethnic group. They were all called “White Tartar” 白達達 (contrary to the Mongols who were called “Black Tartar” 黑達旦) and had a marriage relation between them. However, Alawusi realized that they were not strong enough to defeat Chinggis Khan, so he decided to ignore

506 YS 118: 2923.
508 YS 1:11.
509 MWESJ 36:1. See the biography of Alawusi Tijihuli 阿剌兀思剔吉忽里.
the opposition of his subordinates and submit to Chinggis Khan. He arrested the envoys of Taiyang Khan and ordered Tuor Bitashi 脫兒必塔失 to send them under escort to Chinggis Khan. He also informed Chinggis of the scheme of Taiyang Khan. In addition, he presented six jugs of wine to Chinggis Khan. Chinggis Khan was very pleased and repaid him with five hundred horses and one thousand sheep, and decided to establish an alliance and marriage relationship with him, calling him Anda-huda 安答、忽答。510 Chinggis Khan proposed that Alawusi marry his third daughter Alahai Beki 阿剌海別吉, but Alawusi politely declined, saying that he was too old to marry the princess. Instead he proposed that his elder son Buyanxiban 不顏昔班 marry the princess.511

Alawusi participated in the campaign launched by Chinggis Khan against the Naiman tribe. In 1206, when Chinggis Khan ascended the throne, Alawusi was enfeoffed Battalion Commander to command his own five thousand households.512

In 1211 (the sixth year of Chinggis Khan), when the Mongol troops were going to launch a campaign against Jin, they reorganized in the territory of the Öngüt tribe after a long march. Alawusi led his troops to guide the Mongol troops cross the border. Shortly after, he was ordered by Chinggis Khan to return to govern his own tribe. However, his subordinates, who opposed his cooperation with the Mongols, killed him. According to the Yuarushi, his eldest son Buyanxiban died at the same time. Alahai Beki, Alawusi’s younger son Boyaohe 李要合, and his nephew Zhenguo 鄭國 fled to Jieyuan at night. Then they took refuge in the city of Yunzhong 雲中. When the Mongols captured Yunzhong, Chinggis Khan issued a decree to find them. Since Boyaohe was still young, Alawusi’s nephew Zhenguo was titled “Prince of Beiping” 北平王 and governed the Öngüt tribe. At the same time Zhenguo married his cousin’s widow, Alahai Beki.513

510 Anda”: Sworn brothers; “huda”: relatives by marriage of children.
511 MWESJ 36:2.
512 The Secret History, ch. VIII:142.
513 YS 118: 2924.
2. The Mystery of Alahai Beki

Alahai Beki was a very important woman in the history of the Öngüt tribe. Her married life, however, is very controversial. It has been a mystery regarding both how many men (one, two, three, or even four) she married and when she was initially married into the Öngüt tribe.

The records of Alahai Beki in the Yuanshi are unclear and somewhat misleading. Based on the Yuanshi, it seems that Alahai only married one man, Alawisi’s younger son Boyaohe. But this is definitely wrong. The “Table of Princesses” in the Yuanshi tells us: “Princess Supreme of the state of Zhao 趙國大長公主 Alahai Bieji, the daughter of Taizu, married Boyaohe, the Prince Zhao Wuyi 趙武毅王.” The following is the biography of Alawisi in Yuanshi:

Taizu ordered Alawisi Tilihuli to return home and govern his own tribe. He was killed by his subordinates who formerly objected to him. His elder son Buyanxiban died too. His wife Alihei 阿里黑 took his younger son Boyaohe, together with his nephew Zhenguo, fled from the calamity at night to Jieyuan. They told the guards about the tragedy and climbed to the city up ropes. Then they took refuge in Yunzhong city. When Taizu had pacified Yunzhong, he offered a reward to find them and compensated them generously. Alawusi Tijihuli was posthumously granted the title ‘Prince of Gaotang’ 高唐王. Alihei was granted the title ‘Imperial Concubine of Gaotang’. Because his son Boyaohe was still younger, Taizu first granted the title ‘Prince of Beiping’ to his nephew Zhenguo. When Zhenguo died, his son Niegutai 擎古台 succeeded to the title and married the daughter of Ruizong 奎宗, Princess Dumugan 獨木干. Niegutai died in troops. ...Boyaohe took part in the campaign attacking the Western Regions since his childhood. When he returned, he was conferred the title “Prince of Beiping” and married Princess Alahai 阿剌海 Bieji. Because Boyaohe did not have sons, the princess presented him with concubines to bear offspring, and those bore him three sons.  

The biography of Alawusi Tilihuli in the Yuanshi was based on the inscription of the “Tablet of Imperial sons-in-law, Princes of Gaotang” (Fuma Gaotang Zhongxianwang bei 附馬高唐忠獻王

515 YS 118:2924.
which was written by the Chinese scholar Yan Fu 阮復 during Chengzong's reign (1294-1307). It was written on the request of Shuhunan 行念, the great grandson of Alawusi. This stele inscription intentionally hid the truth about the marriage of Alahai Beki. There are two women’s names in the biography: Alihei and Alahai. But Shuhunan called both of them grandmother (zubi 祖姑). Were they one person or two? It is highly probable that they were the same person, namely, Princess Alahai.

Yuanshi does not state when Alahai Beki first married into the Öngüt tribe. According to The Secret History, it was in 1207 (Year of the Rabbit, Tuer nian 兔年, the second year of Chinggis Khan). But The Secret History does not indicate the man whom Alahai first married. It only says, “He (Chinggis Khan) gave Alaqaï unto the Önggûd.” According to Rashid Al-din, Princess Alahai was born between Ögödei and Tolui. Ögödei died in 1241 (the eleventh month of Xinchou 辛丑) when he was 56. So he was born in 1186. Tolui died in 1231/1232 at the age of forty or so, so he was born in about 1191/1192. Accordingly, Alahai Beki must have been born between 1186 and 1191, and she was between 16 and 21 years old when she was first married into the Öngüt tribe in 1207. Chinggis Khan launched the first westward expedition in 1219 (Jimao 乙卯). Boyaohe went along with the Mongol troops as a child. Seven years later, in 1225 (Yiyou 乙酉), the first Westward expedition ended and Boyaohe returned from the Western Regions when he was 17 years old. He was granted the title “Prince of Beiping” and married Princess Alahai. At that time the princess’s age was between 34 and 39. Obviously, there was a gap of 18 years from 1207 to 1225 when the princess was living in the Öngüt tribe. Who was her husband(s) during that...

---

period? If, as Tu Ji 唐寄 assumed, Alihei and Alahai in the stele inscription of biography of Alawusi in the Yuanshi were actually the same person, then the first man Alahai married must have been Alawusi. One important evidence is that in the name list of ninety-five Battalion Commander’s announced after Chinggis Khan ascended the throne, there was “Alawushi Dijitihuli Küregeń古列堅”521 “küregeń” means “son-in-law” in Mongolian language. If Alawusi did not marry the princess, how could he be called the “son-in-law’ by Chinggis Khan?

A Japanese scholar Naka Michiyo 那珂通世 believes that Alawusi had married Alahai Beki:

She was called Alahe Bieqi in Volume. 10 of the Mongol “Secret History. She had married Alawusi before she married Zhenguo. In vol. 10 of the Secret History it says ‘gave Alahe Bieqi to Wangguti’. She was given to Alawusi. The Alihei Beyin in Mengda Beilu 蒙鞑僉錄 was the different transliteration of Alahe Bieqi. Alihei, the wife of Alawusi in Yuanshi, was actually the Alihei in Beilu 僉錄, as well as the Alahe in the Secret History. Mongols did not avoid remarriage as a taboo, when a father died, his son would marry his stepmother; when an elder brother died, his younger brother would marry his sister-in-law. Originally Xiongnu 匈奴, Tujue 突厥 and the tribes in the north of the Great Wall all had such a custom. Boyaohe was probably born by Alawushi’s ex-wife. When Alawushi was killed, Boyaohe was still young. Therefore Alahe remarried his husband’s nephew Zhenguo. After Zhenguo died, Boyaohe returned home, and married Alahai according to the custom that a son should marry his stepmother. In Yan Fu’s “Fuma Gaotang Wang Kuolijisi Bei” the ‘great grandmother’ and ‘grandmother’ were actually the same person, but it called Alawushi’s wife great grandmother Alihei, while called Boyaohe’s wife great grandaunt 曾祖姑 Alahai Bieji. It seemed that they were two persons. And it did not state the background of Alihei. The biography in the Yuanshi was copied completely from the stele inscription. Therefore the historians who wrote the biography in the early Ming dynasty did not know that Alihei was actually Alahai.522

Did Buyanxiban marry the princess? Naka Michiyo does not believe that Buyanxiban married Alahai Bieji, his reason is the following, “Although it was the Mongolian custom that a son should marry his stepmother after his father died. Buyanxiban and his father died at the same time, thus he should not have married his stepmother when his father was still alive.”523 If the father and son really died at the same time, then only one of them could have married the princess.

520 Morris Rossabi, “Khubilai and the Women in his Family”.
However, Zhou Qingshu 周清澍 has provided evidence showing that Alawusi and Buyanxiban actually did not die in the same year, "It was in 1204 when the Öngüt tribe established friendship with Chenggis Khan when they conquered the Naimans. It could have been only after this year that Alahai Beki married Alawusi. While Alawusi died in 1207. Then the time was very short after they got married. Therefore she remarried Buyanxiban soon after she went to the Öngüt tribe. Buyanxiban died in 1211 soon after Chinggis Khan’s first attack on the Jin." ①

Zhao Gong 趙珙 in the Southern Song dynasty recorded in Mengda beilu 蒙鞑備錄 ② that "The Emperor Chinggis has seven daughters, the second princess is called Alihe Beyin, normally called Madam Biji 必姬夫人, who had married Baisibu 白四部, the deceased subject of the Jin. She is in widowhood presently since her husband died, and has been in charge of the state affairs of the White Tartar." ③ According to Tu Ji 屠寄, Alihei was actually Alahai, Baisibu was the different transliteration of Buyanxiban. ④ Peng Daya 彭大雅 and Xu Ting 徐霆 in the Southern Song dynasty also recorded in Heida shi lue 黑鞑事略 ⑤ that "Baisima 白厮馬 is also called Baisibu 白厮卜, who is the puppet prince of the White Tartar, the son-in-law of Temuzhen 忒末真, the ex-husband of the puppet princess Alahan 阿剌罕." According to Tu Ji, Baisima is the shortened form of Buyanxiban fuma 不顏昔班附馬. In 1221 (xinsi 卞巳) Zhao Gong went to Mongolia, accompanying the envoy of the Southern Song, and wrote the Meng Da Bei Lu. At that time Buyanxiban and Zhenguo both died, and Boyaohe was still in the Western Regions. Alahai was in

---


② Zhao Gong 趙珙, Mengda beilu 蒙鞑備錄. Zhao Gong went to Mongolia as an envoy of the Southern Song in 1221 and met the King Muqali who was commanding the Mongol troops to attack the Jin. Zhao Gong recorded what he observed and heard in this book.

③ Zhao Gong 趙珙, Mengda beilu 蒙鞑備錄, in Shu fu 説郛, yuan 54.

④ MWESJ 36:2. Also see YS 118:2924.

⑤ [Song] Peng Daya 彭大雅, Heida shilue 黑鞑事略, annotated by Xu Ting 徐霆. Peng Daya went to Mongolia in 1232 while Xu Ting was in Mongolia during 1235-36 accompanying the Song envoys. Peng Daya was a “Record Writing Officer” 書狀官. He first wrote a manuscript. When Xu Ting returned, he wrote down what he observed and heard in the same book, using Peng Daya’s records as the original text and his records as the annotations.
widowhood and read Buddhist sutras everyday. Peng Daya travelled to Mongolia in 1232. Xu Ting went to Mongolia around 1235. At that time about ten years had passed after Alahai Beki remarried Boyaohe.

There remains no record of the remarriage of Alahai Beki with Zhenguo in such primary Chinese sources. It is found in Rashid al-Din’s Jami’al-Tavarikh that: “When Zhenguo came, he served Chinggis Khan. Chinggis Khan granted his daughter Alahai Beki to him. She was younger than Ögödei Khan and older than Yeke Nayan (Tolui). Hereafter she was called Alahai Beki. Alahai Beki bore a son with Zhenguo named Niegudai.”

Based on the records in Rashid al-Din’s book Hong Jun 洪駿 concluded:

After a careful investigation and inference, it must have been that the princess first married Zhenguo. After her husband died, she was in charge of the affairs of the Öngüt tribe. Later her husband’s younger brother returned from the Western Regions, and married the princess. Zhenguo’s son Niegutai was born by the princess, while Boyaohe’s three sons were born by the concubines presented by the princess.

The marriage of Alahai Beki still needs future resolving investigations. I am inclined to believe that Alahai Beki first married Alawusi Tijihuli in 1207, but Alawusi was killed in the same year. Then Alahai Beki remarried Buyanxiban. When Buyanxiban died in 1211 she remarried Zhenguo. Zhenguo died some time before 1221 since Zhao Gong said that Alahai Beki was in widowhood when he went to Mongolia. She remarried Boyaohe around 1225 when the latter returned with the Mongol troops from the Western Regions.

Alahai Beki played a very important role in the government of the early period of the Mongol Empire. She was generally called “Regent Princess 監國公主” in Chinese sources. Her authority was not limited to the domain of the Öngüt tribe, but also to the northern China. For instance, she

---

529 Shi ji 史集, vol. 1a: 231.
530 YSYWZB 3:131.
had the authority to appoint the Regional Commander of the Middle Capital 中都 531 and Hebei province.532

3. THE OTHER ÖNGÜT MEN MARRIED MONGOL PRINCESSES

Boyaohe had three sons. They were Junbuhua 君不花, Aibuhua 爱不花, and Zhuolibuhua 扯里不花.

Junbuhua married the daughter of Güyük, Princess Yelimish 葉里迷失. He participated in the campaign against the Southern Song at Diaoyushan in Sichuan under the command of Möngke Khan.533 Junbuhua was granted the title of Zhongxiang 忠襄 posthumously. He had three sons: Nangjiatai 靡家台, Qiaolincha 威霽察, and Antong 安童.

Nangjiatai married Princess Yilanzhen 亦懐真, and was granted the title of “Prince of Zhonglie 忠烈王”. Nangjiatzen’s son Mazhahan 马扎罕 married Princess Sanggebala 桑哥八刺 and was granted the title of “Prince of Zhao 趙王” in 1323 (the first year of Taiding). Junbuhua’s second son Qiaolincha married Princess Huihe 回纥, the daughter of prince Azhiji 阿只吉 (great grandson of Chaghadai 察合台), and was posthumously titled “Prince Zhao Kangxi 趙康禧王”.534

Boyaohe’s second son Aibuhua married Princess Yuelie 月烈, the daughter of Khubilai Khan. He participated in the campaign against Arigh Böke and defeated the rebellious general Kuobuhua

---

531 YS 153:3612. See the biography of Wang Ji 王槻. “In the year of wuzi 戊子 (1228), as ordered by the Regent Princess, [Wang Ji] became the Regional Commander of the Middle Capital.”
532 In 1974 the archaeologists of Inner Mongolia discovered a official seal with fourteen characters--- 監國公主行宣差河北都總管之印. see Ding Xueyun, “Jianguo gongzhu tongyin kaoshi” 監國公主銅印考釋. In Zhongguo Menggushi xuehui chengli dahui jinian jikan 中国蒙古史学会成立大会纪念集刊.
534 XYS 115:524.
In 1263 (the third year of the Zhongtong era), Aibuhua took part in the campaign against Li Tan, who rebelled in Ji’nan during Kubilai’s reign. Later he led his troops to conquer the rebel princes in the northwest under the command of the chancellor Boyan, and defeated the rebellious general Saliman.

Although Aibuhua was the second son, probably because he married the daughter of Kubialii Khan, he was the actual representative of the Öngüt tribe during Kubilai’s reign.

Boyaohe’s third son Zhuolibuhua was the governor of Yunnan and died there. His son Huosidan married Princess Zhuhuzhen, the daughter of Prince Buluochu (Ögödei’s great-grandson).

Aibuhua’s four sons were all born by Princess Yuelie. They were Kuolijisi, Yexian-Haimishi, Shuhunan, and Alibadai. After Aibuhua died, his elder son Kuolijisi inherited the official title. Kuolijisi was highly sinicized. He was especially interested in Confucianism, and built a library named “WanYuan Tang” in his mansion, frequently discussing scholarship with Confucian scholars. He even built a temple for Confucius in the garrisoned north frontier. Kuolijisi married Princess Hudadiemishi, the daughter of Jin Gim (son of Kubilai Khan). After Hudadiemishi died, he remarried Princess Aiyashili, the daughter of Chengzong (Tiemuer Khan). When Prince Yebugan revolted in 1287 (the twenty-fourth year of the Zhiyuan era), Kuolijisi led about one thousand mounted troops to punish them. In a battle, however, he was wounded by three arrows. When his army returned in triumph, Kuolijisi was awarded three jin of gold and one thousand and five hundred jin of white gold (baijin). When Tiemuer Khan ascended the throne, Kuolijisi was titled “Prince of Gaotang”, together with a gold seal. When the rebel

---

535 YS 118:2924-5.
princes Khaidu and Du’a harassed the north frontiers, Kuolijisi asked the emperor for a battle assignment, and swore on departure, “If I cannot pacify the northwest my horse will never head south.” In the first battle in 1297 his troops inflicted a crushing defeat on the enemy. The emperor Chengzong issued a decree to grant him the marten coat and treasured saddle that had been used by Khubilai Khan, together with seven hundred bolts of brocade, as well as various weapons. Unfortunately, in a battle in the following year, Kuolijisi and his six thousand troops was defeated by Du’a’s army and Kuolijisi was captured. The enemy tried to force him to marry a girl, but he said, “I am the son-in-law of the emperor. How can I remarry without the permission of the Khan and the empress?”

The Yuan court was shocked by the capture of Kuolijisi, and it immediately sent troops to rescue him. Later it tried to use the son-in-law of Du’a, who was captured by the Yuan army, for exchange with Kuolijisi. But Kuolijisi was eventually killed by the enemy. In 1305 (the ninth year of the Dade era) he was posthumously titled “Zhongxian 忠獻”. His wife, Princess Hudadiemish was posthumously titled “Senior Princess of the State of Qi 齊國長公主”. Aiyashili was granted the title of “Princess of the State of Qi 齊國公主”. Because his son Shu’an 衙安 was still young, his younger brother Shuhunan inherited the title of “Prince of Gaotang”. Shuhunan married Princess Yemian’ganzhen 葉綿干真, the daughter of Prince Wuludai 元魯歹, the Prince of Hejian, the second son of Kuoliejian 闊列堅. When Yemian’ganzhen died, he remarried Princess Ashituluhu 阿實秃忽魯, the daughter of Prince Nailabuhua 奈剌不花. In 1308 (the first year of the Zhida era) Shuhunan was further granted the title of “Prince of Zhao 趙王”. In the same year he returned the title to Shu’an. Shu’an then married Princess Aladinabala

PiS*

the daughter of

However, the basic annals of Yingzong in the

Yuanshi records that in 1322 (the second year of Zhizhi 至治), “Princess Alatenabala was going to marry down, [Yingzong] granted her a half million guans of money.” 541 Chen Yuan 陳垣 claimed that it was the remarriage of the princess. She did give birth to children with Shu’an. 542

Kuolijisi’s younger brother Alibadai married Princess Nulun 奴倫, the daughter of Wangze 完澤, Prince of Wei, son of Yulongdashi and grandson of Möngke Khan. 543

Rashid Al-din records that Alahai Beki and Zhenguo had a son named Ankudai who married the daughter of Tolui. 544 This son’s name in the Yuanshi is Niegutai 聂古台, who married Princess Dumugan 獨木干, the daughter of Tolui, and inherited the title “Prince of Beiping”, and was posthumously titled “Prince of Yu 鄂王”. 545 Because he did not have a son, he designated Shuhunan as his successor. When Shuhunan returned the title of “Prince of Zhao” to Shu’an, he inherited the title of “Prince of Yu”. Shuhunan was posthumously granted “Zhongxiang 忠襄”.

Princess Dumugan was probably another powerful woman in the history of the Öngüt tribe. An inscription on a tablet in the name of a Buddhist Monk, a description of her is recorded. “In the year renzi 壬子 (1252)...on the fifteenth day of the sixth month of this year, Princess Dumogun 獨木干, the daughter of Taizu, who had great influence in the court and the commonalty, and who was widely known for her military prowess, respected our master’s moral integrity, and therefore

539 Kuoliejian 閘列堅 was the sixth son of Chinggis Khan.
541 YS 28:619.
543 YS 107:2723. See the Table of Princes.
544 Shiji, vol. 1a:231.
545 YS 109:2758. See the Table of Princesses, “Prince Dumugan, the daughter of Ruizong 神宗, married Prince of Yu 鄂王 Niegudai 聂古歹 who was the younger brother of Baiha 拜哈.” This statement is wrong. Baiha is the different transliteration of Boyaohe, who was the uncle of Niegutai, not his elder brother. According to Rashid Al-din, Princess Dumugan’s age was between Möngke Khan and Hülegü Khan. Rashid wrote “Niegudai” as “Aukudai”. See Shiji 史集, vol. 1a:231.
granted him a title of “fo ri yuan zhao”. The year 1252 was the second year of Mongke Khan’s reign. As the younger sister of the Khan, she may have been the governor of the Öngüt tribe during this period because her husband had died in the war while conquering the Southern Song.

In addition, the basic annals of Renzong and the Table of Princes in Yuanshi records a person named Alutu 胡鲁秃 who was titled Prince of Zhao in 1314, and, according to the studies of Zhou Qingshu, he married Princess of Zhao, Jilashisi.

The people of the Öngüt tribe believed in Nestorianism. New archeological discoveries have provided enough information to support this viewpoint. The leaders of the Öngüt tribe were the representatives of Nestorians. For example, Kuolijisi, Prince of Zhao, was perhaps the most important religious figure in the history of Öngüt tribe. Initially he believed in Nestorianism, but later he was converted to Catholicism. Pope Nicholas IV sent a bishop to China named John Mengde-Gaoweinu who lived in the Öngüt tribe for a long time and had an intimate relationship with Kuolijisi. He wrote,

“There is a prince named George (Kolijsi) here..., previously he believed in Nestorianism. One year after I came here, we became very close, and he followed my words and was converted to the orthodox religion, namely, Catholicism, and he was among the monks. ...therefore, the Nestorian sect criticized him for abandoning his belief. The king led his people to be converted to the orthodox religion, and donated money to build a church... When King George died, he left one son who was still an infant. But now he has been already nine years old. When King George died, his younger brothers mistakenly believed in the heresy of Nestorianism, and again led astray the people who were converted to the orthodox religion when the king was alive. The son of King George, John (chn. Shu’an 行安), probably used my name as his name. I pray the Lord to let him follow his father.”

This reveals that there existed religious struggles between these two sects, and Nestorianism was still the principal religion of this tribe.

547 YS 108:2740. 25:564.
548 Nestorianism was called Jingjiao 景教 or Yelikewen 也里可温 in the Yuan dynasty. See Zheng Mao 正茂, “Yuandai Wanggubu Jidujiao qiantan” 元代汪古部基督教淺談, Neimeng sheke, 6 (1993): 82-6.
Kuolijisi’s younger sister was also a devout Nestorian. She wrote the Gospels in the Syrian language. Kuolijisi’s father Aibuhua and uncle Junbuhua were also ardent Christians. Junbuhua financially supported Lieban Saoma and Markesi for their pilgrimage to Jerusalem. The Mongol rulers pursued a policy of freedom of belief, and because of their marriage relationship with the Öngüt tribe they gave preferential treatment to the Nestorians, and built many churches amongst the Öngüt tribe.

**TABLE 10 Princesses of the Yuan Court Married into the Öngüt Tribe**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRINCESS</th>
<th>TITLE</th>
<th>HUSBAND</th>
<th>FATHER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alahai-Bieji [Alaqai-begi] 阿剌海别吉</td>
<td>Princess Supreme-of-State of Zhao 超國大長公主</td>
<td>First Alawusi Tijihule阿剌兀思·剔吉忽裡</td>
<td>Chinggis Khan (Taizu 太祖)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dumugan/Tunügen 獨木干</td>
<td>First Niegutai 聚古台 (Prince of Yu 落王, son of Zhenguo), then Chahu 察忽</td>
<td>Güyük Khan (Dingzong 定宗)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yelimishi/Yelmish 萧里迷失</td>
<td>Junbuhua君不花 (Prince of Zhong Xiang 忠襄王, son of Boyaohe)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yuelie/ Yüre(k) 月烈</td>
<td>Aibuhua愛不花 (son of Boyaohe)</td>
<td>Khubilai Khan (Shizu 世祖)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yilianzhen 亦懌真</td>
<td>Princess Supreme-of-State of Zhao 超國大長公主</td>
<td>Nangjitaizi 聚家台 (Prince of Zhong Lie 忠烈王, son of Junbuhua)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huihe/Uyhr 回纥</td>
<td>Princess Supreme-of-State of Zhao 超國大長公主</td>
<td>Qiaolincha 齊禮察 (son of Junbuhua)</td>
<td>Azhiji 阿只吉</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hudadiemish 沐答達迷失/Qudadimish 沐答達迷失</td>
<td>Princess Supreme-of-State of Zhao 超國大長公主</td>
<td>Kuolijisi 閔里吉思 (Prince of Zhong Xian 忠獻王, son of Aibuhua)</td>
<td>Jin Gim 齊金 (Yuzong 裕宗)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aiyashili/Aiyashiri 爱牙失里</td>
<td>Princess Supreme-of-State of Zhao 超國大長公主</td>
<td>Kuolijisi 閔里吉思</td>
<td>Temür Öljéitü (Chengzong 成宗)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nulun /奴倫</td>
<td>Untitled Princess</td>
<td>Alibadai 阿里八歹 (the third son of Aibuhua)</td>
<td>Wan Ze 完澤 (衛王, Prince of Wei, son of Yulongdashi)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

According to Rashid al-din, some Öngüt women were married into the imperial family of the Yuan. But this is an exception. None of them became empresses of the Yuan. These were very different cases from those of the Onggirat and Ikires tribes. But it is similar to those situations of the Uighur tribe and Korean court. Their chiefs could marry the princesses of the Yuan, but the Yuan emperors did not marry their daughters.

TABLE 11 The princely Concubines of the Yuan Imperial Family from the Öngüt Tribe

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>TITLE</th>
<th>HUSBAND</th>
<th>FATHER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Haimishi</td>
<td>Imperial Consort</td>
<td>Abaha (Ill-Khan, grandson of Tolui)</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>海迷失</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bizhaxia 552</td>
<td>Imperial Consort</td>
<td>Ganmala 甘麻利</td>
<td>Aibuhua</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

551 One character in this princess's name is missing in the Yuanshi.
Marriage List VIII

Öngüt Tribe → Mongol Royal Family

1. Alawusı Tijihuli .................................. (1) Alahai Bieji
2. Buyanxiban ........................................ (1) Alahai Bieji
3. Zhenguo ........................................... (1) Alahai Bieji
4. Boyaohe ............................................ (1) Alahai Bieji
5. Niequtai ............................................. (2) Dumugan
6. Aibuhua ............................................. (3) Yuelie
7. Junbuhua ........................................... (4) Yelimish
8. Kuolijisi ............................................ (5) Hudadiemish (6) Aiyashili
9. Nangjiatai .......................................... (7) Yilianzhen
10. Qiaolincha ........................................ (8) Huihe
11. Shuhunan .......................................... (9) Ashituluhu (10) Yemian’ganzhen
12. Mazhahan .......................................... (11) Sanggebala (12) nan
13. Huosidan .......................................... (13) Zhuhuzhen
14. Alibadai ............................................ (14) Nulun
15. Shuan ................................................ (15) Aladinabala
16. Alahuda ............................................. (16) Jilashisi

Marriage List IX

Mongol Royal Family → Öngüt Tribe

1. Abaha ............................................... Haimish (1)
2. Ganmala ............................................. Bizhaxia (2)
3. Antanbuhua ........................................ Yeliwan (3)
4. Yebugan ............................................ Hudulu (4)

---

552 Yan Fu’s “Fuma Gaotang Zhongxianwang bei” states that “Wuxiang 武襄 (Aibuhua 爱不花) had three daughters: Bizhaxia was the concubine of the Prince of Jin.”
553 Yan Fu’s “Fuma Gaotang Zhongxianwang bei” states that Aibuhua’s third daughter “Hudulu was the Noble Consort of Yebugan也不干，the Prince of Hejian 河間王.” Yebugan was the son of Wuludai 步魯歹 (Prince of Hejian) whose daughter was Yemianganzhen 葉梅干貞, the former wife of Shuhunan. Although the Öngüt tribe had marriage relationship with ‘Prince of Hejian’, Kuolijisi’s first expedition punishing the rebelled prince in 1287 (the twenty-fourth year of Zhiyuan) was against the Prince of Hejian Yebugan.
Chapter Eight

"One-way Marriages": The Imperial Marriages between the Mongol Royal Clan and the Uighur Idug-qut’s Clan

The Uighur people in the Yuan dynasty were formerly called Huihe 会和 in the Tang dynasty. After they were defeated by the Tang, one section of the Huihe people fled to Xizhou 西州, and thus was called Xizhou Huihe. Xizhou was also called Hezhou 和州 during the Song, Liao and Jin dynasties. Therefore they were also called Hezhou Huihe. The ruler of the Uighurs was not called Khan, but Idug-qut, which means “lord of fortune.”

The Uighur Idug-qut Barchukh Art Tegin 巴而衝阿而忒的斤 was previously the subject of West Liao (Xi Liao 西遼) established by the Khitans. In 1209 (the fourth year of Taizu, the jisi 己巳 year) he had the supervisors of Khitan killed because they extorted excessive taxes and levies and decided to submit to the Mongols for protection. It just happened then that Chinggis Khan’s envoys arrived at his state. The Idug-qut was delighted that things were better than he expected, and he immediately sent envoys to the Mongols to express his willingness to acknowledge allegiance to Chinggis Khan. “As soon as I heard of your emperor’s awesome power and character, I immediately abandoned the old friendly relationship with the Khitans and was going to express my allegiance to you. I did not expect that Your Majesty’s envoy would come to my humble country. From now on, I am willing to lead my people to be your subjects.”

554 World Conquer, Vol. I, p. 44.
555 YS 122: 1321. See the biography of Barchukh Art Tegin. 元史·列傳·巴而衝阿而忒的斤, Guofang Yanjiu Yuan, Zhonghua Dadian Bianyin Hui. 1966.
Soon Idug-qut received an opportunity to show his loyalty to the Mongols. In 1208 Chinggis Khan defeated the Merkit tribe and killed Tuohetuoa 脫黑脫阿. Tuohetuoa’s son Hutu 忽秃 led the remains of his routed army to the Uighur territory to seek refuge. The Iduq-qut rebuffed them and killed the envoy. Following a fierce engagement, the Uigurs successfully drove them off. Then he sent his chancellor to report the victory to the Mongols. Chinggis Khan also sent another envoy to him, inviting him to Mongolia where he was to meet him.556

In the spring of 1211 (the sixth year of Taizu, Xinwei 辛未 year), when Chinggis Khan returned from the campaign against Jin and was living in his temporary palace at the Kerulen River, the Idug-qut Barchukh Art Tegin personally had an audience with Chinggis Khan and presented him with jewelry and gold. He asked Chinggis Khan to adopt him as his “fifth son”: “If Your Majesty could bestow your favors to me and put me in the place after your four sons, I would do my best to serve you.”557 Chinggis Khan was impressed by his words and betrothed princess Yeli Andun 也立安敦 (Al Altun) to him and counted him as his adopted son. According to Rashid Al-din, the wedding never took place because of the death of Chinggis Khan.558 However, elsewhere, Rashid Al-din mentions that it was because of the jealousy of his wife that Barchukh Art Tegin did not marry the Mongol princess.559 So it appears that Barchukh Art Tegin did not marry the princess after all.

When Ögödei Khan ascended the throne, he planned to marry the betrothed princess to Barchukh Art Tegin. But unfortunately, she died soon after.560 Juvaini’s record is similar to this:

In recognition of these praiseworthy services Chinggiz-Khan distinguished him with extraordinary attentions and favours; and betrothed his own daughters to him. Owing to the death of Chinggiz-

556 XYS 115:524.
557 YS 122: 1321. See the biography of Barchukh Art Tegin.
559 Shi Ji 史集, vol. 1b: 92.
Khan this daughter remained behind; and he returned to Besh-Baiigh. When Qa’an ascended the throne, in fulfillment of his father’s command he betrothed Altun Beki upon him, but he had not yet arrived at Court when she died. After sometime Qa’an betrothed Alajin Beki to him, but before she was delivered up to him the idi-qut was no more. His son Kesmes then presented himself at court, became idi-qut and married Alajin Beki. After a short space the idi-qut Kesmes passed away; and at the command of Queen Toregene his brother Salindi took his place and was called idi-qut.

Based on the accounts of Rashid Al-din and Juvaini, there were two Mongol princesses who were betrothed to Barchukh Art Tegin, but none of them actually married him. According to The Secret History, however, Princess Al Altun did marry Barchukh Art Tegin: “Chinggis Khan favoured the idu’ud and gave [unto him] Al Altun.” In the table of imperial princess of the Yuanshi, it states that the Mongol princess married the Uighur ruler, “Princess Yeli-Andun, the daughter of Taizu, married Yidu-hu Barshu-Artedijin.” Chinese sources do not mention Ögödei Khan betrothed Alajin Beki to Barchukh Art Tegin.

Barchukh Art Tegin led his ten thousand troops to join the campaigns undertaken by Mongol troops. From then on the territory of the Uighur was under the rule of the Mongols for nearly a century.

When Barchukh Art Tegin died in the early year of Ögödei’s reign (1229-1241), his eldest son Qieshi-maiyin succeeded to the title of Idug-qut. Qieshi-maiyin married the daughter of Ögödei Khan, Alajin Beki. When Qieshi-maiyin died in the regency of Namazhen-shi (1241-1245), his younger brother Salun-dijin inherited his title.

Salundijin was involved in the political struggle of the Mongol court between Ögödei’s line and Tolui’s line. He was designated as Idug-qut by Töregene Khatun, the widow of Ögödei Khan. The territory of the Uighur tribe bordered on the territories of the descendants of Ögödei

---

561 Ögödei Khan.
563 The Secret History, p. 172.
564 YS 109:2757. See the Table of Princesses.
565 Shiji 史集, vol. 1a:244.
Khan. And probably for these reasons, Salundijin fully supported the Ögödei’s line in the struggles for the khanate. This political choice, unfortunately, resulted in fatal disaster. Ögödei’s line was defeated by the line of Tolui in the political struggle and the khanate was finally transferred to Tolui’s line.

According to the *Xin Yuanshi*, when Möngke ascended the throne in 1251, Salun-dijin went to the Yuan court to pay respects to the new emperor. At that time there was a rumor spreading in his state that Salundijin, a Buddhist, was going to kill all the people who believed in the religion of Tianfang 天方教(Islam) in the Besh-Baligh 别失八里 area. His servant brought a charge against him. The Mongol official who supervised Besh-Baligh requested that Salun-dijin return to refute the rumor. Möngke ordered Manggesar 忙哥撒儿 to investigate. Salundijin was declared guilty under torture and upon false evidence and was killed. His younger brother Yuguluchi-dijin 玉古倫赤的今 was ordered to replace him. ⁵⁶⁶

But things might not be so simple. It’s highly probable that Salun-dijin was a victim of the internal political struggles of the Mongol court. *Xin Yuanshi* emphasized that “Xianzong hated the descendants of Taizong. Because of this event, all the old people of Taizong in Uighur were driven away.” ⁵⁶⁷ When Yu Ji 虞集 wrote inscription of the Tablet Inscription of Prince of the State of Gaochang (Gaochangwang shixun bei 高昌王世勳碑), he hid the true story and said that when Barchukh Art Tegin died, his son Yugulunchi-dijin succeeded to the title of Idug-qut, ⁵⁶⁸ and the *Yuanshi* completely copied Yu Ji’s records. Tu Ji’s *Mengwur shiji* has also corrected this mistake. ⁵⁶⁹

---

⁵⁶⁶ XYS 115:524-5.
⁵⁶⁷ YS 122:1322. See the biography of “Barchukh Art Tegin”.
⁵⁶⁹ MWESJ 蒙文史記, Vol. 36.
The truth is that when Giiyiik Khan died in 1246, the Uighur people supported the descendants of Ögödei in their claim to the throne and went against the descendents of Tolui. As ordered by Ohul Qhaimish, the widow of Giiyük, Salun-dijin organized a force of fifty thousand soldiers to support Shiremün, the grandson of Ögödei. Therefore, when Möngke Khan ascended the throne he immediately started to take revenge on the Uighur people. Salun-dijin was arrested and taken to the Mongol capital to receive arrogation and was then killed by his own younger brother Yugulunchi at Besh-Baligh, the capital of the Uighur capital, together with many other Uighur nobles. Yugulunchi, who was loyal to Möngke Khan, became the idud-qut.

When Yugulunchi-dijin died, his son Mamula-dijin succeeded to the title of Idug-qut. Mamula-dijin led ten thousand soldiers of the Tammachi troops, under the command of Möngke Khan, attacked Hezhou 合州 and Diaoyu Mountain 釣魚山 of the Southern Song. But he died soon after in Huozhou 火州. His son Huochihar-dijin succeeded to the title of Idug-qut in 1266.

During Huochihar’s reign, the Uighur people suffered greatly in warfare. From 1272 to 1275, the rebellious prince Khaitu, the grandson of Ögödei, and Du’a, the great grandson of Chaghatai, frequently invaded Uighur lands. In 1275, after having defeated the Yuan troops commanded by Azhiji and Auluzhi, Du’a and Busiba led one hundred and twenty thousand troops to encircle Huozhou. At that time, Khubilai was occupied in conquering the Southern Song and was unable to send troops to lift the siege on Uighur people. Du’a and Busiba threatened the Idug-qut, “Azhiji, Auluzhi and many other princes even with three hundred thousand troops could not resist me, and they were defeated. Can your isolated city resist my attack?” The Idug-qut

---

570 World Conqueror, Part One, VI, p. 48.
571 Tu Ji, MWESJ, Vol. 36.
572 YS 122:1322.
replied, “I know that a loyal subject never serves two masters. I take this city as my home when I am alive and will take it as my tomb when I die. I shall never submit to you.”

The city was encircled for six months but was not captured. Finally Du’a wrote a letter to Huochihar-dijin, tied it on an arrow, and shot it into the city. The letter read, “I am also the descendent of the emperor Taizu. Why do you not submit to me? Your great-grandfather has married the princess. If you give your daughter to me, I will stop the attack. Otherwise, I will launch an all-out offensive.” At that time, the city had run out of food, so the Idug-qut decided to comply with Du’a’s request. But he did not want to meet Du’a personally. Therefore he put his daughter, Princess Yeliyheimishi Beki 也立亦黒迷失別吉, into a basket padded with thick mats and sent her down the city wall. Then Du’a withdrew his troops.

Under the threat of the powerful rebel Mongol princes from the north-west, Khubilai was determined to strengthen defense capabilities in the Uighur area. In order to win the support of the Uighur Idug-qut, Khubilai greatly enhanced the political position of the Idug-qut. In 1270, as Khubilai had told the Korean king Wang Sik 王植:

You [the Korean monarch] submitted later, therefore [you] are ranked low among the princes (wang 王). During the reign of our Taizu [Chinggis Khan] the Idug-qut was the first to submit, accordingly it was ordered that he be ranked first among the princes. Arslan next submitted, therefore he was ranked below him [the Idug qut]. You should know this.

Khubilai told other Mongol princes that they should treat the Idug-qut as a member of the Mongol royal family with the courtesy of brothers. In addition, Khubilai resumed the marriage relationship with the Idug-qut which was suspend for nearly thirty years since Yeli Andun Beki was married into the Idug-qut’s family. When Huochihar arrived at the Yuan court, he was praised and

---

573 YS 122:1322
574 YS 122:1322.
575 YS 7:128.
was given a handsome reward by Khubilai Khan. In the mean time he married Princess Baba Har巴巴哈儿, the daughter of Güyük. In addition, Khubilai granted him one hundred thousand ding of money to save his people.

Although Huochihar was favoured by the Yuan court, he was in a predicament in the following years. He died later (around 1285) in a battle with the enemy from the north.

Huochihar-dijin had three sons: Niulin-dijin 綿林的斤, Qinchatai 钦察台, and Xuexuedijin 雪雪的斤. When Huochihar-dijin died, his eldest son Niulin-dijin was still young, but he went to the Yuan court and requested that the emperor allow him to lead a troop to launch a northward expedition to avenge his father. The emperor was impressed by his ambitions, so he granted him ten thousand gold coins, and married him to Princess Bulughan 不鲁罕, who was the granddaughter of Ögödei. Later after Bulughan died he remarried her younger sister Babucha 八不叉. When Tuosima 脫思麻 of the Tufan 土番577 rebelled, the emperor issued an imperial edict to grant Niulin-dijin the titles of Great Officer of Eminent Dignity (Ronglu-Dafu), and director of political affairs (Pingzhang-Zhengshi), and ordered him to lead ten thousand Tammachi troops of his own state to garrison Tufan. In 1308, he was ordered by Khashan 海山 (Wuzong, r. 1307-1311) to return to his own state to succeed to the title of Idug-qut and was granted a gold seal. Later Renzong granted him the title of Prince of Gaochang with an additional gold seal. When Princess Babucha died, he remarried Princess Wulazhen 元剌真, who was the daughter of Prince of Anxi.

During Temür öljietö’s reign (Chengzong, r. 1295-1307), the Yuan court had actually lost the control of the Uighur territories. The central part of Uighur state, including Besh-Balig and Huozhou, had been occupied by the Chaghatai ulus. Niulindijin set up his government-in-exile in Yongchang 永昌 in Gansu. Niulin-dijin died in 1318 (the fifth year of the Yanyou 延祐 era).

---

577 Tibetans in present Qinghai and Gansu provinces.
Niulin-dijin had three sons. The eldest son Tiemuer-buhua and the second son Jianji were born by Princess Babucha. The youngest son was Taipingnu, whose mother is unknown. In the Dade era (1297-1307), Tiemuer-buhua married Princess Duorzhisiman, the granddaughter of the Crown prince Kuoduan. Tiemuer Buhua had been living in the Yuan court since the Zhida era (1308-1311) as imperial guard, and served the empress dowager Daji. He was granted a title of Great Officer in Palace Attendance (zhongfeng dafu 中奉大夫), and was in charge of the security affairs of the Yuan capital, Dadu. Later he was promoted to the position of Great Officer Endowed with Goodness (zishan dafu 賢善大夫), and took up the post of General Darughachi 都總帥達魯花赤 in Gongchang.

When Niulin-dijin died, Tiemuer-buhua returned to Yongchang, and tried to resign the right of succession of the title of Prince of Gaochang to his uncle Qinchatai but was unsuccessful. Therefore he succeeded to the titles of Idug-qut and Prince of Gaochang. In the Zhizhi era (1321-1323), he was in charge of the troops in Gansu 甘肅 and in his own state. In the Taiding era (1324-1327), he was ordered to return to the Yuan court.

Tiemuer Buhua was a highly sinicized Uighur Idug-qut. He was deeply involved in the political life of the Yuan dynasty and played an important role. His political career reached the apex during Wenzong’s reign, when he became the Chancellor of the Yuan court.

During the reign of Emperor Taiding, Tiemuer Buhua was ordered to garrison Xiangyang. Soon he was granted the titles of Commander Unequalled in Honour (kaifu yitong sansi 開府儀同三司) and director of political affairs of the Hu-Guang (湖廣平章政事). During this period he established a close relationship with Tuq Temür, Prince of Huai 懷王 (Wenzong 文宗).

---

578 YS 122:1322. The biography of Barchukh Art Tegin states that Barchukh Art Tegin had two sons who were all born by Princess Babucha. But XYS states that he had three sons but it does not say who was their mother. See XYS, Guofang Yanjiu Yuan, Zhonghua Dadian Bianyin Hui. (1966): 1323.

579 YS 122:3002.
In 1328 (the first Year of Zhihe 致和, the first year of the Tianli era in Wenzong’s reign), Tuq Temür went to the capital from Jiangling 江陵 to claim the throne. He invited Tiemuer Buhua to go together with him to the capital and help him to deal with the internal disorders of the Yuan court. As the director of the Department of Military Affairs, Tiemuer Buhua played a vital role in the ensuing war between the Supreme Capital and the Grand capital. In 1329, Tiemuer Buhua was appointed to the position of assistant of the Left in the Secretarial Council (Zhongshu zuo chengxiang 中書左丞相). Soon he was appointed with other important positions: the grand preceptor of the Heir Apparent (Taizi zhanshi 太子詹事) and chief censor (yushi dafu 御史大夫). In 1329 Tiemuer Buhua transferred the titles of Idug-qut and Prince of Gaochang to his younger brother Qianji in order to concentrate on the government affairs of the Yuan court.

When Wenzong died, Toqon Temür, the son of Mingzong, Qoshila, ascended the throne in 1333. Previously, Wenzong murdered his own brother, Mingzong, and sent Toqon Temür into exile. Therefore, when Toqon Temür ascended the throne, Wenzong’s line suffered his revenge. As the favorite minister of Wenzong, Tiemuer Buhua was now in a difficult position. He was dismissed from office. Several years later he was killed based on an unwarranted charge.580 Later his brother Taipingnu was executed too.

In 1331 (the second year of the Zhishun era), Qianji transferred the official titles to his younger brother Taipingnu. When Taipingnu died, his son Yuelutiemur 月鲁帖木儿 inherited the title of

580 NCCGL juan 8, p. 104. According to Quan Heng 欽衡 : Gengshen waishi 庚申外史, Tiemuer Buhua was killed in 1351. Luo Xianyou 羅賢佑 : "Yuandai Weiwuer Yiduhu puxi ji qi diwei bianqian" 元代畏兀儿亦都護諸族及其地位變遷, Minzu yanjiu, 2 (1997): 68-75.
Idug-qut. Yuelutiemur was involved in suppressing the peasant uprising in the end of Yuan and died in Nanyang. His son, Sangge, inherited the title of Prince of Gaochang.

Among the vassals of the Mongols, the Uighurs, as noted by Rubruck, "were the first dwellers in towns to be subject to Chinggis Khan." Because of their early adherence to the empire and their proximity to the Mongol homeland as well as their administrative and clerical skills, the clan of Uighur Idug-qut enjoyed a close and continuous relationship with the Mongol imperial clan for nearly a century. The Uighur people were highly proficient in administration, commercial management, and cultural education, and therefore they played important roles in the political, military, cultural, and economic lives of the Mongol Empire during both the Yeke Mongol Ulus and the Yuan dynasty. Moreover, because of their great contributions to the Mongol Empire, their position in the Yuan dynasty was much higher than those of the other allied nationalities. Many Uighurs became high-ranking government officials. According to the Xin Yuanshi, members of twenty-nine prominent Uighur clans were high-ranking officials in the Yuan government. The marriage relationship between the Mongol imperial family and the Idug-qut's clan only clearly indicates that the ruling clan of the Mongols attached great importance to their relationship with the Uighurs. On the other hand, as members of the ruling class of the Mongol Empire, the Uighur Idug-quts did their utmost to serve the Mongol rulers and to preserve the empire.

---

581 YS 42:899. "[Shundi] ordered the Yiduhu, Yuelutiemur, to command the Uighur troops, together with the Prince of Yu, Alatenashili, and the director of the Department of Military Affairs, Laozhang, to suppress the bandits in Xiangyang, Nanyang, and Dengzhou."

582 YS 43: 910.


584 XYS 29:121-27.
### TABLE 12 Mongol Princesses Married into the Uighur Idug-qut’s Clan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>TITLE</th>
<th>HUSBAND</th>
<th>FATHER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yeli Andun</td>
<td></td>
<td>Barchukh Art Tegin</td>
<td>Chinggis Khan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>阿西尔安敦</td>
<td></td>
<td>(Uighur Idug-qut)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alajin Beki</td>
<td></td>
<td>Qieshi-maiyin</td>
<td>Ogödei Khan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>阿剌真</td>
<td>(Eldest son of Barchukh Art Tegin)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Babahaer</td>
<td></td>
<td>Huochihaer</td>
<td>Gıyıık Khan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>巴巴哈儿</td>
<td>(Son of Mamula-dijin 马木剌的孙 and great grandson of Barchukh Art Tegin, Uighur Idug-qut)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulughan (Granddaughter of Ogödei)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Niulindijin 郡林的子</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Babucha (Granddaughter of Ogödei)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Niulindijin</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wulazhen (Granddaughter of Ogödei)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Niulindijin</td>
<td>Ananda (Prince of Anxi 阿耶答)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duozhisiman (Granddaughter of Ogödei)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tiemuerbuhua 帖木儿補化</td>
<td>Kuoduan /Köten 間端 (Ogödei’s son)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Marriage List X

**Uighur Idug-qut Tribe → Mongol Royal Family**

1. Barshuartedijin ... ... ... ... ... ... (1) Yeli Andun
2. Qieshi-maiyin ... ... ... ... ... ... (2) Alajin Beki
3. Huochihaer ... ... ... ... ... ... ... (3) Babahaer
4. Niulindijin ... ... ... ... ... ... ... (4) Bulughan (5) Babucha (6) Wuluzhen
5. Tiemuerbuhua ... ... ... ... ... ... ... (7) Duorsiman
Conclusion

The Mongolian Empire was the largest contiguous land empire in human history in terms of geographical expanse. At its peak in the middle of the thirteenth century, its territory extended west to east from Poland to Siberia, and north to south from Moscow to the Arabian Peninsula and Siberia to Vietnam. The Mongol Empire was separated into four khanates, each ruled by a separate khan and overseen by a Great Khan. The Kipchak Khanate, or Golden Horde, ruled Russia; the Ilkhanate ruled Persia and the Middle East, the Chaghatai Khanate ruled over western Asia, and the Great Khanate controlled Mongolia and China.

These areas included a multitude of peoples and states differing greatly in their languages, cultural traditions, and forms of social and economic organization. Consequently, Mongolian royal marriages had an impact on a large number of regions.

1. The Tradition of Mongolian Royal Marriage

Both during the World Empire and the Yuan dynasty, marriage unions of the ruling clan were by no means confined to the tribes or clans described in this thesis, and in practice, were spread over a large number of peoples. Nonetheless, the six tribes and clans we have examined in this study maintained relatively stable marriage relationships with the Mongol ruling house. The following chart shows the number of Chinggisid princesses who were married into the allied clans and the number of Mongol empresses from the allied clans.
The Onggirat tribe was obviously the most important marriage partner of the Mongol ruling clan, with 67% of the imperial consorts selected from this tribe and 25% of its princesses married into this tribe. Among the 22 women who received the title of Empress, either during their lifetime or posthumously, and whose family backgrounds are known (based on the Yuanshi), fourteen originated from the Onggirat tribe. They represented 64% of all titled and titular empresses of the Yuan. Among the rest of the eight Non-Onggirat empresses, four were from the Ikires tribe, a sub-
tribe of the Onggirat tribe according to Rashid Al-din. One came from the Bay’aut clan, and another from the Tangut. Another one was from the Kiptchac, and another from Korea.

In 1237, Ögödei Khan declared that members of the ruling Chinggisid clan would henceforth take Onggirat women as their senior or principal wives.\(^{585}\) However, this decree did not necessarily imply that the members of the Mongol ruling clan would thereafter take only Onggirat women as their senior or principal wives. Holmgren thus argues that “given the situation so described, and the fact that at least as many Chinggisid princesses married into the Ikires leadership as into the Onggirat, imperial marriage strategy during Yuan was scarcely based on the concept of a two-clan preferential system: despite the rhetoric on this subject, there was a deliberate attempt to maximize the spread of marriage ties and to avoid the development of close or exclusive relations with the Onggirat which might work to the disadvantage of the imperial family.”\(^{586}\) In view of the high percentage of the Yuan empresses from the Onggirat tribe, as well as the important roles of the Onggirat women in the Yuan court, Holmgren’s claims seem unwarranted.

The selection and designation of Yuan empresses were restricted not only by the marriage traditions of the Mongol royal clan, but also by the political situation during the particular reign. For instance, at the end of the Yuan, the powerful military minister Yantiemur from the Kiptchak tribe dominated the Yuan court in the early days of the reign of Toghan-Temüür. Thus, Danashili, the daughter of Yantiemur, was designated the principal empress of Toghan-Temüür. However, when the forces of the Kiptchak tribe were cleared out from the Yuan court and Empress Danashili was killed, Shundi was forced to choose his new principal wife from the Onggirat tribe.\(^{587}\)

There seemed to be no deliberate attempt to maximize the dissemination of marriage ties during the Yuan period. On the contrary, we see a tendency of gradually narrowing down the extent

\(^{585}\) YS 118:2915.

of marriage partners of the Mongol royal house. For example, among the large number of Chinggis Khan’s wives, only one was known to have originated from the Onggirat tribe. The others were all taken from or presented by the conquered tribes or states, including the Merkit tribe, the Naiman tribe, the Tartar tribe, the Taijiut tribe, the Kereit tribe, Jin, Xi Xia, and Korea. Ögödei had more than sixty wives, but none were known to be from the Onggirat tribe. Rashid Al-din states that Gûyük Khan had many wives and concubines, but only one was recorded, and she was Oghul Ghaimish from the Oirat tribe.

Starting from Môngke Khan, practically all Mongol emperors took Onggirat wives. Among the five empresses (huanghou 皇后) of Môngke Khan recorded in the Yuanshi, two were from the Onggirat tribe. Khubilai Khan had eight empresses, and three of them were from the Onggirat tribe. One of the three recorded wives of Temûr Öljeitû’s (Chengzong) was from the Onggirat tribe. Two of the five recorded wives of Qaishan (Wuzong) were from this tribe. One of the two-recorded wives of Ayurbarvada (Renzong) was from this tribe. Three of the ten empresses of Shidebala (Emperor Taiding) were from the Onggirat tribe. The only recorded wife of Tuq Temûr (Wenzong) was an Onggirat woman. One of the three known empresses of Toqon Temûr (Shundi) was an Onggirat woman.

At the same time, Mongol princesses often married into the Onggirat tribe. Because of incomplete information about the Mongol princesses who married into this tribe, especially that concerning their fathers, it is impossible to conduct a thorough analysis of this matter. This thesis

---

588 If we can trust Rashid Al-din, Chinggis Khan had five hundred wives. See Shiji 史集, 1b:85.
589 The Successors, 1:18.
590 The Successors, 5:175.
591 In the Yuan dynasty, an emperor could have many titular empresses (huanghou 皇后 in Chinese and Khatun in Mongolian), but only one was titled principal empress (da huanghou 大皇后).
592 YS 106:2693-4.
593 YS 106:2696-2701; 114:2879-82
has analyzed the two-clan intermarriages between Chinggisid descendants and the nobles of the Onggirat tribe, which, I believe, will shed light on this issue.594

Chinggis Khan married Börte Ujin, Dei Sechan’s daughter. Chinggis Khan’s first son Jochi married two women of the Onggirat tribe. One of them was Öki-fujin, the daughter of Anchen. As an exchange, Chinggis Khan’s daughter Tumanlun married Chigu, the son of Anchen, and the grandson of Dei Sechan. This marriage tie, according to Uno Nobuhiro 宇野伸浩, was a “sister exchange marriage”. Jochi married Öki-fujin, the sister of Chigu, and Chigu married Tumanlun, the younger sister of Jochi.595 Jochi’s descendants continued the marriage ties with the Onggirat tribe. The eldest son of Jochi, Orda, married three Onggirat women. The first son of Orda, Sartaqtai, married Hujan. The second son of Orda, Quli, married Neidiken. The seventh son of Orda, Hülegü, married Qutui.

Chinggis Khan’s second son Chaghatai established a new marriage tie with the descendants of Daritai, the brother of Dei Sechan. Chaghatai married Yesüülün and Tögen, the two daughters of Qata. Qata was the son of Daritai and the cousin of Börte Ujin.

Although Ögödei did not marry an Onggirat woman, his third son, the heir-apparent, Kurju 関由, married Qtaqash, the granddaughter of Anchen. As an exchange, Ögödei’s daughter Suorhahan married Nahe, the grandson of Anchen.

Chinggis Khan’s youngest son Tolui married Nayan Khatun (father’s name unknown596). Tolui’s son Jurikeh married Bulga, the granddaughter of Anchen. As an exchange, Tolui’s daughter Yesubuhua was married to Wochen, the son of Anchen. Tolui’s first son Möngke married

---

594 For the details of these marriage ties, see Chapter Four of this thesis, and refer to “TABLE 3: The empresses and imperial concubines of Mongol Yuan from the Onggirat tribe”, as well as “TABLE 4: The Princesses of Yuan Court Married into Onggirat Tribe”.

two Onggirat women, Hudutai and Yesuer. They were both daughters of Manggechen. The fourth son of Tolui, Khubilai, married three Onggirat women. They were Chabui, the daughter of Anchen; Nanbui, the Daughter of Xiantong; and Tiegulun, the daughter of Tuolian. The youngest son of Tolui, Arigh Böke, married two Onggirat women: Khutlu and Eshitei.

Therefore, one may state that there existed a two-clan preferential system established between the Mongol royal family and Dei Sechan’s family of the Onggirat tribe. Although new marriage ties were occasionally established, these ties had no impact on the old marriage ties. And, according to Chinggisid marriage strategies, the augmentation of new marriage partners were political choices to either control foreign states, such as the intermarriages between the Yuan court and the Koryō court, or to win over powerful military ministers, such as the marriage between Shundi and Danashili, the daughter of Yantiemur of the Bay’aut clan.

Holmgren further claims that “there was no urgent reason for a rigid two clan system of marriage exchange. Moreover, with the rationale for its existence removed, such a system could only pose a threat to the supremacy of the ruling family in that the powers invested in the head of state would inevitably fall into the hands of the consort clan. For this reason, practice during Yuan was very different from theory, and the wide-range of marriage ties established during Chinggis Khan’s time was maintained with very little modification through to the fourteenth century.”

There were only five non-Onggirat empresses during the Yuan period. They represented 24% of all women who were elevated to the rank of empress during their lifetime, and 50% of first empresses of the Yuan ruler. It is true that, in general, it was easy for clans as powerful as the Onggirat to dominate the imperial court and to threaten the existence of the dynasty. “Disasters caused by external clans” (waiqi zhi huo 外戚之禍) had frequently occurred in Chinese dynastic

---

596 It is inferable that Nayan Kharun was probably from Anchen’s family since Tolui and his descendants maintained a close marriage relationship with Anchen’s family.
history. For instance, Wang Mang and Empress Lü in the Han dynasty, and Yang Guozhong and Empress Wu in the Tang Dynasty either deposed the emperors and established their own dynasties, or caused unrest leading to the dynasty’s extinction.

Some empress dowagers from the Onggirat tribe in the Yuan dynasty became regents, but there were no imperial maternal uncles from this tribe who manipulated imperial political affairs. The following reasons may account for this fact. First of all, every prince in the Yuan dynasty had his own touxia 投下, a feoff or a manor, over which he had complete control. The leaders of the Onggirat tribe and other tribes that maintained a stable marriage relationship with the Yuan court held on to their own feoffs of vast territories. During Chinggis Khan’s reign, Anchen and his brothers were granted a huge piece of land in Mongolia. Later several circuits (Lu 路) were established in this territory, such as the Yingchang Lu and Quanning Lu which belonged to “Prince of Lu 魯王”. The Onggirat tribe also had many other manors in other areas. For example, the three prefectures--Ji 濟, Yan 兖 and Shan 聖 in Jining Lu 濟寧路 commanded sixteen counties; the six counties in Tingzhou Lu 汀州路; and the seven counties in Yongping Lu 永平路. These areas included parts of present-day Shandong, Jiangsu, and Jiangxi. For the Onggirat nobles, the feoffs were like their own kingdoms. The management of the feoffs, to a certain extent, sidetracked their attentions from the throne and political affairs of state.

Holmgren correctly states that imperial marriage under the Mongols evolved to fit a decentralized feudal mode of administration in which the female offspring played a critical role in preserving the authority and independence of male agnates stationed on the realm’s periphery. Also, because of this decentralized control, the Yuan was one of the few regimes successful in breaking the link between the authority delegated to the senior widow and the status and power of her family.

598 For the explanation of touxia 投下, see footnote 234 in page 98.
During the Yuan dynasty, the position of the imperial wife was never dependent upon that of her family. Rather, she was entrusted with power in the same way as a sister or brother. Moreover, her authority did not challenge, and was not challenged by her sister or brother.\textsuperscript{599}

On the other hand, the Yuan imperial court maintained the military democratic tradition throughout most of the dynastic period. Princes and nobles were entitled to attend khuriltai to discuss and determine important state political or military affairs. This would have surely decreased the attempts of the waiqi to control the throne. In addition, the “Four Keshig Institution” of the Yuan also contributed to the presentation of this tradition. Because the sons of nobles or meritorious generals worked around the emperors, the influences of waiqi and eunuchs were effectively controlled by the emperors. The \textit{Mengwur Shiji} offers the following comments regarding this issue:

\begin{quote}
Amongst the Mongol emperor’s relatives on the side of his wives or mother, the Onggirat tribe was the most illustrious. But this tribe had a separate manor. It took part in the expeditions or campaigns with its own people. Except collecting the land rents and tax, it had not been granted any imperial authority. Therefore it did not have the disaster that the whole people in the tribe were put to death as such happened in the Han and Tang dynasties. This strategy was actually adopted by the Qing dynasty.\textsuperscript{600}
\end{quote}

In comparing the imperial marriages of the Yuan dynasty with those of the Song dynasty, one finds their marriage policies differed in form and function. The Song imperial family drew a lesson from the troubles caused by waiqi in the Han, Jin, and Tang dynasties. They also adopted various measures to prevent waiqi from interfering in political affairs. During the early Song, most of the waiqi consisted of famous generals from the Five Dynasties. The Song imperial clan aimed at consolidating its political power by means of marriage ties with these powerful generals. But, the Song government was also worried about the potential threat constituted by these powerful generals. Thus it decided to weaken the power of those generals by means of marriages. For example, when the great generals, including Shi Shouxin, agreed to establish marriage

\textsuperscript{600} MWESJ 23:10.
relationships with Taizu of the Song (Zhao Kuangyin 趙匡胤), they were immediately persuaded to give up their military powers. This is the well-known event in Song history called “giving up military power with a cup of wine”. To avoid the malpractice of waiqi in state affairs, a set of “Methods of treating waiqi” was gradually developed. Its strategy towards waiqi was to “provide them with a handsome salary and high-ranking titles, but do not let them hold and monopolize power”. The Song imperial family formulated a series of stipulations regarding this concern. For example, a waiqi was not allowed to hold the posts of chancellor, commissioner of the Department of Military Affairs (Shumishi 横密使), retinue official (Shicong Guan 侍從官), censorial inspector (Jiansi 監司), or prefecture governor (Junshou 郡守). A member of the waiqi was absolutely prohibited from commanding troops. A man who held a military or political office had to resign if a woman in his family had been selected and conferred the title of empress.

There is no clear evidence indicating that the waiqi ever posed a real threat to the central government. Also, there were no specific stipulations concerning the treatment of waiqi in the Yuan dynasty. In fact, all the waiqi in the Yuan dynasty were regarded and treated as the pillars of support for the Mongol Empire. Not only were they not dismissed from military positions, as had occurred in the Song dynasty, but they also were awarded the titles of princes and retained their military power. However, this does not imply that all the waiqi supported the Yuan court. Along with the frequent internal political struggles for the throne in the ruling clan, the waiqi were forced to make political choices, and they were inevitably divided. For example, when the campaigns between Khubilai Khan and his younger brother Arigh Böke broke out, the Oirat people organized troops to support Arigh Böke. “Arigh Böke’s army was defeated, and many of the Oirat tribesmen were

---

601 Li Yujie, Qin Xueqi 李禹階，秦學煥, Waiqi yu huangquan 外戚與皇權, Xinan Shifan Daxue Chuban She, 1993.
602 Guochao zhuchen zouyi 國朝諸臣奏議, Vol. 35. Quoted in Waiqi yu huangquan.
killed. The political choice of the Oirat nobles was obviously influenced by their close marriage ties with Arigh Böke and his descendants. (Arigh Böke married Ailjiqmish, the daughter of Törölchi, the chief of the Oirat tribe. Melik-Temür, the second son of Arigh Böke, married Emegen, the daughter of Pars-buqa, the third son of Törölchi. The daughter of Melik-Temür, Emegen,604 married Toq-Temür, the grandson of Pars-buqa.) On the contrary, Khibilai and his descendants had no marriage ties with the Oirat tribe.

Moreover, one of the distinctive policies of the Song imperial marriage was “not considering family rank in marriage (hunyin buwen fayue 婚姻不問閥閱)”. According to Zhang Bangwei’s statistics, 70.8% of the empresses and Noble Consorts in the Tang dynasty came from the high-rank bureaucratic families, while only 26.8% of the empresses and Noble Consorts in the Song dynasty originated from such families.605 Among the 41 empresses and Noble Consorts who had biographies in the Song historical materials, 21 were from non-bureaucratic families. Amongst these, many were from low-class families. For example, empress Liu of Zhenzong was a street-performer in Kaifeng. The mother of Noble Consort Miao of Renzong was a wet nurse of Renzong. The father of empress Zheng of Huizong was the owner of a wine-shop.

On the contrary, almost all of the empresses and Noble consorts in the Mongol Yuan came from aristocratic families. Among the 27 empresses and consorts who had biographies in the Yuanshi, 26 were from aristocratic families. They comprise 96% of the total number. Only the Korean woman, Qishi Wanzhehudu, the empress of Shundi, was from a common family.

---

603 The Successors, 7:256.
604 I suspect that Rashid Al-din was probably confused about the names of the two women. It would be unusual for them to have an identical name: Emegen.
605 Zhang Bangwei 張邦炜, Hunyin yu shehui (Songdai), Ch. 4. Quoted in Waiqi yu huangquan, 1989.
2. Cultural Aspects of the Mongolian Royal Marriage

The marriage institution of the Mongol imperial ruling house stemmed from the exogamic marriage tradition. A man in ancient Mongolian society was not allowed to marry a woman from within his own tribe. Instead, he had to go to another tribe to select a wife. This custom inevitably affected the marriage institution of the Mongol imperial ruling house. Exogamic marriages have been discussed in detail in Chapter One of this thesis.

The practice of exogamy was obviously to avoid consanguineous marriage and to prevent inbreeding. However, the Mongol royal family seemed not to understand that consanguineous marriage and inbreeding could also take place between two tribes if the two-clan preferential marriage system was continued in future generations. My study reveals that consanguineous marriage had occurred since the reign of Khubilai Khan and continued until the end of the Yuan dynasty.

The negative impact of consanguineous marriages on the population quality of Mongol imperial house became evident beginning with the sons of Khubilai Khan. Many princes and princesses were born unhealthy. The life spans of the imperial family became shorter and the Yuan rule became weaker. As a result, the Yuan government was often controlled by empress dowagers, empresses, as well as powerful ministers. The following chart shows these life spans of the Mongol Khans and Yuan emperors.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Khan/Emperor</th>
<th>Age at death</th>
<th>Khan/Emperor</th>
<th>Age at death</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chinggis (Taizu)</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>Shidebala (Yingzong, murdered)</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ögödei (Taizong)</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>Yisün Temür (Emperor Taiding)</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Güyük (Dingzong)</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>Khoshila (murdered)</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Möngke (Xianzong)</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>Arigiba (Tianshun Di, killed)</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
One should not conclude, however, that the decline of the Mongol Empire was the direct outcome of consanguineous marriages in the Mongol imperial clan, and of course, the destruction of Yuan dynasty was the result of many factors. Consanguineous marriage and inbreeding was possibly one of them, or at least one of the indirect factors. When we look at the short life spans of the Yuan emperors after Khubilai Khan, what association of ideas should we have? When we see the morbid and indecisive character the later Yuan Emperors possessed, can we believe that they were really the descendants of the strong and powerful Mongol hunters and conquerors?

Obviously, an immature and inexperienced emperor, a mindless emperor, or an emperor suffering from long-term illness, would hardly perform his duties efficiently. And furthermore, when we have understood that the short life spans of the imperial family members were actually
result of consanguineous marriage and inbreeding, we have to admit that genetic factors were also one of the important factors that contributed to the collapse of the Yuan dynasty.

Among the Mongol rulers in China, Khubilai was without doubt the most capable, but his descendants became increasingly less competent. His grandson and successor, Emperor Temür (1294-1307), was the last able member of the Mongol dynasty of China. After him, degeneration set in at once. My study reveals that the degeneration occurred in step with the occurrence of consanguineous marriage and inbreeding among the Mongol imperial members.

In exploring the causes of the extinction of the Mongol dynasty, however, we might agree with a view popular among historians that the destruction of the Yuan dynasty was the result of over-Sinicization of the Mongols. They believe that the descendants of the steppe hunters so much succumbed to the pleasures of the sedentary life that they forgot their hardy origins and the causes of their rise to power. In René Grousset’s opinion, some Mongol rulers tried unsuccessfully to reverse this trend.

Möngke Khan had been the last to try to bring the conquerors back to the simple ways of the steppe. Khubilai, who succeeded him, decisively reoriented his dynasty toward the Chinese way of life: a sedentary existence among civilized pleasures. Under a man of his personality (or that of his grandson Temür), this was all to the good, for to Mongol hardihood—which in him remained unimpaired—he added Chinese ability. But with the coming of weak, second rate emperors, that combination proved wholly detrimental. The last Jenghiz-Khanites of China were over-Sinicized, softened by court life and its voluptuous excesses, and cut off from the outer world by a screen of favorites and mistresses, literati and bureaucrats, and so lost virtually every vestige of their Mongol vigor. These descendants of the most redoubtable and terrible conqueror known to history dwindled away into feebleness, ineptitude, tearful vacillation, and in the hour of disaster, lamentation. Of the barbarian character they retained only the inability to accustom themselves to the Chinese idea of the state as an abstract entity. Although occupying the throne of the Sons of Heaven, they remained a clan whose members wrangled in public, snatched power from one another, and destroyed one another. At the time of the Chinese rebellion, they were so hopelessly divided among themselves and so bitterly jealous that, rather than unite in face of danger, they let the Chinese overcome them one by one.  

---

Grousset has also noticed the short lives of the Mongol emperors, but he asserts that they resulted from their hedonistic excesses. Women and wine were certainly two important matters in the daily life of Mongol nobles. However, they cannot convincingly account for the short lives of the Mongol emperors after Khubilai Khan. Although most Mongol khans and emperors loved wine and women, not all of them were short-lived. It is said that Chinggis Khan had five hundred wives, but he lived sixty-six years. Ögedei Khan was well-known for his excessive drinking, but he still enjoyed a life of fifty-six years. The last Yuan emperor, Toqon Temür, “a weak, vacillating person, found delight only in the company of his favorites and of Tibetan lamas. Dulled by debauchery...”608 he still lived for fifty-one years. Toqon Temür, as we have seen, was born of Mailaidi, 遁來迪, the granddaughter of Arsilan 阿兒恩蘭, chief of the Halahu 哈剌魯 (罕祿鲁) tribe.609 Thus was beyond the traditional marriage circle of the Mongol imperial family and Toqon Temür was not an outcome of a consanguineous marriage.

Not only did the Mongol emperors have short life spans, but also many Mongol princes and princesses were short-lived. As we have discussed in Chapter Three, the Mongol princesses who were married into the Korean court had only a thirty-three-year average life span.

In terms of sinicization, the emperors of the Qing Dynasty were obviously much more sinicized than their Mongol counterparts in the Yuan dynasty. But the Qing Dynasty lasted more than three times that of the Yuan. Therefore, over-sinicization, in the sense of a debauched court-life, cannot fully account for the destruction of the Mongol dynasty.

Some scholars have suggested a very different view: notably, that the Mongols were not sinicized enough. Richard Hooker, for instance, believes that the failure to learn Chinese and

609 YS 38:815.
integrate themselves fully into Chinese culture greatly undermined the Mongol rulers. Some other scholars have argued that, although the nomads and semi-nomads that conquered China could never have escaped sinicization, the Mongols were the least sinicized. This view is popular among Chinese scholars who believe that the Mongols would have been more “civilized” if they had been more sinicized. They often complain that the Mongol emperors were so reluctant to learn Chinese culture that they could hardly become good Sons of Heaven. Zhao Yi 趙翼, for instance, suggested that most of the Yuan Emperors did not learn the Chinese language. And even though some of them became interested in Chinese culture, they had to rely on translation.

Chinese scholars of later periods seem to have held ambivalent views about the Mongol rule. On the one hand, they were resentful about Mongol rule, because under the Mongols, traditional Chinese culture was faced with extinction and Chinese intellectuals received unjust treatment. On the other hand, however, some of them sincerely accepted the Yuan as a legitimate Chinese dynasty, and believed that the Mongols had received the mandate of Heaven to rule over China. And of course, many Chinese scholars in the Yuan dynasty served the Mongol conquerors loyally. According to Zhao Yi, during the peasant rebellions at the end of the Yuan Dynasty, many Chinese scholar-officials who held the jinshi 進士 degrees died to preserve their moral and political integrity.

The Yuan was the shortest lived of the major Chinese dynasties. From the time that Kublai occupied Beijing in 1264 to the fall of the dynasty in 1368, a mere hundred years passed. Since Khubilai moved his capital to China proper and adopted a Chinese title for his dynasty, he seems to have lost legitimacy among the Mongols still in Mongolia who thought he had become too Chinese.

---


Thus, his successors were placed in an awkward situation. On the one hand, rebellions of Mongol princes against the Yuan were frequent during the fourteenth century, and on the other hand, the majority of Chinese, especially in the south, never accepted the Yuan as a legitimate dynasty but regarded the Mongol conquerors rather as bandits, or at best an occupying army.

Interruption with Chinese had been one of the most effective and natural means to assimilate “barbarians” in Chinese dynastic history. However, this tactic proved futile to the stubborn Mongols. Throughout the Yuan dynasty, the Mongol rulers constantly discouraged Mongols from marrying Chinese. There were also no Chinese women among the large number of Mongol emperors’ wives. When the Southern Song was conquered and the Song imperial consorts were sent to Shangdu 上都, the Mongol capital, Khubilai did not take any of them.

It seems to be a mystery why Khubilai did not take any of the Song imperial consorts as his wives as did by his grandfather Chinggis Khan who took women from conquered tribes and states. Was it a sign indicating a change in attitude of the Mongols towards war captives? Or was he concerned about the consequences of such marriages? To answer these questions, we have to first consider the possible psychological reactions among both the Chinese and the Mongols. If Khubilai took any of the Song consorts, what signal would he send to both the Mongols and Chinese? What would the former Song people feel? Would they deem it an honor or a shame?

Certainly, if Khubilai married a Chinese woman, the Mongols might take it as an example and then marry Chinese too. On the other hand, from the Chinese view of point, it would be shameful for a woman to remarry, and it would be a great disgrace to be taken by the enemy. Thus, if Khubilai chose to take the Song consorts, he would probably also take the risk of misleading the Mongols and provoking resentment among the Chinese.

Concerning women’s remarriage, there existed a distinctive difference between the marriage customs of the Han Chinese and the Mongols. Like the Chinese, the Mongols valued married women’s chastity. However, the Mongols encouraged widows-remarriage, especially levirate marriage, which was in sharp contrast to Chinese marriage customs and moral standards. Levirate marriage may serve as an indicator of the extent of the sinicization of the Mongols. Throughout the Yuan dynasty, the Yuan court never banned this marriage custom. On the contrary, during the early Yuan it attempted to spread this custom to other ethnic groups. And there is evidence that some Han Chinese practiced levirate under Mongol influence.

Paul Ratchnevsky has pointed out the fact that, at first, the Mongol conquerors tried unsuccessfully to force their laws upon the subjugated people.613 But because nomadic law was wholly concerned with the facts of life on the steppe, it was incapable of meeting the complex requirements of an urban, and rural, chiefly agrarian population.614 Therefore, in a second phase, the conquerors introduced a dualistic system of rule. One set of laws governed the conquerors’ own people, while the set of laws indigenous to the conquered Chinese was enforced among the latter. The Yuan court thus stipulated that each nationality should follow only its own marriage customs, and the Han people and the Southerners should therefore not practice levirate.615

---

615 YS 34, see the basic annals of Wenzong.
3. Political Aspects of Mongolian Royal Marriages

The political character of the Mongol imperial marriages was particularly distinct. Marriage strategy was one of the most important political strategies of the Mongol royal family. Chinggis Khan and his successors successfully carried through their marriage strategies, which made the Mongolian royal marriages in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries the most typical political marriages.

Since the time of Chinggis Khan, marriage had been regarded as an important means to ally all potential forces. For example, Chinggis acknowledged Ong-Khan as his adoptive father when he was still weak, and then proposed an exchange marriage relationship between these two families to establish a “doubly friendly” relationship. He proposed that his own son Jochi marry Senggüm’s (Ong-Khan’s son) younger sister Cha’ur Beki; and his eldest daughter Khojen Beki marry Senggüm’s son Tusaqa. This action indicates that Chinggis fully realized the importance of political marriage and tried to use it for his own interests at the very beginning of his political and military careers. In the following conquering wars, Chinggis Khan successfully used this strategy to subdue some important tribes and states. In most cases it was Chinggis Khan who initiated these marriages. For example, when Arslan Khan submitted to the Mongols without fighting, Chinggis Khan made a decree, “I shall give [unto him] a daughter.” When the Uighur Idug-qut submitted to Chinggis Khan, Chinggis Khan said: “I shall also give [unto him] my daughter. Let him become my fifth son.” When Khuduqa Beki of the Oirat tribe submitted, Chinggis Khan “favored [him]
and gave Checheyigen unto his son, unto Inalchi. He gave Holuiqan, daughter of Jochi, unto Torolchi, elder brother of Inalchi. He gave Alaqa Beki unto Ōngūt.⁶²⁰

The Mongolian royal house tried various stratagems to establish or strengthen the military relationship with every marriage partner. Marriages with the allied states were taken as a tool to effectively control them. This was exemplified by the political involvement of Mongol princesses in the Ōngūt state and the Korean court.

In the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, when Chinggis Khan was annexing other tribes in the northern steppes, the marriage relatives of Chinggis Khan had proven to be militarily important. When the Onggirat tribe and four other tribes formed an alliance and swore at the Aleiquan 阿雷泉 to attack Chinggis Khan. Chinggis Khan’s father-in-law Dei Sechen sent an envoy to report the situation to Temüjin鐵木真 (Chinggis). This enabled him to be prepared for the allied attack. Later, when Jamuka 札木合 was preparing to attack Chinggis Khan with allied troops arranged in thirteen wings 十三翼, Chinggis’ brother-in-law Botu 李禿, who was the chief of Ikires tribe, also sent an envoy to report the impending danger to Chinggis Khan.

In fact, virtually all Mongol princesses were undertaking important political missions when they were sent to marry the heads of dependencies. When a princess was to marry a foreign prince or a tribal chieftain, she would be first instructed formally about her mission by Chinggis Khan himself or by one of his representatives. She was henceforth to be seen not merely as a wife of the leader of the allied state, but instead, her mission was to become the political representative of the Mongol Empire to help control the allied state or tribe. She knew that she must remain loyal to the Mongol royal family instead of to the family she was going to enter. She was to keep a clear head and not be influenced by the new environment. And these women did play important roles in the political affairs of the allied and subordinate tribes and states. This was especially so in the case of

---

The Secret History, Ch. X. p. 173.
the marriages of Alahai Beki in the Ongut state and Khudulu(gh)Khaimish in the Koryo court.

The practice of the marriage strategy by the Mongol ruling house, however, underwent changes throughout the history of the Mongol Empire. When the Mongol ruling house had secured their rule over the vast empire, they appeared satisfied with the established marriage ties and were no longer eager to seek new marriage ties with other tribes or states. During Ögödei’s reign (1229-1241), it was further declared that the Onggirat clan should be the chief marriage partner of the Mongol ruling house, thus limiting the sphere of their marriage partners. When the Korean court finally submitted to the Yuan rule, Khubilai did not intentionally grant a marriage to the Korean king. Instead, it was the Korean king who repeatedly proposed to Khubilai the marriage tie on his own initiative.

Unfortunately, during the later Yuan period, the established marriage institutions of the Mongol royal family were damaged and the Mongolian royal marriages became devalued. The extreme case was that of the powerful military minister Yantiemur 燕帖木兒 of the Kiptchak clan, who took the empresses of Emperor Taiding during Wenzong’s reign (1329-32). Moreover, to reward Yantiemur for his military merits, Wenzong awarded him four princesses, and it is astonishing that Yantiemur married in total forty Mongol princesses. The devaluation of the Mongol royal marriage is indeed a significant sign of the decline of the Mongol empire. Furthermore, Yantiemur married his daughter to Shundi and successfully controlled him during his early reign.

As for the political roles of the Mongol empresses in the Yuan court, Mongolian tradition did not restrict empresses’ political involvement, and therefore, most of the Mongol empresses were very active in politics throughout the history of the Mongol Empire. They either became regents
with direct influence over the government, or they represented the emperors who were too old or too ill to handle state affairs. At the very least, they influenced the emperors in policy and decision-making. In particular, they played crucial roles in the election and enthronement of new emperors. During the thirteen reigns of the Mongol Khans and the emperors of the Yuan dynasty, eleven empresses were actively involved in government affairs. Some of the empress dowagers partially, or even fully, controlled the Yuan emperors for several reigns, as exemplified by the Empress Dowager Daji. Thus, the trend in the Yuan dynasty was an escalation of the influence of the empresses and the decline of the power of the emperors.

The *Khuriltai*, the Mongolian-style military democratic institution, had actually been terminated after Temür Khan’s reign (1294-1307). As a consequence, the role of the empress became more and more vital to the enthronement of new emperors, and they often asserted their authority to directly enthrone the new emperors. During the late Yuan, three emperors, Yingzong, Ningzong, and Shundi, were directly enthroned by the empress dowagers when they were very young. The majority of empress dowagers preferred to designate young and weak emperors so that they were able to continue their control over government affairs. The struggles among the emperors, empresses, empress dowagers, as well as crown princes, persisted throughout the late period of the Mongol Yuan, inevitably poisoning the political environment of the Yuan dynasty and facilitating the destruction of the Mongol dynasty.

In conclusion, the great ambitions of the Chinggisid clan for a maximum geographical expansion of the Mongol empire necessitated marriage strategies for an effective control of the realm. The effect of the political marriages of the Mongol royal family was largely justified by its

---

621 *YS* 138: 3333. See the biography of Yantiemur. A Mongol princess was not necessarily a daughter of the emperor. All girls of the royal house could be called and titled “princess”. They were generally called “zongshi nü 姥室女”.

successive domination over the allied tribes and states during the early period of the Mongol empire. The halo once placed on the strategy of Mongol royal marriage faded along with the decline of the Mongol empire.
1. Works Cited by Alphabetical Abbreviations


NCCGL  *Nancun chuo geng lu 南村輿耕錄*, Tao Zongyi, Zhonghua Shuju, 1959.


2. Primary Sources


Cai Meibiao 蔡美彪, Yuandai baihua bei jilu 元代白話編年錄, Kexue Chubanshe, 1955.


Chen Shou 陳壽, San guo zhi 三國志, Beijing, Zhonghua Shuju, 1982.

Du Jianmin 都建民, Zhongguo lidai diwang shixi nianbiao 中國歷代帝王世系年表, Qilu Shushe, 1995.


Liu Xiang 劉向: Lienü zhuan 列女傳, The position of woman in early China according to the

Luosangdanjin 羅桑丹津, Menggu huangjin shi 蒙古黃金史, trans. by Sedaorji 色道爾吉,
Mengguxue Chubanshe, 1993.

Mao Yuesheng 毛岳生, Yuanshi houfei gongzhu zhuan bu 元史后妃公主傳補, Taibei:
Guangwen shuju, 1968.

Ming Taizu shiliu 明太祖實録, Taibei, Zhongyang Yaniyuan lishi Yuyan Yanjiusuo, 1962.

Paul Kahn, tran. The Secret History of the Mongols: The Origin of Chingis Khan, Cheng & Tsui

Peng Daya 彭大雅, Heida shi lue 黑鞑事略, annotated by Xu Ting 徐霆, Changsha Shangwu
yinshuguan, 1937.

Peng Daya 彭大雅, Mengda beilu 蒙鞑備錄, in Wang Guowei 王國維, Menggu shiliao si zhong

Qian Daxin 前大昕, Shijiuzhai yangxin lu 十翼齋養心録, Changsha Shangwu yin shuguan, 1938.

Rashiduuddin Fazlullah, Jami’u’t-Tawarikh, Compendium of Chronicles, a history of the

Ren Chongyue 任崇岳, annot. Gengshen waishi jianzheng 康申外史箋證, Zhongzhou Guji

Sechin Jagchid (Zhaqi-siqin 札奇思欽), Menggu mishi xin yi bing zhushi, 蒙古秘史新譯並


Shao Yechang 邵葉昌, Zhongguo lidai huangdi gailan, 中國歷代皇帝概覲, Changchun
Chubanshe, 1989.

Shen Zengzhi 沈曾緯, Menggu yuanliu jianzheng 蒙古源流箋證, Zhongguo Wenxian
Chubanshe Yingyin. 1965.


Shi Xiangmai 釋祥邁, “Xijing Dahuayan si foriyuanzhao Minggong heshang beiming”
西京大華嚴寺佛日圓照明公和尚碑銘, Shanyou shike congbian 山右石刻叢編, juan

Sima Qian 司馬遷, Shi ji 史記, Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 1982.

Ssang Ssetsen, 小衛辰薩囊台, Menggu yuanliu jianzheng 蒙古源流箋證, Taibei, Zhongguo

Su Tianjue 蘇天爵, Yuan wen lei 元文類, Shanghai Guji Chubanshe, 1993.

———Yuanchao mingchen shi lue 元朝名臣事略, Zhonghua Shuju, 1996.
Xiao Daheng 肖達亨: *Beilu fengsu* 北虜風俗.
3. Secondary Sources


———. "Guiyouhan jiwei de qianqian houhou" 黃甫汗即位的前前后後 *Yuanshi luncong* 元史論叢, No.3

Bo Hua 柏華, *Tianzi, digong zhengdao* 天子・帝宮・政道, Guangxi Jiaoyu Chubanshe, 1996.


D’Ohsson, Constantin d', baron, *Historie des Mongols, Duosang Menggushi* 多桑蒙古史,


Hadesi 哈德斯 “Hasakezu Kelie buluo jiqi Wang Han Tuherele” 哈薩克族克烈部落及其王


Haneda Tōru 羽田亨, “Genchō no Kan bunwei ni taisuru taido” 元朝の漢文明に特する態


——. "Could the Mongol Emperor Read and Write Chinese?" Asia Major (New Series), 3 (1952), 28-41.


———."Ming T'ai-tsu on the Yuan: An Autocrat's Assessment of the Mongol Dynasty", The Bulletin of Sung and Yuan Studies (14), November 14, (1878): 6-10


———."From Mongol Empire to Yuan Dynasty: Changing Forms of Imperial Rule in Mongol and Central Asia." Monumenta Serica 30 (1972-73): 117-65

Kahar-Balati 卡哈把拉提, Liu Yingsheng 劉迎勝: "Yiduhu Gaochangwang shixunbei Huihe beiwen jiaokan yu yanjiu 亦都護高昌王世勣碑文校勘與研究, in Yuanshi ji beifang minzushi yanjiu jikan 元世及北方民族史研究集刊, No. 8


Leng Pengfei 冷鹏飛 Gudai diwang hougong tanjiu 古代帝王后宮探究, Yuelu Shushe, 1997.


Li Yujie 李玉階, Qin Xueqi秦學碩, Waiqì yu huangquan 外戚與皇權, Xinan Shifan Daxue Chuban She, 1993.

Li Zefen 李則芬, Yuanshi xin jiang 元史新講, Taibei, Zhonghua Shuju, 1978.

Lu Junling 劉俊嶺, ”Cong Wokuotai dao Mengge de Menggu gongting douzhen 從窩闊台到蒙哥的蒙古宮廷鬥爭, Yuanshi luncong (No.1) 1981.
Luo Xianyou 羅賢佑, Yuandai minzushi 元代民族史，Sichuan Minzu Chubanshe, 1996.


Tao Xisheng 陶希聖, "Shiyi zhi shishi de gezhong hunyin zhidu" 十一至十四世紀的各種婚姻制度, *Shi huo* 史貨 (1). No.12 (1935) 540-44, (2). No. 3 (1936) 139-42


———. "Yuan Li guanxi zhong de wangshi hunyin yu qiangquanzhengzhi" 元麗關係中的王室婚姻與強權政治, Yuandaishi xintan元代史新探, Xin Wen Feng Chuban Gongsi, 1983.

Yanai Wataru 蕭內互, Môkoshi Kenkyû, 蒙古史研究, Tokyo, 1966.
———. Yuandai qixue ji worduo kao 元代怯薛及斡耳朵考, trans. by Chen Lijie 陳捷, Chen Qingquan 陳清泉, Shangwu Yinshuguan, 1933.


Zhou Liangxiao 周良霄, "Menggu xuan han yizhi yu huangwei jicheng wenti" 蒙古選汗儀制與皇位繼承問題, in Yuanshi luncong, vol. 3.


The Guang xian yi sheng 光献翼圣 empress of Taizu, named [Bortai 板台] Xuzhen 旭真, was from the Onggirat clan, the daughter of Dei Sechen. Dei Sechen and his son Anchen followed Taizu to go on punitive expeditions and performed meritorious services. [Anchen] was granted the name "national uncle" (Guojia 国家), and was conferred the title of prince to command his tribe. There was an imperial decree: "A girl born [to this tribe] will be the empress [of the Mongols]; a boy born [to this tribe] will marry a Mongol princess. This will continue from generation to generation." In the twelfth month of the second year of the Zhiyuan (1265) in Shizu's reign she was posthumously conferred the title of Guang xian yi sheng Empress. The document of conferment reads: "To respect the ancestors, and to promote honesty and filial piety, were really the most important duties of a king's government. [A king should] model after heaven and earth, and establish great fame so that his mother could be glorified. Therefore one must be reverent in the ancestor's temple, and reveal [the achievements of the ancestor] to the following generations. To do this is extremely proper, and to do this will be of great benefit. The Guangxian Empress had a deeply placid heart and had a gentle and beautiful moral character. When the worthy forefather undertook the pioneering work, she helped day and night by seeking out men of worth and ability. She made great contributions to the state, ...now I sent a grand commandant, with a jade conferment book and a jade treasure, to confer the respectful title of Guang xian yi sheng Empress upon her..." 4 She was added to the temple of Taizu and was offered sacrifices in

---

1 Taizu 太祖, temple name of Chinggis Khan.
2 Xuzhen means "Madam", "Mrs.". It came from the transliteration of Chinese "furen 夫人.
3 In "Houfei Biao" of Yuan Shi, under the name of Bortie Xuzhen, it reads, "She was posthumously conferred the title of 'Guangxian' in the second year of the Zhiyuan 増元 era (1265), and was added the title of 'Guang xian yi sheng Empress' in the second year of the Zhida 至大 era (1309). See YS 106:2693-4.
4 This conferment document was actually issued in the second year of the Zhida era. The compilers of Yuan Shi mistakenly dated it to the second year of the Zhiyuan era. In addition, according to the Records of Sacrifices 祭祀志 in Yuan Shi, "The ancestral temple was completed in the third year of Zhiyuan. The
the temple of Taizu. There were more than forty other empresses and imperial concubines from the four *ordo*. Their clan names were not recorded, their names are all in the Table. The following will follow this example.

The *Zhao Ci* 昭慈 Empress of Taizong,\(^5\) named Tuoliegena 脫列哥那, was from the Naimazhen 乃馬真 clan. She gave birth to Dingzong. In the twelfth month of the year *Xinchou* (1241), when Taizong died, this empress acted as regent for five years. In the year of *Bingwu*, she summoned all the princes and officials to discuss the enthronement of Dingzong. Most governmental affairs were still controlled by the empress. She died in the second year of *Zhiyuan* (1265),\(^6\) and was posthumously conferred the title of *Zhao Ci* Empress. She was worshiped in the temple of Taizong.

The *Qin Shu* 欽淑 Empress of Dingzong,\(^7\) was named Wowulihaimeishi 韓兀立海迷失. When Dingzong died, this empress held court from behind a screen while holding her son Shiliemen 列門 for six months. In the second year of the *Zhiyuan* era she was posthumously conferred the title of *Qin Shu* Empress.

*Zhenjie* 貞節 Empress of Xianzong,\(^8\) Hudutai 忽都台, was from the Onggirat clan, and was the daughter of Manggechen 忙哥陳, the grandson of Dei Sechen. She died early. Her younger sister Yehsur 遼速兒 succeed her as an imperial concubine. In the second year of the *Zhiyuan* era she was posthumously conferred the title of *Zhen Jie* Empress.

The *Zhao rui shun sheng* 昭瑞順聖 Empress of Shizu,\(^9\) named Chabi 察必, who was from the Onggirat clan, was the daughter of Anchen 按陳, the prince of Zhongwu of Jining. She gave birth to Yuzong. In the early year of the *Zhongtong* era (1260-64) she was conferred the title of empress. In the third month of the tenth year of the *Zhiyuan* era (1273) she was presented with

---

\(^5\) Taizong 太宗, temple name of Ögedei Khan.

\(^6\) This record is totally wrong. First, “the second year of *Zhiyuan*” should be “the third year of *Zhiyuan*”; second, according to Juvaini, Toregene died two or three months after Gıyık ascended the throne. See *World Conqueror*, vol. 1, p. 244.

\(^7\) Dingzong 定宗 Temple name of Gıyık Khan.

\(^8\) Xianzong 憲宗, temple name of Möngke Khan.

\(^9\) Shizu shi世祖, temple name of Khubilai Khan.
the conferment book and received the respectful name "empress of Chen-I-chao-sheng-shun-
t'ien-jui-wen-kuang-ying 貞懿昭聖順天孝文光應".

One day, four chieshieq 祇薛 officers presented a memorial to the emperor to enclose and
occupy a piece of land just outside the capital to herd horses. The emperor having just given
permission, and with [the four chieshieq officers] were about to present a map of the land to be
occupied, the empress went before the emperor, admonishing against this. She first reproved
grand guardian (Taibao 太保) Liu Bingzhong 劉秉忠: "You are a smart man among the Han
people. The emperor listens to your words, why do you not admonish the emperor? If the capital
were just being established, it would be all right to use the land to herd horses, but now that the
lands have already been divided among the army and commoners, how can you take them by
force?" The emperor became silent, and ordered this action not to be done.

The empress once drew one silk facing and one silk underside for a quilt from the palace
administrative bureau. The emperor said to the empress: "These are things needed by the army
and the state. They are not personal things. How can you take them?" From then on, the empress
led the palace women to do needlework, using the old bowstrings to make threads, and then
making cloth. It was even thicker and more solid than silk and satin. Taking the abandoned skins
of the front legs of sheep in the Xuan Hui Yuan, the empress sewed them into carpets. These
examples show that she was very thrifty and did not like things to be abandoned.

In the thirteenth year (1276), the Song was conquered, and the young Song emperor made
obeisance to Khubilai in Shangdu. There was a huge banquet, and all the people were very happy.
Only the empress was unhappy. The emperor said: "Now that I have conquered south of the
Yangzi River, I will not need to use any military forces any more. All the people are happy, but
only you seem unhappy. Why?" The empress knelt down and replied: "I have heard that from the
ancient times there have been no states that have lasted for a thousand years. I will feel lucky if I
do not let my descendants fall in such a situation." The emperor displayed the antique treasures
from the Song palace storehouse, and asked the empress to have a look. The empress took a
casual look from one side and then left. The emperor sent a eunuch to ask the empress which
things she would like to take for herself. The empress replied: "The Song people saved these
things for their descendants, but their descendants were unable to guard them, and gave them to
us. How can I be so hardhearted as to take any of them?" At that time the empress dowager of
the Song, Quanshi 全氏, arrived at the capital. Since she was not accustomed to the northern
climate, the empress asked the emperor to send her back to the south of the Yangzi River. The
emperor did not accede to this. After she had presented a memorial to the emperor three times, he
answered, “You women do not have foresight. If we send her back to the south, in case there is a rumor arising, we have to destroy her whole clan immediately. That is not the way of taking pity on her. If we want to show our compassion, we can frequently give her a pension, and let her live in peace.” The empress then left. Afterwards, she treated the Song empress dowager more generously.

The old style Mongolian hat did not have a brim. The sunlight always dazzled the emperor when he shot arrows. When the emperor told the empress about this, she immediately added a front brim to his hat. The emperor was extremely happy, and ordered that it should be a formal design. The empress also made a cloth. The front part was made of one piece of cloth while the back part was twice longer than the front part. There was no collar nor sleeves, but there were two loop straps. It was called “bijia 比甲”, and was convenient to wear while riding horses and shooting arrows. People followed this design. This empress was clever, alert and resourceful. She was sensible in important events and emergencies. At the beginning of the state government, she made great contributions in correcting the wrong policies of the government.

She died at the second month of the fourteenth year of the Zhiyuan era (1277). In the thirty-first year (1294), Chengzong succeeded to the throne. In the fifth month of the same year, she was posthumously conferred the title of “Zhao rui shun sheng Empress”. The conferment book reads: “...this former empress’s great virtue can hold things. Her righteous position can support the heavens. She displayed great leadership in the inner court and promoted the great ethics under heaven. Previously she served the emperor when he was still a prince. Together they passed through troubled times. She saw clearly the potential danger and urged Shizu to return his troops from the river of Hubei. She provided great advice to help Shizu ascend the throne in Shangdu. She had great prophetic vision and was able to make quick decisions based on her own judgment. She also set her mind on recommending persons of virtue to help the emperor. She helped my holy ancestor establish the extreme honor of an emperor. She brought up my former father to succeed the heavy duties of the country...” She was offered sacrifices in the temple of Shizu.

---

10 A bureau responsible for the affairs of the empresses.
11 According to the basic annals of Shizu and the Table of Empresses and Imperial Concubines in the Yuanshi, Chabi died in the second month of the eighteenth year of the Zhiyuan era (1281). This should be correct. See YS 11:230; 106:2698.
The empress Nanbi 南必, was from the Onggirat clan, the daughter of Xiantong 仙童. Xiantong was the grandson of Nachen 納陳. She was conferred the title of empress in the twentieth year of the Zhuyuan era (1283) to live in the principal empress’s palace. At that time Shizu was very old, so this empress gradually became involved in politics. The chancellors and ministers could not see the emperor frequently, and they had to report things through the empress. She gave birth to one son whose name was Tiemiechi 鐵蔑赤.

The Zhen ci jing yi 貞慈靜懿 empress of Chengzong, named Shiliandali 失憐答里, was from the Onggirat clan, the daughter of Woluoachen 烏羅陳. In the tenth month of the third year of the Dade era (1297) she was designated as the empress. She gave birth to a son named Deshou 德壽 who died very young. In the tenth month of the third year of the Zhida era (1310) in Wuzong’s reign she was conferred posthumously the title of Zhen Ci Jing Yi Empress. The

---

12 Chengzong 成宗, temple name of Temür Öljeyū. 
13 The record about this woman in Table of Empresses and Imperial Concubines in the Yuanshi is different, it reads, “The Imperial Concubine Shiliandali was from the Onggirat clan. She died early. In the first year of the Zhida 至大 era (1308) she was posthumously conferred the title of Zheng Cii Jing Yi Empress, and was added to the temple of Chengzong.” She died before Chengzong ascended the throne. Therefore, she was called yuanfei 元妃 (principle imperial concubine) in the Houfei Biao. She was not conferred the title posthumously in Chengzong’s reign. The biography is wrong to say that she was designated as the empress in the third year of Dade. According to the basic annals of Chengzong, the empress that was designated in the third year of Dade was Empress Buluhan from the Boyawu 斗牙渾 clan, not from the Onggirat clan. See YS 20:429; 106:2697-8.
conferment book reads, "The respectful former principal imperial concubine from the Onggirat clan, who gave birth to a prince. Her virtue has been shown in the red palace history (tongshi 形史)..."
was afraid that when he returned he would retaliate because of her former enmity. So the empress ordered Anantashihli, the Prince of Anxi, sent to the capital, and planned to put him on the throne. Renzong entered the capital from Huaizhou and cleared up the palace. He killed Prince Anxi, and charged the empress with having a secret communication with the Prince Anxi. She was sent out to live in Dong’an Zhou.

The Xuan ci hui sheng 宣慈惠圣 Empress of Wuzong, named Zhenge 真哥, was from the Onggirat clan, the daughter of Bengbula 逆不剌 who was the son of Tuolian 脱憲. In the Fourth month of the third year of the Zhida era (1310) she was conferred the title of Empress. In the second year of the Huangqing era (1313) the Changqiu Temple 長秋寺 was set up to manage the affairs of the empress’s palace, which was ranked officially as the third rank. She died in the eleventh month of the fourth year of the Taiding era (1327). She was conferred the respectful title of Xuan Ci Hui Sheng Empress, and was buried together with Wuzong.

Zhenge真哥. Empress of Wuzong (?-1327)

---

14 Wuzong 武宗, temple name of Khaishan.
15 The identification of this woman has been controversial. According to Hakanchulun 哈刊楚倫, this painting was tagged “Zhengge” in the collection of the Palace Museum in Taiwan. But in an album of paintings published in Inner Mongolia, this woman is believed to be Nanbui 南必, the empress of Khubilai Khan. (see Hakanchulun, Menggu Kehan yu Kedun 蒙古可汗與可敦 The Mongolian Kings and Queens,
Empress Sugeshili 追哥失里, who was the daughter of Anchen Harzhi, the cousin of Empress Zhenge.

[Wuzong] had two imperial concubines: one was Yiqilieshi 乞烈氏 from the Ikires tribe, who was the daughter of princess Nuwulun 女兀倫. She actually gave birth to Mingzong. In the second year of the Tianli 天歷 era (1329) she was posthumously conferred the title of Ren Xian Zhang Sheng 仁獻章聖 Empress; the other was Tangwushi 唐兀氏 from the Tangwu clan, who gave birth to Wenzong. She was posthumously conferred the title of Wen Xian Zhao Sheng 文獻昭聖 Empress in the second year of the Tianli era (1329).

Empress of Wuzong. Name unknown

Taipei, Zhonghua Minguo Menggu Wenhua Xiehui, 1992:1) Another album of paintings published in the year of Jiazi 甲子 (1924) confirms that this woman was Zhengge (see Temugetu 特睦格圖 (ed.) Yuanchao Lidai Di Hou Xiang, Beiping 北平, Mengwen Shushe 蒙文書社, Jiazi Nian 甲子年).

16 Anchen Harzhi is not the name of one person. Instead Anchen is one person, and Harzhi is another person. Some words were missing following Anchen. According to the biography of Dei Sechan in the Yuanshi, Sugeshili was “the daughter of Harzhi who was the great grandson of Anchen.” See YS 118:2919.
The Zhuang yi ci sheng 庄懿慈圣 Empress of Renzong,\textsuperscript{17} named Anashihshihi, was from the Onggirat clan. She gave birth to Yingzong. In the third year of the Huangqing 皇慶 era (1314) she was conferred the title of empress, with conferment book and seal. Officers were sent to report and offer sacrifice to Heaven in the southern suburbs and the ancestral temple. The Diannei Yuan 典內院 was changed to Zhongzheng Yuan 中政院, which was ranked as the second highest (zheng er pin 正二品).

When Yingzong ascended the throne, she was conferred a respectful title of Empress Dowager. ... She received the congratulations of all the officials in the Xingsheng Palace 典盛宮.

She died in the second year of the Zhizhi 至治 era (1322). Then she was conferred the posthumous title of Zhuang yi ci sheng Empress. ... She was buried together with Renzong.

\textsuperscript{17} Renzong 仁宗 temple name of Ayurbarvada.
The Zhuang jing yi sheng วนธิธि
Empress Babuhan 八不罕 of Emperor Taiding,\(^\text{18}\) was from the Onggirat clan, the daughter of Woliuchar 幹留察儿 who was the grandson of Anchen. In the first year of the Taiding era (1324) she was conferred the title of empress.

Emperor Taiding had two imperial concubines: one was called Bihan 必罕, the other one was called Sukedali 追哥答里. They were all from the Onggirat tribe, daughters of Maizhuhan 買住罕, the Prince of Yen. In the early years of the Tianli era during Wenzong’s reign they were all settled in Dong’an Zhou.

\(^{18}\) Yisün Temür.
The Zhen yu hui sheng 贞裕徽圣 Empress of Mingzong, named Mailaidi 邁來迪, gave birth to Shundi and then died. When Wenzong came to the throne she was conferred the posthumous title of Zhen yu hui sheng Empress.

19 Mingzong 明宗, temple name of Khoshila.
Empress Babusha 不沙, was the daughter of Princess Shouning, the niece of Chengzong. She served Mingzong when he was a prince, and gave birth to Ningzong. In the second year of the Tianli era (1329) the Ninghui Temple 宁徽寺 was established to manage the palace affairs of the empress of Mingzong, ten thousand tings 錢 of money and two thousand pi 斤 of silk were appropriated for the consumption of this empress's palace. In the eleventh month the empress asked [the emperor] to pray for happiness for Mingzong in the nether world. Then the imperial teacher was ordered to lead all the monks in performing Buddhist services for seven days in the Datianyuan Yansheng Temple. The Taoist monks built sacrificial altars in the four palaces of Yuxu 玉虛, Tianbao 天寶, Taiyi 太乙, and Wanshou 萬壽, as well as on the two mountains of Wudang 武當 and the Longhu 龙虎. In the first year of the Zhishun era (1330), the administrative bureau was instructed to supply the empress's palace of Mingzong with two hundred pi 斤 of silk. She died in the fourth month of this year.
Empress Budashili 卜答失里 of Wenzong,²⁰ was from the Onggirat clan. Her father was the imperial son-in-law Diao’ebula 瑾阿不剌, her mother was the Princess of the State of Lu Sanggelaji 桑哥剌吉. When Wenzong lived at Jianye 建業, this empress was with him. When Wenzong ascended the throne in the first year of the Tianli era (1328), she was conferred the title of empress. In the second year [of Tianli] she was presented with the conferment certificate and seal. In the eleventh month of the same year the empress spent fifty thousand liangs of silver to help building the Dachengtian Husheng Temple. In the first year of the Zhishun era (1330) she granted the four hundred qing 頃 of land that was confiscated property of Zhang Gui to the Husheng Temple as its permanent property. Later she together with the eunuch Baizhu 拜住 murdered the empress of Mingzong, Babusha.

In the eighth month of the third year [of the Zhishun era] (1332), Wenzong died in Shangdu. The empress made known and obeyed the emperor’s initial intention and latest order, and put the second son of Mingzong, Yilinziban 鄂璘贊班, on the throne, who was Ningzong. In the eleventh month of the same year she was presented with the jade book and jade treasure (seal) and was conferred the title of Empress Dowager. In the twelfth month she received the congratulations of all the officials in the Xingsheng Palace. When Ningzong died, the ministers asked her to put the crown prince Yantiegusi 燕帖古思 on the throne. The empress said, “The position of an emperor is extremely important. My son is still young. The eldest son of Mingzong

²⁰ Wenzong 文宗, temple name of Tuq Temür.
Tuohuan-tiemur 妥懐帖睦爾 is now in Guangxi, and is now thirteen years old. It is appropriate to put him on the throne.” Then the minister undertook her order to receive Tuohuan-tiemur to the capital. In the sixth month of the next year (1333) Shundi ascended the throne. In the first year of the Yuan tong 元統 era (1334) she was respectfully titled as Great Empress Dowager, and was still present in court to receive ministerial reports. In the sixth month of the sixth year of the Zhīyuan era (1340) the emperor ordered her deprived of her respectful titles and settled her in Dung’an Zhou. She died soon after.

Empress Daliyetemishi 答里也忒迷失 of Ningzong, was from the Onggirat clan. She was designated as empress in the tenth month of the third year of the Zhīshun era (1332). She died in the twenty-eighth year of the Zhīzheng era (1368). Then she was buried and received sacrifices together with Ningzong.

Empress Danashili 答納失里 of Shundi, was from the Chipchaq 錫察 clan, the daughter of Prince of Taiping, Yantiemur 雁帖木兒. In the fourth year of the Zhīshun era (1333) she was designated as empress. In the second year of the Yuan tong era (1334) she was presented with the

---

21 Ningzung 尋宗, temple name of Irijibal.
22 Shundi 順帝, temple name of Toqon Temür.
conferment book and seal. The conferment book reads, "...Empress Chipchaq, you are elegant, sedate, kind, modest, quiet, refined and gentle. Your grandfathers and your father have been open-minded and determined. They have been of great help in governing this state..." In the third year [of Yuantong](1335), the empress’s elder brother Tang Qishi 唐其勢, the chief censor, was killed because of his conspiring against the emperor. The empress’s younger brother Talahai ran into her palace and hid there. The empress used her clothes to shield him. Therefore she was moved out of the palace. The chancellor Boyan 伯顏 killed her with poison in a private house in Kaiping.

Empress Boyanhudu 伯顏忽都, was from the Onggirat clan, was the daughter of the Prince of Yude, Boluoitemur, who was the nephew of the Empress of Xuan Ci Hui Sheng, Zhenge. In the third month of the third year of the Zhiyuan era (1337) she was conferred the title of empress. ...She gave birth to prince Zhenjin 錦金 who died when he was two years old.

The empress was thrifty, and never jealous. She always kept herself within the bounds of rules and etiquette. The second empress Qishi lived in the West palace of Xingsheng and she was favored by the emperor. The emperor rarely went to the East palace. The servants of the empress talked about this, but the empress had almost no complaints. Once she followed the emperor on an imperial inspection tour of the Upper capital, on the road they had a stop-over. The emperor sent a eunuch to announce a decree [to the empress]. He wanted to visit the empress. The empress
declined and said, "Night time is not the appropriate time for you, the most revered and respected, to come." The eunuch went back and forth three times, but she eventually refused to receive the emperor. Then the emperor deemed that she was more virtuous. The emperor had once asked her, "The Zhongzheng Yuan drew money and grain all by delivering your order, do you still remember them?" The empress answered, "If I need, I will draw some. As for things related to income and expenses, I had to entrust a person to take charge of them. How can I remember all of them?" When she lived in the Kunde Palace, she sat up straight all day long, and never went outside the door wantonly. She died in the eighth month of the twenty fifth year of the Zhizheng era (1365). She was forty two years old. When Empress Qi saw that the clothes she left were so old, she laughed heartily and said, "As the principal empress, what is the need to wear such kind of clothes!" From this we know how thrifty she was. One month later, the crown prince returned from Jining 冀宁, and cried for her very sadly.

Empress Wanzhehudu 完者忽都, Qishi 奇氏, who was a Korean, gave birth to the crown prince Aiyoushilidala 爱猷识理达腊. Her family was of very low origin. After she became the empress, they became rich and powerful. Three generations of her family were conferred posthumously the titles of princes. Initially, she was introduced by the servant Tumandier of the Huizheng Yuan. As a maid in the palace, she was mainly responsible for serving Shundi tea. She was very clever and crafty, and was gradually favored by Shundi. Later the empress Danashili was jealous of her, and flogged her with a whip and insulted her many times. When empress Danashili was murdered, the emperor intended to designate her as the empress. But the chancellor Boyan pleaded with the emperor not to do so. After Boyan was dismissed from the chancellor’s office, Shalaban suggested the emperor designate her as the second empress. She was settled in the Xingsheng Palace, and the Huizheng Yuan was renamed as Zizheng Yuan.

In her spare time, the empress read the Classics of Female Filial Piety (Nü Xiao Jing) and historical books, trying to find out about those virtuous empresses of past dynasties, so as to take them as models. When there were rare delicacies in the tributes born other states, she would first sent somebody to present them to the ancestral temple, only then would she eat them. In the eighteenth year of the Zhizheng era, a severe famine occurred in the capital. The empress ordered the officers to make porridge to feed the famine victims. She gave out her own gold, silver, millet, and cloth, and ordered the Piaobuhua 朴不花, the commissioner of the Zizheng Yuan, to buy graveyards at the eleven gates of the capital and bury more than one hundred thousand bodies. Then she ordered the Buddhist monks to set up a “water and land conference” (shui lu da hui) to redeem their lost souls by making offerings and saying prayers. At that time Shundi was
tired of governmental affairs. The empress schemed with the crown prince Ayoushilidalala to force the emperor to abdicate and hand over the throne to his son. They sent Biaobuhua to tell their intention to the chancellor Taiping, but Taiping did not answer them. Then the empress invited Taiping to her palace, and bestowed wine on him, and personally spoke of her previous request. But again Taiping refused her. From then on the empress and the crown prince disliked him. When the emperor knew the empress’s intention, he was angry and estranged himself from her by refusing to see her for two months. Piaobuhua had been favored because of the empress. Now he was being impeached and dismissed from office. Then the empress hinted the chief censor Fojuanu to defend him. However, Fojuanu planned to impeach Piaobuhua even further more. When the empress found out, he instigated the other censors to impeach Fojuanu and had him demoted to Chaohe.

Initially, the people of Qishi’s clan in Korea took advantage of the empress’s power and became more and more arrogant and overbearing. The Korean king was angry and killed them all. In the twenty-third year [of the Zhizheng era] (1363), the empress told the crown prince, “Why don’t you avenge me?” They designated a man of the Korean royal family who stayed in the capital of China as the king, and designated the man of the Qi clan, Sanpaonu, as the crown prince (yuanzi 子). At the same time they designated Cuitiemur, the co-director of the Department of Military Affairs, as the [Korean] chancellor. They dispatched an army of ten thousand soldiers, recruited Japanese soldiers, and went to Korea. Having just crossed the Yalu River, Korean troops suddenly appeared from all directions. They suffered a crushing defeat, with only seventeen cavalries escaping. The empress was very ashamed.

In the seventh month of the twenty-fourth year, Boluotiemur led troops to assault the capital. The crown prince ran to Jining, and gave orders to send armed forces to suppress Boluotiemur. Boluotiemur was angry, and he instigated the censorial inspector, Wu Qizong 武起宗, to accuse the empress of interfering in state affairs. Wu Qizong suggested that the emperor should move her outside of the capital. But the emperor did not permit this. In the third month of the twenty-fifth year (1365), [Boluotiemur] delivered a false imperial edict and put the empress under house arrest at the administration of semus 诸色總管府, and ordered his conspirator Yaoboyanbuhua to guard her. On the day of gengyin of the fourth month, Boluotiemur forced the empress to return to her palace to fetch her seal, and then he forged the empress’s letter to summon the crown prince. The empress was then again returned to the prison. Later the empress gave several beautiful girls to Boluotiemur. After one hundred days she finally returned to her palace. After Boluotiemur died, the crown prince was recalled to the capital. The empress delivered an imperial edict to Kuokuotiernur, ordering him to send troops to accompany
the crown prince, trying to force the emperor to abdicate and hand over the throne to the prince. Kuokuotiemiur knew her intention. When they arrived at a place thirty **li** from the capital he ordered the troops to return to their camps. The crown prince took a dislike to him. This can be seen in the biography of Kuokuotiemiur.

At that time, the empress Boyanhudu died. In the twelfth month, the ministers of the Secretarial Council presented a memorial to the emperor, saying that the empress should be designated as the principal empress. Yet the emperor did not give his permission. Then they presented another memorial to the emperor, suggesting that **Zi Zheng Yuan** 資政院 be changed to **Chong Zheng Yuan** 崇政院. It was also under the leadership of the **Zhong Zheng Yuan** 中政院. The emperor then conferred her with a conferment book and treasure. The conferment book reads: “....Suliangho Shi 肅良合氏 was born to a illustrious family, and came to serve me. You have been prudent and diligent day and night. You have been respectful and frugal and set up a good example for others for years. You have given birth to the crown prince who will carry on future generations. Therefore it is proper for you to occupy the position of the principal empress. Our relatives and ministers have presented many memorials to me about this. All the people in the imperial harem with you to occupy the respectful position. Since you have modestly declined many times, this deed should be especially praised. Now I send this grand commandant, with my edict, to present you with the jade certificate and seal and appoint you to the position of empress...” In the twenty-eighth year (1365) she followed the emperor north.

**YUANSHI VOLUME 116**

The **Xian Yi Zhuang Sheng** 順懿莊聖 Empress of Ruizong, named Suoluhetieni 速魯合帖尼, was from the Kereit tribe. She gave birth to Xianzong and Shizu who became emperors successively. In the second year of the Zhiyuan era (1265) she was posthumously titled **Zhuang Sheng** Empress, and was buried together with Ruizong.

In the twelfth month of the second year of the **Zhida** era (1309) she was additionally titled **Xian Yi Zhuang Sheng** Empress. In the tenth month of the third year [of the Zhiyuan era] she was presented with the jade letter of imperial edict. ...

---

23 Ruizong 熹宗, temple name of Tolui.
24 It should be the third year of the Zhiyuan era (1266).
The Hui ren yu sheng Empress 徽仁裕聖 of Yuzong 25 Bolanyeqiechi 伯藍也怯赤, also known as Kuokuozhen 闔闔真, was from the Onggirat tribe. She gave birth to Shunzong and Chengzong.

Once when Shizu went out to hunt, on his way he felt thirsty, so he went to a tent, where he saw a girl weaving camel’s hair. Shizu asked her for some horse milk. The girl said, “We have horse milk, but my parents and brothers are not home right now. I am a girl and cannot give it to you.” Shizu was about to leave, but the girl said, “I am here alone. If you come and leave, it would not be proper according to courtesy. My parents will come back soon, please just wait for a while.” Soon her parents came home. They presented horse milk to Shizu to drink. When Shizu left he was full of praise of her. He said, “If I can get such a girl as my daughter-in-law, wouldn’t that be a nice thing?” Later Shizu discussed with the ministers about selecting a wife for the crown prince. He was not satisfied with any of the candidates. An old minister had heard Shizu’s previous words, and knew that the girl had not been married off, so he told Shizu about this. Shizu was extremely happy, and selected her as the imperial concubine for the crown prince.

This empress showed great filial piety and prudence, and conducted great services in the palace of Shizu. Shizu always called her “virtuous daughter-in-law”. When she served the Zhao rui shun sheng Empress, 26 she never left her. Even the paper used in the washroom she would rub it on her face to make it soft for [the Zhao rui shun sheng Empress]. One day, when Yuzong was ill, Shizu went to see him. When he saw the golden brocade mattress on the bed he was unhappy and said to her, “I have thought you are virtuous, why are you like this?” The empress knelt down and replied, “We usually never dare to use it. Now that the crown prince is ill, I am afraid that he will get eczema. Therefore I used it for him.” She immediately removed it from the bed.

When Shizu died, Chengzong went to Shangdu. All the princes met together. Previously, the vice chief censor Cui Yu 崔彧 got a jade seal from the home of the great grandson of King Muqali, Shide 世德. The characters read, “You have received the order of heaven. You will have a long life and be prosperous.” (受命于天, 既壽永昌) Then he presented it to the empress. At this time she personally gave it to Chengzong. When Chengzong ascended the throne as emperor, he titled the empress respectfully as empress dowager... He ordered an official office set up for her, and the Hui Zheng Yuan established. Later the officials of the Hui Zheng Yuan received seven hundred qing 27 of land in the west of Zhejiang and put it under the name of the empress dowager. But she said, “I am a widowed woman, I already have enough food and clothing.

25 Yuzong 裕宗, temple name of Jin Gim.
26 Temple title of Chabui, empress of Khubilai Khan.
Besides, the lands south of the Yangzi River all belong to the country, how can I take it as my own property?” She immediately ordered the Secretariat Council to dismiss the officials who had accepted this piece of donated land. The empress dowager’s younger brother wanted to obtain an official position through her, but she told him, “You want to get a position? You should apply for it yourself, do not make trouble for me.” Later, her younger brother was really dismissed from his position. People were all convinced that she had prophetic vision.

She died in the second month of the fourth year of the Dade era (1300), and was buried in the crown prince Zhenjin’s tomb. She was posthumously titled Yu sheng 裕聖 Empress, and was offered sacrifices in the temple of Yuzong. In the tenth month of the third year of the Zhida era, she was additionally titled Hui ren yu sheng Empress.

The Xuan yi shu sheng 宣懿淑聖 Empress of Xianzong 顯宗,28 named Puyanqielimishi 普顏怯里迷失, was from the Onggirat tribe. Xianzong married her when he lived in the official residence in Jin 畿. She gave birth to Emperor Taiding.

In the first year of the Taiding era (1324) she was posthumously titled Xuan Yi Shu Sheng Empress. She was added to the temple of Xianzong. In the early years of the Tianli era 天利 Xianzong’s temple was again offered sacrifices.

The Zhao xian yuans sheng 昭獻元聖 Empress of Shunzong 顯宗,29 named Daji 答己, from the Onggirat tribe, was the daughter of Hundutiemur 荒都帖木兒 who was the grandson of Anchen. When Yuzong lived at the official residences of Yan 燕 and Chao River 潮河, Shunzong was there to serve him. When he got older, Shizu granted him a maidservant, Mrs. Guo. Later he married the empress who gave birth to Wuzong and Renzong.

In the ninth year of the Dade era (1305), Chengzong was seriously ill. Empress Buluhan 卜魯罕 was in charge of government affairs, and she deported Renzong and his mother out of the capital to live at Huaizhou 歡州. In the twelfth month of the tenth year of the Dade era, the empress arrived at Huaizhou. In the first month of the eleventh year of the Dade era (1307) Chengzong died. At that time Wuzong was commanding troops in the north frontier. The Right Chancellor Dalahan30 Halahasun 哈剌哈孫 secretly sent envoys to report it to Renzong. [Renzong] immediately returned to the capital with the empress. The empress and Renzong entered the mourning hall to cry, then went out to live in their old residence. Every morning and

---

27 One qing equals to 100 mu, or 16.44 acres.
28 Xianzong 显宗, temple name of Ganmala.
29 順宗 Shunzong, temple name of Dalamabala.
30 Mo. Darhan, freeman.
evening they went to the mourning hall to make offerings to the spirits of the dead. In the meantime they sent envoys to greet Wuzong returning to the capital who was going to ascend the throne in the fifth month.

Initially, the empress dowager gave her two sons’ stars to the fortune-teller. When she asked the fortune-teller who should be made the emperor, the answer was, “There will be a disaster when the son born in the time of Chongguang dahuangluo 重光大荒落 ascends the throne, but the son born in the time of Zhanmeng zuo’e 旃蒙作噩 will rule a long time on the throne.” Chongguang was the birth-year of Wuzong, and Zhanmeng was the birth-year of Renzong. The empress dowager was quite misled by his words. Then she sent her close minister Duoer 朵耳 to tell Wuzong, “You two brothers were both born by me, how could I have different relationships with you? But we cannot ignore the words of the fortune-teller about the long and short fortunes of the throne.” When Wuzong heard this he did not say anything, but he called in Kangli Tuotuo 康里脱脱 and told him, “I have been guarding the northern frontier for ten years, and I am the oldest brother of the family. The empress dowager uses the fortune-teller’s words as an excuse. They are hard to believe. If my rule satisfies the will of heaven and the hopes of the people, then even if I am on the throne for as short as one day, it is enough to leave my name for ten thousand years. How could she believe the fortune-teller’s words, and change the entrustment of the ancestors?” Tuotuo forwarded these words to the empress-dowager. She was stunned, and said, “Although the saying of long and short rule was from the fortune-teller, I also have a long view for you, because I deeply love you. Since you say this, you should come immediately.” The details can be seen in the biography of Kangli Tuotuo.

In the fifth month, Wuzong ascended the throne. He titled the empress as empress dowager on the same day. He also designated Renzong crown prince. The three palaces were in harmony. In the eleventh month, the emperor paid respect to the empress dowager in Longfu Palace 隆福宫, and presented her with jade certificate and jade seal. In the third month of the first year of the Zhida era (1308), the emperor built Xingsheng Palace 興盛宮 for the empress dowager, and presented her with money of fifth thousand tings, and silk of twenty thousand jins (10,000 kilogram). In the first month of the second year, the empress dowager went to the Wutai 五臺 Mountain to conduct Buddhist ceremonies. She called the Korean king Wang Zhang 王瑠 to go with her. In the fourth month, [the emperor] established the General Administration for the Property and Tax of the Jiangsu and Anhui (Jiang Huai caifu zongguanfu 江淮財賦總管府) of the Xingsheng Palace, to deal with the money and grain for the consumption of the empress dowager. In the second month of the third year, [the emperor] conducted a sacrifice ceremony in the south suburb to report the entitlement of empress dowager. In the fourth month [the emperor?
divided four thousand households at Falconer Town (Ying fang 鹰坊) belonging to Xingsheng Palace and moved them to Liaoyang, and established a Myriarch Administration (wan hu fu 萬戶府) to govern them. On wushen 戊申 day of the fourth month, the emperor led the crown prince and all the princes and palace officials to the Xingsheng Palace to grant the empress dowager a respectful title and to present her with a certificate and a seal. The characters of her title are “Yitian xingsheng ciren zhaoyi shouyuan 儀天興聖慈仁昭懿壽元Empress Dowager”. On gengxu 庚戌 day the empress dowager offered thanks in the Imperial Ancestral Temple. Because the empress dowager received the respectful title, [the emperor] issued an imperial edict to give a general pardon to all the people under heaven. In the fourth year (1311) Renzong ascended the throne. In the third month of the second year of the Yanyou 延祐 era (1315), the emperor led all princes and officials in presenting the empress dowager with a jade certificate and seal. More characters were added to her titles, “Yitian xingsheng ciren zhaoyi shouyuan Quande Taining Fuqing 儀天興聖慈仁昭懿壽元全德泰寧福慶Empress Dowager”.

In the seventh year of the Yanyou era (1320), Yingzong ascended the throne. In the twelfth month, the emperor titled the empress dowager as Great Empress Dowager (Tai huangtaihou 太皇太后), the entitlement letter reads: “...your virtue has surpassed the Wenmu 文穆. Your beneficence is higher than the Wenmu 文穆. Therefore four characters should be added to your title...Now we respectfully present you with the jade certificate and seal, expanding your title as Yitian xingsheng ciren zhaoyi shouyuan quande taining fuqing huiwen chongyou 儀天興聖慈仁昭懿壽元全德泰寧福慶文崇佑Empress Dowager.”

On bingchen 辛辰 day the Great Empress Dowager went to the Daming Palace to receive court congratulations. At the wushen 戊申 day she offered thanks to the Imperial Ancestral Temple. The Empress Dowager saw that Yingzong had heroic spirits when he was young, while Yingzong was relatively weak. All the vile characters believed that it would not be beneficial if Mingzong ascend the throne. Therefore they supported putting Yingzong on the throne. When Yingzong ascended the throne, the empress dowager came to congratulate him. Yingzong firmly showed an unpleasant facial expression to her. When the empress dowager returned she felt regret, and said, “I should not have brought this son up!” Soon she was ill with a grievance in her heart. She died in the second month of the third year of the Zhizhi 至治 era (1323), and was buried together with Shunzong.31

31 There is an error about the date of her death. According to the basic annals of Yingzong in the Yuanshi, Daji died in 1322. See YS 28:624. There is a record “The Great Empress Dowager died” under bingchen 辛辰 day of the ninth month of the second year of the Zhizhi era. This should be the reliable date of her death. In addition, under Wushen day of the third month of the third year of the Zhizhi era there is a record “the Great Empress Dowager was worshiped in the temple of Shunzong.” See YS 28:629.
The empress dowager was naturally intelligent. She assisted three emperors in governing the country. She taught the maidservants in the palace to do needlework, and she herself personally did housework. However, she was careless about her conduct. And since she occupied the principal position of the Palace, she was even more and more lascivious and unrestrained. Inside her palace she trusted Hei Lü’s 黑驍 mother Yilieshiba 亦烈失八; outside her palace her favored Shiliemen, Niulin, and the then-chancellor Diemutier who acted in collusion with each other, and they even insulted and beat the director of political affairs Zhang Gui, stopping at nothing and fouling up court affairs. When Yingzong ascended the throne, all her favorites were killed, and their forces suddenly died out.

Daji答己 (?-1323). Wife of Shunzong.32

32 The identification of this woman has been controversial. According to Hakanchulun 哈刊楚倫，this painting was tagged “Taji 塔濟” in the collection of the Palace Museum in Taiwan. But in an album of paintings published in Inner Mongolia, this woman is believed to be Shiliandali, the empress of Chengzong. (see Hakanchulun, Menggu Kehan yu Kedu; 蒙古可汗與可敦 The Mongolian Kings and Queens, Taipei, Zhonghua Minguo Menggu Wenhua Xiehui, (1992):1) Another album of paintings published in the year of Jiazi 甲子 (1924) confirms that this woman was Daji (see Temugetu 特睦格圖 (ed.) YuanchaoliLidai di hou xiang, Beijing 北平, Mengwen Shushe 蒙文書社, Jiazi Nian 甲子年).
Appendix II

**REIGN PERIODS OF MONGOL KHANS AND YUAN EMPERORS**

**YEKE MONGOQOL ULUS—YUAN DYNASTY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Personal Name</th>
<th>Temple Name</th>
<th>Reign Period</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chinggis Khan 成吉思汗</td>
<td>Taizu 太祖</td>
<td>1206-1227</td>
<td>1162-1227. 1189 became the leader of the Mongol Nirun tribe. Defeated Tartar, Naiman, Kereit, and unified Mongolia. 1206 became Mongol Khan, called Chinggis Khan. Mongol Empire was founded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tolui 拓雷</td>
<td>Ruizong 嘉宗</td>
<td>1227-1228 (Regent)</td>
<td>1193-1232. * 1227 Chinggi Khan died, Tolui became regent. 1229 Ögödei ascended throne. Tolui was ordered to conquer the Jin and died in Henan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Töregene 脫列哥那</td>
<td></td>
<td>1241-1245 (Regent)</td>
<td>?-1246. A Naiman woman. The sixth wife of Ögödei. The five years of Töregene’s government was a disaster for the Mongol empire.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Güyük 忽必烈</td>
<td>Dingzong 定宗</td>
<td>1246-1248</td>
<td>1206-1248. 1241 Ögödei designated his grandson Shiremiin as heir-apparent. 1246 Töregene disobeyed Ögödei’s will and put her own son Güyük on the throne.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ogul Qaimish 阿古里海達</td>
<td></td>
<td>1248-1251 (Regent)</td>
<td>Third empress of Güyük. 1248 Güyük died, she became regent for 3 years. She intended to put Shiremiin on the throne but failed. When Möngke ascended the throne, she was put to death.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Möngke 蒙哥</td>
<td>Xianzong 惠宗</td>
<td>1251-1259</td>
<td>1208-1259. With the support of his mother Sorghaghtani-Beki and Batu, he ascended the throne in 1251. 1258 launched a conquering war against Southern Song, 1259 died in Sichuan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khubilai 忽必烈</td>
<td>Shizu shi世祖</td>
<td>1260-1294—Chongtung 中統 1260-64 Zhiyuan 至元 1264-94</td>
<td>1215-1294. In 1251 he was ordered by Möngke to govern the Chinese territories in the south of Mongolia. 1259 commanded Mongol troops to attack Ezhou of the Southern Song. When Möngke died, he was involved in the struggles for throne with his younger brother Arigh Böke. 1260, he ascended throne in Kaiping without the election of khuriltai, and started to use Chinese reign title Zhongtong. In 1264 he</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Huhewendur believes that Tolui was born in 1187 based on the Qingshi 青史. 
Khaishan

1285-1320, When Wenzong died, a palace coup occurred in Dadu. Yantiemur, the deputy administrator of the Department of Military Affairs, gathered all officials in the Xingsheng Palace and announced their decision to enthrone Tuq Temür, the second son of Wuzong. The Chancellor Daolasha put the crown prince Arigiba on the throne in Shandu in the 9th month of 1328. In the 10th month of the same year Tuq Temür's troops captured Shangdu. Arigiba was missing.

Shidebala

1303-1323. Son of Renzong, succeeded to the throne when Wenzong died. His radical political reforms infringed upon the interests of some Mongol nobles and therefore he was assassinated by Tieshi and other political opponents in the “Nanpo incident” in the 8th month of 1323.

Yisün Temür

1293-1328. When Shidebala was assassinated, Yisün Temür ascended the throne in the 9th month of 1323 in Mongolia with the support of Tieshi, the assassin in the “Nanpo incident” and other Mongol nobles.
<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Khoshila</td>
<td>Mingzong</td>
<td>1229 天歷-</td>
<td>Dadu Khoshila was murdered by Tuq Temür. Tuq Temür restored himself to the throne.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>和世剌</td>
<td>明宗</td>
<td>1st month-8th month (7 months)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuq Temül</td>
<td>Wenzong</td>
<td>1329-1332-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>圖帖睦爾</td>
<td>文宗</td>
<td>Tianli 天歷</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1328-30 (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Zhishun 至順</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1330-1332</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irinjibal</td>
<td>Ningzong</td>
<td>1332-----</td>
<td>1326-1332. The second son of Khoshila. In the 8th month of 1332 Tuq Temül died. His empress Budashili put Irinjibal on the throne in the 10th month of 1332. He died in the 11th month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>憨璘只班</td>
<td>宋宗</td>
<td>Zhishun 至順</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(43 days)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toqon Temül</td>
<td>Shundi</td>
<td>1333-1368-</td>
<td>1320-1370. When Irinjibal died, Empress Budashili decided to put Toqon Temül, the first son of Mingzong, on the throne. Toqon Temül ascended the throne in the 6th month of 1333. In 1351 the Red Scarf Rebellion broke out. 1368 Zhu Yuanzhang’s troops captured Dadu. The Yuan dynasty ended. Toqon Temül ran to the north, and died in 1370.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>妥歡帖睦爾</td>
<td>順帝</td>
<td>Yuanlong 元統</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1333-1335, Zhiyuan 至元</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1335-1340, Zhizheng 至正</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1340-1368</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SOURCES:**


Appendix III

GLOSSARY

Abd al-Rahman (chn. Audu-laheman 奥都剌合曼) chief chancellor during Toregene's regency (1241-46).
Abishqa, son of Būri.
Aga, m. concubine
Aha m. chief
Aha 阿哈, son of Suor-Huo-du 勒兒火都 of the Onggirat tribe.
Ahuruq 奧魯, place where the families of Mongol army remained.
Aiyashiri/AiyashWEiyash%, daughter of Chengzong成宗, wife of Kuolijisi開里吉思 of the Öngüt Tribe.
Ala-d-Din-Malik: Ta‘rikh-Jaaham-Gusha The history of the world conqueror 世界征服者史
Alahai Beki/Alaqa Beki 阿喇海別吉, daughter of Chinggis Khan, married into the Öngüt tribe.
Alakhushi-Khuri, head of the Öngüt tribe.
AI-Altun Beki Al勒吒-阿勒臺別乞 also Ilghaltun Beki/Alun Beki, daughter of Chinggis Khan, married Barshukh Art Tegin 巴爾術阿爾的惕斤, the Idu-qut (Idikut) of the Uighur tribe.
Alandar 阿藍答兒
Alanquo 阿蘭豁阿, female ancestor (Mo. emegen) of the Mongol tribe.
Alawusi Tijihuli 阿剌兀思 - 剃吉忽里, chief of the Öngüt tribe.
Alatena-shina 阿剌忒納答納, son of Wenzong.
Alchi / Anchi /Anchen 按陳, son of Dei Sechen.
Aleiquan 阿勒泉
Alijiashili 阿里嘉宣利, son of Diao’a-Bula.
Alimali 阿力麻里
Aliqimish, wife of Arigh Böke, daughter of Töröldchi. 脫劣勒赤 of the Oirat tribe.
Ariqachi 阿里合赤, wife off Töde-Môngke (third son of Toqoqan)
Altaju 按塔出, wife of Bayan, daughter of Dödei.
Altan Tobci 黃金史,
Altan Uruh Golden Clan
Amoga 阿木哥, eldest son of Tarmabala.
Ananda Oghul 阿難答, son of Mangqala 忙哥剌 (grandson of Khubilai)
Anda m. sworn brother
Anda 俺答 Khan
Antu 安禿, daughter of Kuøchu 闌出 (son of Öödei), wife of Suorha of the Ikires tribe.
Aruqtluq, daughter of Môngke-Temür, wife of Tarqai of the Oirat tribe
Arghun, 阿魯罕, Il-Khan of Persia (1284-1291).
Argun 阿爾古納河
Arigh Böke 阿里不哥 (the youngest son of Tolui)
Ashi 阿失, grandson of Maizhuhan.
Ashituhulu/Ashi(q)tuqluq 阿失失韋魯, daughter of the Mongol prince Nahubuhua
Ashi失忽花, wife of Shuhunan of the Öngüt Tribe
Auljatai 完者臺, wife of Môngke-Temür蒙哥帖木兒
Aürgnehi/Orqiña Khatun (Qara- Büyükü’s wife)
Ayurbavada (Ren-zong) 愛黴拔拔力八達 1312-1320. son of Tarmabala.
Ba’atur hero, a brave and strong man
Babuhan 八罕, empress of Emperor Tading.
Babusha （）, empress of Mingzong
Baidasha 拜答沙, Mongol princess, wife of Maizhuhan of the Onggirat tribe.
Baikal 貝加爾湖
Baishen Ren 白身人
Baizhu 拜住, eunuch in Wenzong’s reign.
Balashili 八剌失里, Prince of Chang.
Banzhuni River 班朱尼河
Baosi 被支, a favorite woman of the You Wang 丘王 of the Zhou dynasty.
Balashili 八剌失里, son of Ashi of the Ikires tribe.
Baragün-gar ）, right-wing
Bars-buqa/ Pers-buqa (husband of Yantiemur, the daughter of Tolui)
Barsbok Art Tegin 巴爾格爾阿爾的惕斤, the Iduqut (Idikut) of the Uighur tribe.
Batu Khan 拔都, son of Jochi.
Batur, m. warrior.
Bayalun 巴牙論, wife of Temür-Buqa, sister of Hülegü’s wife Qutui Khatun.
Bay’uaut 伯要吾氏
Bayan Khudu 伯顏忽都, wife of Korean king Wang To, daughter of Amoga.
Bayan 伯顏
Bayan m. the rich, feudal lord
Begi m. princess
Beki m. official title
Belge m. ceremony for engagement
Bengbula 恭不剌, son of Tuolian of the Onggirat tribe.
Biel m. daughter-in-law
Bige 必哥, the second son of Anchen.
Bi han 必罕, empress of Emperor Taidu, daughter of Maizhuhan
Biki(amish (Bielimishi) 別里迷失 (the great-grandson of Khuduqa Beki, the son of Pärbuqa)
Bilge m. a good and wise man
Boduanchar 李端察儿, youngest son of Alanquoa.
Boghtagh m. Headress.
Böl m. slave
Boluoketu 李羅克禿, place name in Mongolia.
Boluo Tiemuer 李羅帖木兒, son of Bengbula of the Onggirat tribe.
Boraqchin (Bola Hezhen 正宮李刺合真皇后), first wife of Ögödei Khan.
Borhu 博爾忽
Börögön 李二只今
Borshu 博爾術
Börte 乌斯 伯特帖兀真, Cheinggis Khan's first wife, the daughter of Dei Sechen of the
Botasurin 寶塔失里, wife of Korean King Kongmin, Wang Ki 王祺, daughter of Amoga.
Botu 李禿, brother-in-law of Chinggis Khan, nobleman of the Ikires tribe.
Boworschu 李斡儿出
Boyaluhan 伯牙魯罕, daughter of Môngke Khan, married Hulian 忽憐, of the Ikires tribe.
Boyanhudu 伯顏忽都, Princess of Qinghua” 慶華公主, married Korean king Wang To.
Boyokha 孛要合 younger son of Alaques, the leader of the Öngüt tribe.
Buda-shili 不答失里, empress of Wenzong, daughter of Diao’abula 呉阿不剌.
Buhua 不花, Hulian’s younger cousin, Tiemugan 帖木干’s son.
Buhainan 不海罕, wife of Suorha of the Ikires tribe.
Bulanxi 不蘭奚, granddaughter of Môngke Khan, wife of Hulian of the Ikires tribe.
Bulga 不剌合, wife of Jurikeh 街里客 (son of Tolui).
Bulianjidai 不懼吉歹, Suoduge’s son, Prince of Ning Chang 宁昌郡王.
Bulaghan 不舖罕, empress of Chengzong Temür Öljeitü.
Bulughan*, Mongol princess, wife of Tuoluohetuo of the Onggirat tribe.
Buqa-Temür (son of Törölichī)
Bürü, Qara-Hülegü’s elder broth.
Buyanhudu 不顏忽都, daughter of Boluo Tiemuer 李羅帖木耳, empress of Mingzong.
Buyanxiban 不顏昔班
Buyiruq 不亦魯黑罕, chief of the Naiman tribe.
Buzhier 不只兒, grandson of Huqu.

Changji 昌吉, grandson of Chigu.
Chileun 赤老溫
Chinggis Khan 成吉思汗
Chingtüm镶土木, wife of Qonichi.
Chobi 趙妃.
Cho Ch'ung 趙沖
Ch’oe T’an 崔坦
Ch’oe Yi 崔怡
Ch’ün 處仁 city
Ch’ung-hwa 貞和, wife of the Korean King Ch’ungyǒ.
Chouhun 呂漢, descendant of Bige 比哥 of the Onggirat tribe.
chu shui jiu lu 出水就陸

Dada (Tartar)
Dadu 大都, Grand Capital of the Yuan dynasty.
Daji 城己, a favorite woman of Zhou Wang 舜紂王 of the Shang dynasty.
Dalamabala 答剌麻八剌, Yuzong’s son 順宗 Shunzong.
Dar Haizi 答兒海子
Darhan m. freeman
Darughachi 達魯花赤
Da xile 大喜樂

Dei Sechen 德薛禪, father-in-law of Chinggis Khan, a nobleman of the Onggirat tribe.
Deleger River 德勒格爾河
Deshou 德壽, son of Chengzong.
Diao-a-bula 畢阿不剌, son of Tiemuer of the Onggirat tribe, husband of princess Sengge Ragi (Xiangge-Laji 祥哥剌吉).
Dobun-mergen, son of Alanquoa.
D’Ohsson, i. X. Abe Remusat, Nouveaux Melanges Asiatique.
Dongping 東平
Dongzhen 東真
Duluo 都薩兒, grandson of Harhasun.
Dumugan/Tümügen 獨木干, daughter of Tolui, married to Niegutai 聶古台 (Prince of Yu 齊王, son of Zhenguo), remarried Chahu 索忽 of the the Öngüt Tribe.
Duor-Zhiban 朵兒只班, Mongol princess, wife of Alijiashili of the Onggirat tribe.
Dürlükín 多兒勒斤
Ebuge  m. ancestor
Ecige  m. father
Egechi  m. elder sister
Eke   m. mother
Ekener  m. wife
El-Chiqmish Khatun (the senior wife of Arigh Böke)
Emegen 額木干, wife of Melik-Temür 明理帖木儿, daughter of Pars-buqa 巴兒思不花 of the Oirat tribe.
Emergen  m. female ancestor
Empress Lü 呂后
Eshitei 額失歹, wife of Arigh Böke.
Fatima (sorcery) 法蒂瑪
Gaochang 高昌
Gegen (1320-1323)
Gergen  m. principal wife
Ghazan Khan 合贊罕, r. 1295-1304, son of Arhun.
Goden Horde 金帳汗國
Guanglu Dafu 光禄大夫, Grand Master for Splendid Happiness.
Guna-dala 古納答剌, son of Wenzong.
Gurgen/ Kürege  m. son-in-law
Gür-khan 古兒罕
Güyük 貴由, first son of Ögödei Khan.
Had  m. duke, prince
Hadahan 哈答罕, daughter of Prince Saiyinzhubu 賽因主卜, wife of Yuelietai 月列台。
Hadan-tulugan 哈丹秃魯干, descendant of Hechiwen 合赤溫 (the younger brother of Chinggis Khan).
Hahai 哈海, son of Nachen.
Hama, 哈麻, bodyguard of Shundi.
Hao Jing 郝經, advisor of Khubilai Khan.
Har-dijin 哈兒的斤
Harhasun 哈兒哈孫, son of Ce.
Harzhi 哈兒只
Hasar 合撤兒, younger brother of Chinggis Khan.
Hechiwen 合赤溫
Heqin 和親
Hö’elun 肥阿倫, wife of Yesugei, mother of Chinggis Khan.
Hö’ün  m. son
Höbe’gün  son, prince
Holuiqan 裴雷罕, daughter of Jochi 拒赤, who married Törölchi of the Oirat tribe.
Hubi  m. fief
Hudadiemish/Qudadmish 虞答迭迷失, daughter of Jin Gim, wife of Kuolijisi 蘭里吉思 of the Öngüt Tribe.
Huhanxie Chanyu 呼韓邪單于
Huhe/Uyihur 回紇, daughter of Azhiji 阿只吉, wife of Qiaolincha 窮鄰察 of the Öngüt Tribe.
Hulan 怔蘭, empress of Chinggis Khan.
Hiilegi, fifth son of Tolui. Son of Orda, grandson of Jochi. 
Hulian, son of Zhawu-Erchen of the Ikires tribe.
Hundugu, fifth son of Tolui, grandson of Jochi.
Hundu, son of Zhawu-Erchen of the Ikires tribe.
Huochenbiejik, daughter of Chinggis Khan, wife of Botu of the Ikires tribe.
Huqukiuhu, son of Dei Sechen.
Huqukiuhu, wife of the Erres tribe.
Huqukiuhu, son of Dei Sechen.
Hutuheitai (Qutuqtai), daughter of Chinggis Khan, wife of Botu of the Ikires tribe.
Idu-qut (Idikut), wife of the Oirat tribe.
Ilgen, wife of Bayan (Qonichi’s first son), daughter of Temuge of the Oirat tribe.
Ilkhaltun Begi, daughter of Chinggis Khan.
Inalchi, wife of the Korean king Wang Chong, daughter of Jiaoba.
Irgen, tribe.
Irrinjinbal, wife of the Korean king Wang Chong, daughter of Jiaoba.
King Ch’ungnye.
Jad, m. foreigner, alien.
Jam, m. post station.
Jami’ al-Tawarikh, m. history.
Jamuka, m. code, statute book.
Jarlig, m. imperial decree.
Jasa, m. code, statute book.
Jegun-gar, m. left-wing.
Jialinzhen, m. left-wing.
Jian River, m. imperial decree.
Jiansi, m. left-wing.
Jigu, m. sister’s son, nephew.
Jin, m. (1115-1234).
Jin-Gim, son of Kubilai Khan, crown prince of Yuan.
Jining, m. imperial decree.
Jintong, wife of the Korean King Wang To, daughter of Amuge.
Jochi, Chinggis Khan’s eldest son.
John of Plano Carpini.
Juancheng, m. imperial decree.
Junsheu, m. imperial decree.
Juwaini, m. imperial decree.
Kagemyō, m. imperial decree.
Kaipei, m. imperial decree.
Kamnala, Jin-Gim’s first son.
Kampala, m. imperial decree.
Kanghwa island, m. imperial decree.
Kangyangkong Cha, m. imperial decree.
Karakorum, capital of the Mongol Empire.
Kelmish-aqa, wife of Saljidai, daughter of Qutuqtai and Irgen (third son of Tolui).
Kentei 肯特山
Kerät / Kereit / Karät 克烈部
Kerulen 怯绿连河
Keshigci m. guards
Khadan / Qadan 哈丹, sixth son of Ögedei.
Khaiu/ Qaidu 海都, son of Qashi, grandson of Ögedei.
Khaishan / Qaishan 海山, Wuzong, r. 1307-1311, son of Tarmabala 塔剌麻八剌.
Khan m. chief of a tribe, emperor
Khan-balik 汗八里 (元中都)
Khangai 汗梁山
Khatun empress, imperial consort
Khitan 契丹
Khudugha Beki/ Khutugha-Begi/ Qudugha 忽都合别吉, chief of the Oirat tribe.
Khubilai (Qubilai) 忽必烈
Khuchu 忽出 wife of Toqoqan / Tuqan 窜罕, mother of Môngke-Temür, daughter of Törölchi of the Oirat tribe.
Khudugha Beki/ Khutukha-Begi/ Qudugha 忽都合别吉, chief of the Oirat tribe.
Khudulu(qh)Khaimish 忽都魯概述, daughter of Khubilai, married Korean king Ch'un'gyŏl 王湛 (忠烈王), mother of Yuan 藩.
Khuriltai m. meeting, congress
Khwirazm 西域
Kichik or keshik 怯薛
Kimdong 金童, Mongol princess (daughter of Amoga), married Korean King Wang To 王adeon.
Kiptchak 欽察
Kitad m. slave
Kiya m. body guard
Kiyun 欽原 tribe, the tribe that Chinggis Khan belonged to.
Köchü/ Qochu 閔出 third son of Ögetei Khan.
Kökejin (chn. Kuokuo-zhen) 閔閔真, wife of Jin-gim, daughter-in-law of Khubilai
Kokochi, 閶閔出 (Teb Tenggeri), a famous Shaman who helped Chinggis ascended the throne. Later was killed by Chinggis Khan.
Kongirat/ Konkurat/ Kongrat 宏吉剌
Kökejin 閔閔真, wife of Temür-Buqa 塔木儿不花 (first son of Hūlegū).
Köten (chn. Kuoduuan) 閔端, second son of Ögedei Khan.
Köyitien 閔亦田, the battle field that Chinggis Khan and Ong Khan’s joint army fought against the joint army led by Jamuka.
Kubak Khatun, wife of Hūlegū, daughter of Törölchi of the Oirat tribe.
Küchlüg 閔出律, the Naiman prince who seized the Khara-Khitai throne.+
Kun-dgah-rho-je (1309-1364): Hu-lan-deb-ther 紅史
Kuokulun 閔閔倫, Mongol princess, wife of Tuoluohê 脫羅禾 of the Onggirat tribe.
Küregen / Güregen 古列堅 (imperial-son-in-law)
Lian Texin 錫德新
Liao 迩 (907-1125)
Lienü Zhuban 列女傳
Lingqun Khatun/ Lingqum Khatun, wife of Arigh Böke, the daughter of Küchüg Khan.
lin zhong bai xing 林中百姓, people in the forest.
Liu Bingzhong 劉秉忠, Grand Guardian (chn. Taibao 太保) in Khubilai’e reign.
Luluhan 魯魯罕, Mongol princess, wife of Suoduge 咆都哥 of the Ikires tribe.
Lulun 魯倫 Mongol princess, wife of Suoduge 咆都哥 of the Ikires tribe.
Maidi 買的, Mongol princess, wife of Ashi of the Ikires tribe.
Maizhuhan, son of Bengbula of the Onggirat tribe.
Manggechen, son of Sechen's grandson.
Manggetai, wife of Changji (Chigu's great grandson).
Mangqala, the third son of Khubilai Khan.
Mankku-lukan, daughter of Hülegü Khan, wife of Jaqir of the Oirat tribe.
Manzitai, younger brother of Tiemuer of the Onggirat tribe.
Märkit/Merkit, wife of Chinehul Khan.
Mao Yanshou, court artist of the han dynasty.
Meixi, a favorite woman of Jie in the Xia dynasty.
Melik-Temürid/Minli, second son of Arigh Böke.
Mengü-Temür/Möngke-Temürid, son of Hülegü.
Mingganom, thousand households.
Mö'etüken, second son of Chaghatai Khan.
Mogo, wife of Chinggis Khan and was inherited by Ögödei.
Möngke/Mongu, the eldest son of Tului.
Möngke-Temürid/Möngke Temürid, (1) second son of Toqoqan, grandson of Batu. (2) son of Hülegü Khan and Öljei Khatun.
Kubak, wife of Khan Hülegü Khan, daughter of Törölchi of the Oirat tribe.
Müngilg/Mengü, father of Kokochü, and daughter (Teb Tenggeri), step-father of Chinggis Khan.
Muqali/Muhuali, one of the four most gifted generals of Chinggis Khan.
Nachen, third son of Anchen of the Onggirat tribe.
Nahe, grandson of Anchen of the Onggirat tribe.
Naiman, official, lord, noble.
Nayan, Khatun, wife of Tolui.
Nekün Taisi, brother of Yesügei.
Nestorianisme,景教.
Niequtai, 神古台.
Niequn, a sub-tribe of the Onggirat tribe.
Nierjin, 神兒斤, a sub-tribe of the Onggirat tribe.
Niutin-disin, 神林的斤
Noluun, wife of Korean Wang Hao, Prince of Shen (Sim Wang), daughter of Songshan.
Noyan, 乃顏.
Nuhan, wife of Khubilai.
Nulun, daughter of the Mongol prince Wan Ze, wife of Alibadai of the Öngü Tribe.
Numugan, daughter of Arigh Böke, wife of Junan of the Oirat tribe.
Nuwulun, daughter of Manggela, wife of Suolanghaa of the Ikires tribe.
Oboğ, clan or tribe, particular blood-related alliance.
Odhchin, Chinggis Khan’s youngest brother.
Odcigin ejen, master of kitchen range—the youngest son of Oghul Ghaimish.
Ögödei (Ögetei Qa’an) 渥闌台, third son of Chinggis Khan.
Qirat/Oirat/Oyirad 幹亦剌/瓦剌
Öljii Khatun/Auljai Öljii/Auljai 完者 (1) empress of Hülegü Khan, sister of Kubak, mother of Möngke-Temür, remarried Abaha. (2) empress of Arghun, Il-Khan of Persia, r.1284-1291, daughter of Sulamish, granddaughter of Tenggis
Olgumnu’ud-Onggirat 幹勒忽納兀惕 (Wolehuna 幹勒忽訥) (a sub-tribe of Onggirat tribe)
Omog m. family
Ong m. king
Onggirat 弘吉剌部
Ong-Khan 王罕, To’oril Khan of the Kereyid.
Öngüt 汪古部
Onog 卿離河
Orda, eldest son of Jochi.
Ordou/Ordu 幹ㄎ朵, Mongol Khan's tent palace
Orqina/Aürgneh 幹ㄎ 吉納_Khatun, wife of Qara-Hülegü.
O Yunpu 伍允乎
Piao Buhua 朴不花, a Korean eunuch, ambassador of the Zizheng Yuan in Shundi’s reign.
Princess Supreme of the State of Qi 歧國大長公主
Princess Wencheng 文成公主
Puna 普納, Mongol princess, wife of Sangge-Bula of the Onggirat tribe.
Puxian-Wannu 蒲鮮萬奴
Fuyang 萊陽
Puyankelimeisi 普顏可里美思, Mongol princess, wife of Bulianjidai 不慎吉歹 of the Ikires tribe.
Qachi’un 合赤溫, Chinggis Khan’s younger brother.
Qara-Hülegü 合剌旭烈兀, fourth son of Mö’etüken, grandson of Chaghatai.
Qaraqorum 客剌和林
Qarkh-am1 (Dierge-ke-emiele 迭兒格-克額茂勒), chief of the Onggirat tribe in the early 13th century.
Qasar 合撤兒, Chinggis Khan’s younger brother.
Qianhu 千戶 Battalion Commander
Qishan 歧山
Qishi Wanzhehudu 奇氏完者忽都, a Korean woman, empress of Shundi.
Qtqash 合塔合失, wife of Kurju 聞出 (son of Ögödei).
Qtqin/Hedajin 合答斤
Quanning 全寧
Quda/Huda 尼答 m., A kinship term used by and in reference to those who are relatives by virtue of the marriage of their children.
Quriltai/khuriltai 庫爾台
Qutlu, wife of Arigh Böke 阿里不哥.
Qutuqtu (1329-1332)
Rashid al-Din (1247-1317): Jami’al-Tavarikh 史集 (Collection of Histories)
Salita 撒禮塔
Saljidai 撒勒只臺
Salji’tid / Salezhiwutí 撒勒只兀惕
Sambyöch‘o 三別抄
Sanggebula/Suga-bala 桑哥八剌, Mongol princess, married Mazhahan 马札罕 of the the Öngüt Tribe.
Sangge-bula 桑哥不剌, son of Tiemuer of the Onggirat tribe.
Sanggebula 桑哥不剌, wife of Tuotuomur 打突木兒 of the Onggirat tribe.
Semu 色目
Sengge Ragi 祥哥剌吉 (? 1282-1332), the mother-in-law of Wenzong.
Senggüm’s 蒲兒, son of Ong-Khan.
Sengün m. official title
Shalanduoeer 沙蘭朵兒, son of Balashi.
Shangdu 上都 Supreme Capital
Shatuo-yanmen 沙陀雁門
Shi Shouxin 石守信
Shidebala 碧德八剌, Yingzong, r. 1321-1323.
Shiliandali 失利答里, empress of Chengzong, daughter of Woluochen of the Onggirat tribe.
Shirap/Shaian 沙簡, son of Parsbuqa of the Oirat tribe. he married a Yuan princess.
Shiremiin 音, son of Kozab, grandson of Ögödei.
Shiyou 世祖
Shou Tong寿童, empress of Wuzong 武宗, mother of Mingzong, daughter of
Shuer-chedaan 術兒徹丹
Shumishi 林密使
Suoduge 喀都哥, Buhua’s younger brother, Prince of Ning Chang 辛昌郡王.
Suorha 鎮兒哈, son of Botu.
Suorhahan 喀兒罕, daughter of Ögödei, wife of Nahe 納合.
Suor-Huodoo 喀兒忽都, son of Anchen.
Taihuludu 台忽魯, wife of Chouhan 丑漢 of the Onggirat tribe.
Tajjiz/Tajjiut 泰赤烏
Talai 塔剌海, wife of Kubilai.
Tayrang Khan 太陽罕, King of Naiman state.
Tchagatai 賽合台, second son of Chinggis Khan.
Tegülün/Tiegulun 帖古倫, wife of Kubilai Khan, the daughter of Tuolian 脫懸 of the Onggirat tribe.
Temüge Odchigin 鐵木格斡赤斤, younger brother of Chinggis Khan.
Temüjin /Tiemuzhen 鐵木真, name of Chinggis Khan.
Temüjin-Wuge 鐵木真兀格, the chief of the Tartar tribe, captured by Yesügei.
Temülen 鐵穆倫, younger sister of Chinggis Khan.
Temür Öijeitü 鐵穆耳, Chengzong, third son of Jim-Gim, r. 1295-1307.
Tikong 提控
Tian mo wunü 天魔舞女
Tieligan/Tieliangan 帖里干/帖里干, Botu’s son.
Tiemudier 帖木迭兒, chancellor under Wentsung’s reign, favorite of Empress Dowager Daji.
Tiemuer 帖木兒, son of Nachen.
Tobaqana 脫巴合納, wife of Orda.
Töögach, daughter of Hülegü Khan 旭烈兀, wife of Tanggis of the Oirat tribe.
Toghan-Temür 貝歡帖穆爾
Tolui/Tului 拖雷, youngest son of Chinggis Khan.
Toqoqan (Tüqân): second son of Batu.
Toquluqan 脫忽魯罕, wife of Qonichi 火你赤 (Orda’s first son Sartaqtai’s first son)
Töregene 脫列哥納, wife of Ögedei.
Törelchi/ Törelch 脫列勒 (son of Khuduqa Beki)
Torgüd m. relatives on the side of wives
Tuongous 杜胡 (通古斯)
Touxia 投下
Tükinche 羽昆怯, wife of Toqta 脫脫 (fifth son of Toqoqan, ruler of Goden Horde from 1291
to 1312).
Tumad 筱麻部
Tumanlu 羽滿倫, daughter of Chinggis Khan, wife of Chigu 赤古 of the Onggirat tribe.
Tümen ten thousand households
Tuoba 拓跋 (A.D. 399-534)
Tuofi-Tuoa 脫黑脫阿, chief of Merkit 蒙兀乞 tribe.
Tuohuan 脫歡, son of Nachen.
Tuolian 脫樂, Anchen’s grandson.
Tuoluohe 脫羅禾, grandson of Dei Sechen.
Tuosima 脫思麻
Tuotuohui 脫脫灰, Granddaughter of Khubilai Khan, wife of Tumandar 爲滿答儿 of the Oirat
tribe.
Tuotuomur 脫脫木兒
Tuotuoshur 脫脫術兒
Tuq Temür 圖帖睦爾, Wenzong, r. 1329-1332.
Tusaqa 脫撒哈, son of Senggüm.
turghagh (m.) 脫魯花 (質子) hostage
Üibi 赫妃
Uighur 畏吾都 部
Ulus m. nation, people
urugh/uruh m. of the same clan
Waqqi 外戚
Wang Châng 王湯
Wang Chôl 王礱
Wang Chôn 王禑 (1331-1332), the King Ch’unghye 忠惠王 of Korea.
Wang Ki 王祺 (r. 1352-1374), the King Kongmin 慕愍王 of Korea.
Wang Mang 王莽
Wang Sik 王穡
Wang Sim 王謙 (r. 1275-1308), the King Ch’unghöyl 忠烈王 of Korea.
Wang Sung 王嵩, the Sim Wang 沈王 of Korea.
Wang To 王遴 (1314-1330), Korean “King Ch’ungsug” 忠肅王.
Wang Wôn 王源 (1309-1313), the King Ch’ungsôn 忠宣王 of Korea.
Wang Zhaojun 王昭君
Wanhu 墨户, Brigade Commander.
Wanyan Ziyuan 完顏子淵
Wanze 完澤, wife of Woluochen.
Wochen 幹陳, second son of Anchen of the Onggirat tribe.
Woqezen 幹可真
Woliuchar 幹留察兒, grandson of Anchen.
Woluochen 幹羅陳, son of Nachen.
Wongji Bahu 甕吉八忽, wife of Huaidu 怀都 (grandson of Chigu)
Wuluzhen 元魯真/吾魯真, daughter of Kubilai Khan, wife of Buhua 不花 of the Ikires tribe.
Wu Zetian 武則天
Xi Xia 西夏 (1032-1227)
Xiantong 仙童
Xiangzong 襄宗, emperor of the Xi Xia state.
Xiao Daheng 肖大亨
Xining Prefecture 西寧州
Xiongnu 匈奴
Xu Heng 許衡, minister in Kubilai’s reign.
Xuanzong 宣宗, emperor of the Jin dynasty.
Xu Heng 許衡, minister in Kubilai’s reign.

Yao Shu 尧枢, advisor of Kubilai Khan.
Yebujiandai 扶保, a man of the Merkit (Märkit) tribe, the first husband of Högelün Üjin.
Yeke-Monggol Ulus, Great Mongol State
Yeke Nayan, High-ranking noble
Yeke Ulus, fief directly beloned to the Great Khan
Yelimishir/Yelmish 赊里失里, daughter of Guyü Khan, wife of Junbuhua君不花
(Prince of Zhong Xiang 忠襄王 son of Boyaohe) of the Öngüt Tribe.
Yelü Chucai/Yeh-lü Ch‘u-tsyai 耶律楚材, Right-Chancellor during Ögödei’s reign and the Toregene’s regency.
Yelü Liuge 耶律留哥

Yemonsui/Emegenjin 耶蒙斯忽, daughter of prince Wudai兀魯歹, wife of Shuhunan
(Prince of Zhong Xiang 忠襄王 son of Boyaohe) of the Öngüt Tribe.

Yesubuhua 也速不花, Daughter of Tolui, wife of Wochen of the Onggirat tribe.
Yesügei 也速该, father of Chinggis Khan.
Yesü-Mengü/Yesü-Möngke, fifth son of Chaghatai’s.
Yesün-Temür/Yesun Temur 也孫鐵木儿, Taidingdi, r. 1324-1328.
Yesunzhen 也孫真, daughter of Prince Anchidai 安赤歹, married Zhawu-Erchen 札兀兒臣 of the Ikires tribe.

Yesur 也速兒, Empress of Mönke Khan, taken by Yobuqur, son of Arigh Böke.
Yesujin 也速真, Mongol princess, wife of the Korean king Wang Wŏn 王源

Yexian 也先
Yibahe 亦巴合, wife of Chinggis Khan, granted to his general, Zhuer-Chedai 主兒扯歹.
Yilianzhen 亦列真, Mongol princess, wife of Nangjiatai囊家台 of the Öngüt Tribe.
Yilianzhenbala 亦列真八剌, Mongol princess, married Korean king Wang To.

Yilianzhenbala 亦列真八剌, daughter of princess Yilihaiya 益里海涯, principle empress of Emperor Taiding

Yilihaiya 益里海涯, the daughter of Chengzong, wife of Ashi 阿失 of the Ikires tribe.
yina 倪納
Yin Zhou Wang 胤紹王
Yingchang 應昌
Yiqiliesi 色乞列思, wife of Tieligan/Tiejiangan帖里千/帖里千 of the Ikires tribe.
Yi Shou Wang 逸壽王
Yixiji 一悉基, Mongol princess, wife of Burtua [Palituo 八里托] of the Oirat tribe.
Yongsan Wŏnja 龍山元子. Korean prince, mother was Mongol princess Jintong 金童.
Yort m. domain, territory
you shou jun 右手軍
Yu Fu Zhi 奕服志, Records of Imperial Carriages and Garments
Yuandi 元帝, Emperor of the Han dynasty
Yuelietai 月列台. son of Zhawu-Erchen of the Ikires tribe.
Yuelu 月魯, daughter of Mingzong, wife of Shalanduor 沙蘭朵兒 of the Ikires tribe.
Yulongzhan 玉龍梭
Yunzhong 雲中
Zh’a’-qianbo 札阿訶孛, younger brother of Ong Khan.
Zhahuerchen 札忽兒臣, Suorha’s son, Prince of Cahng.
Zhamayan 詹馬宴
Zhao Kuangyin 趙匡胤, founder of the Song dynasty.
Zhao Liangbi 趙良弼
Zhawu-Erchen 札兀兒臣, son of Suorha.
Zhengge 真哥, empress of Wuzong, the daughter of Bengbula.
Zhenguó 鎮國, nephew of Alaques of the Öngüt tribe.
zhisun banquet 只孫宴
Zhongjin 鍾金
Zhu Yuanzhang 朱元璋, founder of the Ming Dynasty.
Zhuoguyu 著古與
Appendix IV*

Genealogical Tables of the Mongol Royal Clan

1. House of Yesugei

Yesugei (Liezu)

Chinggis Khan (Taizu)  Jochi-Qassar  Qachiun  Otegin  Belgutei

Yesu  Yesungei

---

Royal Clan

| Otgein  | Belgutei |

Royal Clan

Royal Clan

Royal Clan

Royal Clan

Royal Clan

Royal Clan

Royal Clan
2. House of Otegin

- Yesugel (Liezhu)
  - Qachun
  - Otegin
  - Belgulai
  - Boqan
  - Sadai
  - Hashdai
  - Chaqla
  - Tuolichu
  - Wolurtai
  - Baihu
  - Tieludier
  - Aiyahachi
  - Habutu
  - Tieshi
  - Qiudge
  - Balaite Tenur
  - Huitai
  - Yanzi
  - Yejianhuangwur
  - Xindu
3. House of Belgutei

Yesugei (Liezu)

Chinggis Khan (Taizu) - Joch-Qassar - Qachiun - Otegin - Belgutei

Yesu Buqa

Zhaodu

Temur - Naiyan - Huangcha - Mozhar - Saliman

Tuotemur
3. House of Belgutei

- Yesugei (Liezu)
  - Otegin
  - Belgutei
    - Kouwen Buqa
      - Mielijidai
        - Mozhar
        - Saliman
        - Kuokuochu
          - Xuechegan
            - Chartai
      - Wengjiladai
        - Cheli Temur
        - Tachu
    - Hantuhu
      - Huoliji
      - Tachu
      - Anhuncha
4. HOUSE OF CHINGGIS KHAN

Yesugei
(Liezu)

CHINGGIS KHAN
(Taizu)

Jochi  Chaghatai  Ogodei  Tolei  Jurchetai  Kolgei  Orchan

5. HOUSE OF JOCHI

Chinggis Khan

Jochi

Orda  Batu  Berke  Berkecher  Sibaqan  Tangut  Boghal

Selid

Wulachi  Bartu

Tutuchan  Yandixen  Wulei

Minggetemur  Tutuomengge

Tutubuua  Kurshule/Kuichche

Alligochi  Tunguler  Tutuo

Yuesibe

Bintiboke  Kama  Nusuri
6. HOUSE OF JOCHI

- Chinggis Khan
- JOCHI
  - Sibaqan
  - Tangut
  - Boghal
  - Togha-Temur
  - Gilavukan
  - Sangkur
  - Qintai
6. House of Jochi

- Chinggis Khan
  - Jochi
    - Orda
      - Keqi
        - Boyan
          - Saxibile
            - Aibisan
            - Murkehezha
    - Batu
    - Berke
    - Berkecher
    - Sibaqan
      - Lehadur
        - Zheqibur
        - Badakur
        - Menggu Temur
    - Tangut
    - Boghal
6. House of Jochi

- Chinggis Khan

- Jochi

- Sibaqan
- Tangut
- Boghal
- Togha-Temur
- Qilawukan
- Sangkur
- Qintai

- Lehadur
- Zheqibur
- Badakur
- Menggu Temur

- Wulong Temur
- Salicha
- Turqi Temur
- Aliboke
7. HOUSE OF CHAGHATAI

Chinggis Khan

Chaghatai

Yesu-Mongke

Saidar

Bul

Alu

Bu

Chuban

Jiyan

Aletan

Hezan

Qara-Hulegu

Mobaikesha

Qiibo

Tulai Temur

Daihu

Yanzhihai

Wuleke Temur

Turju

Yexianmur

Kaibishiwa

Hezhan
8. House of Chaghatai

Chinggis Khan

Chaghatai

Mochi

Mo'etuken

Yesu-Mongke

Teguder

Tekshi

Buri

Yesun-Tu'a

Qara-Hulegu

Buluya

Buhe Temur

Du'a

Hulawayi

Balahe

Yisur

Dulai Temur

Damashili

Zaiwomo

Ebujian

Xuerketu

Amir

Sangzhar

Zhenjisai

Buzhan

Yesu temur

Bayanheli

Tuogulu
e

Temur Shiwa

Alanasi
Chaghatai

Chinggis Khan

Chaghatai

Mo'etuken  Yesu-Mongke  Baidar

Yesun-Tu'a  Qara-Hulegu  Buji  Aluhu

Enej  Yisur

Buliya  Hulawayi

Ebujuan  Xuerketu  Amir

Yasu temur  Bayanheli  Tuoguluhe

Temur Shiwa  Alanasi
9. HOUSE OF OGODEI

Chinggis Khan

OGODEI

Guyuk

Khoja (Qoche)

Naqu

Huohu

Yirjianzang

Oije Yebagan

Tulu

Chabate

Chabar

Woluwensun

Tahechar

Oije Temur

Hulatai
9. HOUSE OF OGODEI

Chinggis Khan

OGODEI

Hoshi  Koten  Kochu  Qadaghan (Qadan)  Melik

Khaidu  Siremum

Chabar  Woluwensun  Tahechar  Tuqumie  Sarban  Abagan

Dijei Temur

Hulatai
10. House of Ogodei

Chinggis Khan

OGODEI

Guyuk

Mielijidai

Yesu Buqa

Hoshi

Mongkedu

Yilianjin

Koten

Jibi Temur

Tiebilie

Quielu

Chinggis Khan

OGODEI

Guyuk

Mielijidai

Yesu Buqa

Hoshi

Mongkedu

Yilianjin

Koten

Jibi Temur

Tiebilie

Quielu

Bie temur

Yesu-Yebagan

Tuchuochi

Tuotuomur

Yesubagan

Kochu

Siremun

Boluochi

Hadai

Aluhui
10. House of Ogodei

Chinggis Khan

OGODEI

Kochu

Siremun

Boluochi

Hadai

Tuotuo

Yuebieji

Aluhui

Qadaghan (Qadan)

Shalan Duorji

Tuohu

Andula

Melik

Alyachi

Temurchi

Tuman

Quchun

Taiping

Aluhui Temur

Hudu Temur
11. House of Ogodei

Chinggis Khan

OGODEI

Guyuk  Hoshi  Koten  Kochu  Halachar  Qadaghan (Qadan)  Melik

Durchi  Yebugan  Yedier  Yesuntuo  Hux

Xiaoxue  Huolangsa

Jixingban  Huludai

Xinducha

Yaozhu
of Ogodei

Halachar
Qadaghan (Qadan)
Melik

Yedier
Yesuntuo
Huoni
Qibuchawu

Yaozhu
Nahai
12. HOUSE OF TOLUI

Chinggis Khan

Tolui

Jorike
Qutuqtu
Khubilai
Hulegu
Arigh Boke
Bochek
Moge
Sogetu
Subetei

ash
Xilji
Blandu

Wanzu
Wulusi Buqa
Huanghuo Temur

hetu
Guanchege
Dashayisdi
Oji Temur
13. House of Tolui

- Chinggis Khan
  - Tolui
    - Mongke
      - Abaha
    - Jonike
    - Qutuqu
    - Khublai
    - Hulegu
    - Arigh Boke
      - Mongke Temur
        - Buqin
      - Taishu
        - Ahunbieqi
      - Quduhe
        - Alunun
        - Hashan
        - Hezan
    - Busaikin
      - Busaikin
      - Mohamod Shihayinshi
        - Aboyikeshia
      - Tieligegetu Mongke
        - Sage
        - Mohamod
        - Tashfusaha
        - Suleiman
          - Yangisha
          - Sugesha
          - Asudai
          - Tuchu
13. House of Tolui

Chinggis Khan

Tolui

Subelai
Hulegu
Arlgh Boke
Bochek
Moge
Sogetu
Subetai

Mongke Temur
Buqin
Kongguotai
Chumuran

Aunbieqi

Kuanchu
Teshimodi
Nanhuli
Aha

Tielgeetu Mongke
Sage
Hudadimishi
Yilheichi

Mohsamod
Tashifuaha
Buyan Temur

Sultaman
Weil

Yangisha
Sugesha
Asudai
Tuchuochi
14. House of Khubilai Khan

- Tolui
  - Khubilai
    - Dorji
    - Jim-Gim
    - Mangqala
    - Nomoghan
    - Qoridai
    - Hugechi
    - Oqruqchi
    - Ayachi
      - Anada
      - Antai Buqa
        - Yuelu Temur
      - Yesian Temur
      - Tuohuan Buqa
      - Tuolu
        - Alu
          - Boluo
            - Babwalami
14. House of Khubilai Khan

Tolui

Khubilai

Tuleqchi

Oqruqchi

Ayachi

Kokochu

Qutluq-Temur

Toghan

Tiemechi

An Temur

Amugan

Boyan Temur

Xuechetu

Aduchi

Abayebugan

Tuolu

Atu

Yedigu Buqa

Xumirgai

Balduuorchi

Boluo

Babiwalami
15. House of Khubilai Khan

- Tolui
  - Khubilai
    - Dorji
    - Jim-Gim
    - Mangqala
    - Nomoghan
    - Qoridai
    - Hugechi
    - Oqruqchi
      - Temur Buqa
      - Badimalija
      - Shuosiban
      - Laodi
    - Dárma
    - Anatenshitii
    - Qiba
    - Yijiban
- Ayac
15. House of Khubilai Khan

- Tolui
  - Khubilai
  - Hugechi
  - Oqruqchi
  - Ayachi
  - Kokochu
    - Qutluq-Temur
    - Toghan
    - Tiemiechi

  - Laodi
    - Temur Buqa
    - Badimalija

  - Shuosiban
    - Xuechetu
    - Aduchi

  - Xumiegai

  - Aratenashili
  - Qiba
  - Yijiban
16. House of Khubilai Khan

- Dorji
- Mangqala
- Nomoghan
- Qoridai
- Hugechi
- Toqahan
- Oqruqchi
- Ay.

- Laczhang
- Tuoba
- Kuanche Buqa
- Temur Buqa

- Boluo Buqa
- Bietemur
- Datemur
- Baoennu
- Jiedainu
- Fojiianu

- Dashengnu

17. House of Khubilai Khan

- Dorji
- Jim-Gim
- Mangqala
- Nomoghan
- Qoridai

- Huguchi
- Oqruqchi

- Ayachi
- Kokochu

- Yesen Temur

- Tuohuan Buqa
- Tuolu
- Alu
- Yediku Buqa

- Boluo
- Babilawami
House of Khubilai Khan

Khubilai

Toqahan

Oqruqchi

Ayachi

Kokochu

Qutluq-Temur

Tiemiechi

Baoennu

Jiedainu

Foijanu

Heshang

House of Khubilai Khan

Khubilai

Oqruqchi

Ayachi

Kokochu

Qutluq-Temur

Toqhan

Tiemiechi

Amugan

Boyan Temur

Abayebugan

Alu

Yediku Buqa

Baluduorj

Boluo

Babilawami
18. House of Jim-Gim

- Khusilai
- Jim-Gim

- Kurala

- Songchan
  - Wanchan
  - Temur Buqa

- Yesun-Temur
  - Asujiha
  - Badims yirjanbu
  - Xiaoxue
  - Yundananghu

- Dieliger Buqa
  - Balashili
  - Khaishang

- Khaishang
  - Tuq Temür
  - Kuselchin

- Qoshila
  - Toq Temür
  - Itiujihai
  - Alasiyadala
  - Yanicgusai
  - Taipingan
18. House of Jim-Gim

- Khubitai
  - Jim-Gim

- Tarembala
- Temur

- Buqa
  - Khaishang
- Tuoqua
  - Khaishang
- Maal
- Amogo
- Ajar-Pariya-Bala
- Tishi Taishi
- Maqabalin
- Boluerto
- Dongwotai
- Darmusbili
- Boluo

- Tuq temur
  - Kuselah

- Alatenidala
  - Yanlegu
  - Taipingna